It is time to make a huge docx file. Just to see how well okapi processes it. Ward Cunningham and co-author [Bo Leuf](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bo_Leuf), in their book [*The Wiki Way: Quick Collaboration on the Web*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Wiki_Way), described the essence of the Wiki concept as follows:

* A wiki invites all users to edit any page or to create new pages within the wiki Web site, using only a [plain-vanilla](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vanilla_software) Web browser without any extra [add-ons](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Browser_extension).
* Wiki promotes meaningful topic associations between different pages by making page link creation almost intuitively easy and showing whether an intended target page exists or not.
* A wiki is not a carefully crafted site for casual visitors. Instead, it seeks to involve the visitor in an ongoing process of creation and collaboration that constantly changes the Web site landscape.

A w enables communities to write documents collaboratively, using a simple markup language and a web browser. A single page in a wiki website is referred to as a "wiki page", while the entire collection of pages, which are usually well interconnected by [hyperlinks](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hyperlink), is "the wiki". A wiki is essentially a database for creating, browsing, and searching through information. A wiki allows for non-linear, evolving, complex and networked text, argument and interaction.[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Legal-5)

A defining characteristic of wiki technology is the ease with which pages can be created and updated. Generally, there is no review before modifications are accepted. Many wikis are open to alteration by the general public without requiring them to register [user](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/User_(computing)) accounts. Many edits can be made in real-time and appear almost instantly online. This can facilitate abuse of the system. Private wiki servers require [user authentication](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Authentication) to edit pages, and sometimes even to read them.

[Maged N. Kamel Boulos](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Maged_N._Kamel_Boulos), Cito Maramba and [Steve Wheeler](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Steve_Wheeler) write that it is the "openness of wikis that gives rise to the concept of 'Darwikinism', which is a concept that describes the '[socially Darwinian](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Socially_Darwinian) process' that wiki pages are subject to. Basically, because of the openness of wikis and the rapidity with which wiki pages can be edited, the pages undergo a [natural selection](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Natural_selection) process like that which nature subjects to living organisms. 'Unfit' sentences and sections are ruthlessly culled, edited and replaced if they are not considered 'fit', which hopefully results in the evolution of a higher quality and more relevant page. Whilst such openness may invite 'vandalism' and the posting of untrue information, this same openness also makes it possible to rapidly correct or restore a 'quality' wiki page."[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-BMC-6)

Editing wiki pages

There are many different ways in which wikis have users edit the content. Ordinarily, the structure and formatting of wiki pages are specified with a simplified markup language, sometimes known as [wikitext](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikitext) (for example, starting a line of text with an [asterisk](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Asterisk) often sets up a [bulleted list](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bullet_(typography))). The style and syntax of wikitexts can vary greatly among wiki implementations, some of which also allow [HTML](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/HTML) tags. Designers of wikis often take this approach because HTML, with its many cryptic tags, is not very legible, making it hard to edit. Wikis therefore favour plain-text editing, with fewer and simpler conventions than HTML, for indicating style and structure. Although limiting access to HTML and [Cascading Style Sheets](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cascading_Style_Sheets) (CSS) of wikis limits user ability to alter the structure and formatting of wiki content, there are some benefits. Limited access to CSS promotes consistency in the look and feel, and having [JavaScript](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/JavaScript) disabled prevents a user from implementing code that may limit access for other users.

Increasingly, wikis are making [WYSIWYG](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/WYSIWYG) editing available to users, usually by means of [JavaScript](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/JavaScript) or an [ActiveX](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/ActiveX) control that translates graphically entered formatting instructions into the corresponding [HTML tags](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/HTML_element) or wikitext. In those implementations, the markup of a newly edited, marked-up version of the page is generated and submitted to the server[transparently](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Transparency_(human-computer_interaction)), shielding the user from this technical detail. However, WYSIWYG controls do not always provide all of the features available in wikitext, and some users prefer not to use a WYSIWYG editor. Hence, many of these sites offer some means to edit the wikitext directly.

Most wikis keep a record of changes made to wiki pages; often, every version of the page is stored. This means that authors can revert to an older version of the page, should it be necessary because a mistake has been made or the page has been vandalized. Many implementations, like [MediaWiki](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/MediaWiki), allow users to supply an *edit summary* when they edit a page; this is a short piece of text summarising the changes. It is not inserted into the article, but is stored along with that revision of the page, allowing users to explain what has been done and why; this is similar to a log message when making changes to a [revision-control](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Revision_control) system.

### Navigation

Within the text of most pages there are usually a large number of [hypertext](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hypertext) links to other pages. This form of non-linear navigation is more "native" to wiki than structured/formalized navigation schemes. That said, users can also create any number of index or table-of-contents pages, with hierarchical categorization or whatever form of organization they like. These may be challenging to maintain by hand, as multiple authors create and delete pages in an ad hoc manner. Wikis generally provide one or more ways to categorize or tag pages to support the maintenance of such index pages.

Most wikis have a backlink feature, which displays all pages that link to a given page.

It is typical in a wiki to create links to pages that do not yet exist, as a way to invite others to share what they know about a subject new to the wiki.

### Linking and creating pages

Links are created using a specific syntax, the so-called "link pattern" (also see [CURIE](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/CURIE)). Originally, most wikis used [CamelCase](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/CamelCase) to name pages and create links. These are produced by capitalizing words in a phrase and removing the spaces between them (the word "CamelCase" is itself an example). While CamelCase makes linking very easy, it also leads to links which are written in a form that deviates from the standard spelling. To link to a page with a single-word title, one must abnormally capitalize one of the letters in the word (e.g. "WiKi" instead of "Wiki"). CamelCase-based wikis are instantly recognizable because they have many links with names such as "TableOfContents" and "BeginnerQuestions." It is possible for a wiki to render the visible anchor for such links "pretty" by reinserting spaces, and possibly also reverting to lower case. However, this reprocessing of the link to improve the readability of the anchor is limited by the loss of capitalization information caused by CamelCase reversal. For example, "RichardWagner" should be rendered as "Richard Wagner," whereas "PopularMusic" should be rendered as "popular music". There is no easy way to determine which [capital letters](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Capital_letter) should remain capitalized. As a result, many wikis now have "free linking" using brackets, and some disable CamelCase by default.

### Searching

Most wikis offer at least a title [search](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Search_algorithm), and sometimes a [full-text search](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Full_text_search). The scalability of the search depends on whether the wiki engine uses a database. Some wikis, such as[PmWiki](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/PmWiki), use [flat files](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Flat_file).[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Augar-7) MediaWiki's first versions used flat files, but it was rewritten by [Lee Daniel Crocker](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lee_Daniel_Crocker) in the early 2000s to be a database application. Indexed database access is necessary for high speed searches on large wikis. Alternatively, external [search engines](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Web_search_engine) such as [Google Search](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Google_Search) can sometimes be used on wikis with limited searching functions in order to obtain more precise results. However, a search engine's indexes can be very out of date (days, weeks or months) for many websites.

## History

[WikiWikiWeb](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/WikiWikiWeb) was the first wiki.[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-ebersbach10-8) Ward Cunningham started developing WikiWikiWeb in Portland, Oregon, in 1994, and installed it on the [Internet domain](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Domain_name) [c2.com](http://c2.com/) on March 25, 1995. It was named by Cunningham, who remembered a [Honolulu International Airport](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Honolulu_International_Airport)counter employee telling him to take the "[Wiki Wiki Shuttle](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki_Wiki_Shuttle)" bus that runs between the airport's terminals. According to Cunningham, "I chose wiki-wiki as an alliterative substitute for 'quick' and thereby avoided naming this stuff quick-web."[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-cunningham-9)[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-history-10)

Cunningham was in part inspired by Apple's [HyperCard](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/HyperCard). Apple had designed a system allowing users to create virtual "card stacks" supporting links among the various cards. Cunningham developed [Vannevar Bush's](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vannevar_Bush) ideas by allowing users to "comment on and change one another's text."[[2]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Britannica-1)[[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-hypercard-11)

In the early 2000s, wikis were increasingly adopted in enterprise as collaborative software. Common uses included project communication, intranets, and documentation, initially for technical users. Today some [companies use wikis](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Corporate_wiki) as their only collaborative software and as a replacement for static intranets, and some schools and universities use wikis to enhance [group learning](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Group_learning). There may be greater use of wikis behind [firewalls](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Firewall_(computing)) than on the public Internet.

On March 15, 2007, *wiki* entered the online [*Oxford English Dictionary*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Oxford_English_Dictionary).[[13]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-OED1-12)

## Implementations

Wiki software is a type of [collaborative software](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Collaborative_software) that runs a wiki system, allowing web pages to be created and edited using a common web browser. It is usually implemented as an [application server](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Application_server)[[*citation needed*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:Citation_needed)] that runs on one or more [web servers](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Web_server). The content is stored in a [file system](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File_system), and changes to the content are stored in a [relational database management system](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Relational_database_management_system). A commonly implemented software package is [MediaWiki](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/MediaWiki), which runs this encyclopedia. See the [List of wiki software](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_wiki_software) for further information. Alternatively,[personal wikis](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Personal_wiki) run as a standalone application on a single computer. [WikidPad](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/WikidPad) is an example. Or even single local HTML file with JavaScript inside – like [TiddlyWiki](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/TiddlyWiki).

Wikis can also be created on a "[wiki farm](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki_farm)", where the server side software is implemented by the wiki farm owner. [PBwiki](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/PBwiki), [Socialtext](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Socialtext), [Wetpaint](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wetpaint), and [Wikia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikia) are popular examples of such services. Some wiki farms can also make private, password-protected wikis. Note that free wiki farms generally contain advertising on every page. For more information, see[Comparison of wiki farms](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Comparison_of_wiki_farms).

## Trust and security

Wikis are generally designed with the philosophy of making it easy to correct mistakes, rather than making it difficult to make them. Thus, while wikis are very open, they provide a means to verify the validity of recent additions to the body of pages. The most prominent, on almost every wiki, is the "Recent Changes" page—a specific list numbering recent edits, or a list of edits made within a given time frame.[[14]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-13) Some wikis can filter the list to remove minor edits and edits made by automatic importing scripts ("[bots](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Internet_bot)").[[15]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-14)

From the change log, other functions are accessible in most wikis: the [revision history](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Changelog) shows previous page versions and the [diff](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Diff) feature highlights the changes between two revisions. Using the revision history, an editor can view and restore a previous version of the article. The diff feature can be used to decide whether or not this is necessary. A regular wiki user can view the diff of an edit listed on the "Recent Changes" page and, if it is an unacceptable edit, consult the history, restoring a previous revision; this process is more or less streamlined, depending on the wiki software used.[[16]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-15)

In case unacceptable edits are missed on the "recent changes" page, some wiki engines provide additional content control. It can be monitored to ensure that a page, or a set of pages, keeps its quality. A person willing to maintain pages will be warned of modifications to the pages, allowing him or her to verify the validity of new editions quickly.[[17]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-16) A watchlist is a common implementation of this.

Some wikis also implement "patrolled revisions," in which editors with the requisite credentials can mark some edits as not vandalism. A "flagged revisions" system can prevent edits from going live until they have been reviewed.[[18]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-17)

### Trustworthiness

Critics of publicly editable wiki systems argue that these systems could be easily tampered with, while proponents argue that the community of users can catch malicious content and correct it.[[2]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Britannica-1) Lars Aronsson, a data systems specialist, summarizes the controversy as follows:

Most people, when they first learn about the wiki concept, assume that a Web site that can be edited by anybody would soon be rendered useless by destructive input. It sounds like offering free spray cans next to a grey concrete wall. The only likely outcome would be ugly graffiti and simple tagging, and many artistic efforts would not be long lived. Still, it seems to work very well.[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-ebersbach10-8)

High editorial standards in medicine have led to the idea of expert-moderated wikis.[[19]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-18) Some wikis allow one to link to specific versions of articles, which has been useful to the scientific community, in that expert peer reviewers could analyse articles, improve them and provide links to the trusted version of that article.[[20]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-19)

Noveck points out that "participants are accredited by members of the wiki community, who have a vested interest in preserving the quality of the work product, on the basis of their ongoing participation." On controversial topics that have been subject to disruptive editing, a wiki may restrict editing to registered users.[[21]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Noveck-20)

### Trustworthiness

Critics of publicly editable wiki systems argue that these systems could be easily tampered with, while proponents argue that the community of users can catch malicious content and correct it.[[2]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Britannica-1) Lars Aronsson, a data systems specialist, summarizes the controversy as follows:

Most people, when they first learn about the wiki concept, assume that a Web site that can be edited by anybody would soon be rendered useless by destructive input. It sounds like offering free spray cans next to a grey concrete wall. The only likely outcome would be ugly graffiti and simple tagging, and many artistic efforts would not be long lived. Still, it seems to work very well.[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-ebersbach10-8)

High editorial standards in medicine have led to the idea of expert-moderated wikis.[[19]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-18) Some wikis allow one to link to specific versions of articles, which has been useful to the scientific community, in that expert peer reviewers could analyse articles, improve them and provide links to the trusted version of that article.[[20]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-19)

Noveck points out that "participants are accredited by members of the wiki community, who have a vested interest in preserving the quality of the work product, on the basis of their ongoing participation." On controversial topics that have been subject to disruptive editing, a wiki may restrict editing to registered users.[[21]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Noveck-20)

### Security

The open philosophy of most wikis, allowing anyone to edit content, does not ensure that every editor is well-meaning. [Virtual vandalism](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Virtual_vandalism&action=edit&redlink=1) can be a major problem. In larger wiki sites, such as those run by the [Wikimedia Foundation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikimedia_Foundation), [vandalism](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vandalism) can go unnoticed for a period of time. Wikis, because of their open access, are susceptible to intentional disruption, known as "[trolling](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet))". Wikis tend to take a [*soft-security*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Soft_security)[[22]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-soft_security-21) approach to the problem of vandalism; making damage easy to undo rather than attempting to prevent damage. Larger wikis often employ sophisticated methods, such as bots that automatically identify and revert vandalism and JavaScript enhancements that show characters that have been added in each edit. In this way vandalism can be limited to just "minor vandalism" or "sneaky vandalism", where the characters added/eliminated are so few that bots do not identify them and users do not pay much attention to them.[[*citation needed*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:Citation_needed)]

The amount of vandalism a wiki receives depends on how open the wiki is. For instance, some wikis allow unregistered users, identified by their [IP addresses](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/IP_address), to edit content, whilst others limit this function to just registered users. Most wikis allow anonymous editing without an account,[[23]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-22) but give registered users additional editing functions; on most wikis, becoming a registered user is a short and simple process. Some wikis require an additional waiting period before gaining access to certain tools. For example, on the [English Wikipedia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Wikipedia), registered users can rename pages only if their account is at least four days old. Other wikis such as the [Portuguese Wikipedia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Portuguese_Wikipedia) use an editing requirement instead of a time requirement, granting extra tools after the user has made a certain number of edits to prove their trustworthiness and usefulness as an editor. Basically, "closed up" wikis are more secure and reliable but grow slowly, whilst more open wikis grow at a steady rate but result in being an easy target for vandalism. A clear example of this would be [that of Wikipedia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vandalism_of_Wikipedia) and [Citizendium](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Citizendium). The first is extremely open, allowing anyone with a computer and internet access to edit it, making it grow rapidly, whilst the latter requires the users' real name and a biography of themselves, affecting the growth of the wiki but creating an almost "vandalism-free" ambiance.

Edit wars can also occur as users repetitively revert a page to the version they favor. Some wiki software allows an administrator to stop such edit wars by locking a page from further editing until a decision has been made on what version of the page would be most appropriate.[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Legal-5) For example, an article named Dolf was deemed not [notable](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Notability) and after[debate](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Debate) between several users a new article on a more general topic was created called [Dart Golf](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dart_Golf).[[*clarification needed*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:Please_clarify)]

Some wikis are in a better position than others to control behavior due to governance structures existing outside the wiki. For instance, a college teacher can create incentives for students to behave themselves on a class wiki they administer, by limiting editing to logged-in users and pointing out that all contributions can be traced back to the contributors. Bad behavior can then be dealt with in accordance with university policies.[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Augar-7)

#### Potential malware vector

[Malware](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Malware) can also be problem, as users can add links to sites hosting malicious code. For example, a German Wikipedia article about the [Blaster Worm](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Blaster_Worm) was edited to include a hyperlink to a malicious website. Users of vulnerable Microsoft Windows systems who followed the link would be infected.[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Legal-5) A countermeasure is the use of software that prevents users from saving an edit that contains a link to a site listed on a [blacklist](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Blacklist) of malware sites.[[24]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-23)

Many wiki [communities](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Communities) are private, particularly within [enterprises](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Enterprise_software). They are often used as [internal documentation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Internal_documentation) for in-house systems and applications. Some companies use wikis to allow customers to help produce software documentation.[[25]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-24) A study of corporate wiki users found that they could be divided into "synthesizers" and "adders" of content. Synthesizers' frequency of contribution was affected more by their impact on other wiki users, while adders' contribution frequency was affected more by being able to accomplish their immediate work.[[26]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-25) In 2005, the Gartner Group, noting the increasing popularity of wikis, estimated that they would become mainstream collaboration tools in at least 50% of companies by 2009.[[27]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-26) Wikis can be used for [project management](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Project_management).[[28]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-27)[[29]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-28)[[30]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-29)

Wikis have also been used in the academic community for sharing and dissemination of information across institutional and international boundaries.[[31]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-30) In those settings, they have been found useful for collaboration on [grant writing](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Grant_writing), [strategic planning](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Strategic_planning), departmental documentation, and committee work.[[32]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-31) In the mid-2000s, the increasing trend amongst industries toward collaboration was placing a heavier impetus upon educators to make students proficient in collaborative work, inspiring even greater interest in wikis being used in the classroom.[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Legal-5)

Wikis have found some use within the legal profession, and within government. Examples include the [Central Intelligence Agency](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Central_Intelligence_Agency)'s [Intellipedia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Intellipedia), designed to share and collect[intelligence](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Intelligence_assessment), dKospedia, which was used by the [American Civil Liberties Union](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/American_Civil_Liberties_Union) to assist with review of documents pertaining to internment of detainees in [Guantánamo Bay](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Guantánamo_Bay)[[*citation needed*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:Citation_needed)]; and the wiki of the [United States Court of Appeals for the Seventh Circuit](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Court_of_Appeals_for_the_Seventh_Circuit), used to post court rules and allow practitioners to comment and ask questions. The[United States Patent and Trademark Office](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Patent_and_Trademark_Office) uses a wiki to allow the public to collaborate on finding [prior art](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Prior_art) relevant to examination of pending patent applications. [Queens](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Queens), New York has used a wiki to allow citizens to collaborate on the design and planning of a local park. [Cornell Law School](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cornell_Law_School) founded a wiki-based legal dictionary called Wex, whose growth has been hampered by restrictions on who can edit.[[21]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Noveck-20)

There also exist WikiNodes which are pages on wikis that describe related wikis. They are usually organized as neighbors and delegates. A *neighbor* wiki is simply a wiki that may discuss similar content or may otherwise be of interest. A *delegate* wiki is a wiki that agrees to have certain content delegated to that wiki.[[*citation needed*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:Citation_needed)]

One way of finding a wiki on a specific subject is to follow the wiki-node network from wiki to wiki; another is to take a Wiki "bus tour", for example: [Wikipedia's Tour Bus Stop](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:TourBusStop).[Domain names](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Domain_Name_System) containing "wiki" are growing in popularity to support specific niches.[[*citation needed*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:Citation_needed)]

The English Wikipedia has the largest user base among wikis on the [World Wide Web](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/World_Wide_Web)[[33]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-32) and ranks in the top 10 among all Web sites in terms of traffic.[[34]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-33) Other large wikis include the WikiWikiWeb, [Memory Alpha](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Memory_Alpha), [Wikitravel](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikitravel), World66[[*citation needed*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:Citation_needed)] and [Susning.nu](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Susning.nu), a Swedish-language knowledge base.

Medical and health-related wiki examples include [Ganfyd](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ganfyd), an online collaborative medical reference that is edited by medical professionals and invited non-medical experts.[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-BMC-6)

The four basic types of users who participate in wikis are reader, author, wiki administrator and system administrator. The system administrator is responsible for installation and maintenance of the wiki engine and the container web server. The wiki administrator maintains wiki content and is provided additional functions pertaining to pages (e.g. page protection and deletion), and can adjust users' access rights by, for instance, blocking them from editing.[[35]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-34)

### Growth factors

A study of several hundred wikis showed that a relatively high number of administrators for a given content size is likely to reduce growth[[36]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-35); that access controls restricting editing to registered users tends to reduce growth; that a lack of such access controls tends to fuel new user registration; and that higher administration ratios (i.e. admins/user) have no significant effect on content or population growth.[[37]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-36)

## Rules

Wikis typically have a set of rules governing user behavior. Wikipedia, for instance, has an intricate set of policies and guidelines summed up in its five pillars: Wikipedia is an encyclopedia; Wikipedia has a neutral point of view; Wikipedia is free content; Wikipedians should interact in a respectful and civil manner; and Wikipedia does not have firm rules. Many wikis have adopted a set of commandments. For instance, [Conservapedia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Conservapedia) commands, among other things, that its editors use "[B.C.](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Before_Christ)" rather than "[B.C.E.](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/B.C.E.)" when referring to years prior to the common era and refrain from "unproductive activity."[[42]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-41) One teacher instituted a commandment for a class wiki, "[Wiki unto others as you would have them wiki unto you](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Golden_Rule)."[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Augar-7)

## Legal environment

Joint authorship of articles, in which different users participate in correcting, editing, and compiling the finished product, can also cause editors to become [tenants in common](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tenants_in_common) of the copyright, making it impossible to republish without the permission of all co-owners, some of whose identities may be unknown due to pseudonymous or anonymous editing.[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Legal-5)However, where persons contribute to a collective work such as an encyclopedia, there is no joint ownership if the contributions are separate and distinguishable.[[43]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-42) Despite most wikis' tracking of individual contributions, the action of contributing to a wiki page is still arguably one of jointly correcting, editing, or compiling which would give rise to joint ownership.

Some copyright issues can be alleviated through the use of an [open content](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Open_content) license. Version 2 of the [GNU Free Documentation License](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/GNU_Free_Documentation_License) includes a specific provision for wiki relicensing; [Creative Commons](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Creative_Commons) licenses are also popular. When no license is specified, an implied license to read and add content to a wiki may be deemed to exist on the grounds of business necessity and the inherent nature of a wiki, although the legal basis for such an implied license may not exist in all circumstances.

Wikis and their users can be held liable for certain activities that occur on the wiki. If a wiki owner displays indifference and forgoes controls (such as banning copyright infringers) that he could have exercised to stop copyright infringement, he may be deemed to have authorized infringement, especially if the wiki is primarily used to infringe copyrights or obtains direct financial benefit, such as advertising revenue, from infringing activities.[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Legal-5) In the United States, wikis may benefit from Section 230 of the [Communications Decency Act](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Communications_Decency_Act), which protects sites that engage in "[Good Samaritan](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Good_Samaritan)" policing of harmful material, with no requirement on the quality or quantity of such self-policing.[[44]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-43) However, it has also been argued that a wiki's enforcement of certain rules, such as anti-bias, verifiability, reliable sourcing, and no-original-research policies, could pose legal risks.[[45]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-44) When [defamation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Defamation)occurs on a wiki, theoretically all users of the wiki can be held liable, because any of them had the ability to remove or amend the defamatory material from the "publication." It remains to be seen whether wikis will be regarded as more akin to an [internet service provider](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Internet_service_provider), which is generally not held liable due to its lack of control over publications' contents, than a publisher.[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Legal-5)

It has been recommended that trademark owners monitor what information is presented about their trademarks on wikis, since courts may use such content as evidence pertaining to public perceptions. Joshua Jarvis notes, "Once misinformation is identified, the trade mark owner can simply edit the entry."[[46]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-45)

## Etymology

It has been asserted that the verb to *troll* originates from [Old French](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Old_French) *troller*, a hunting term. A verb "trôler" is found in modern French-English dictionaries, where the main meaning given is "to lead, or drag, somebody about". In modern English usage, the verb to [*troll*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Trolling_(fishing)) describes a fishing technique of slowly dragging a lure or baited hook from a moving boat.[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-merriam-webster-6). A similar but distinct verb, "to trawl," describes the act of dragging a fishing net (not a line). Whereas trolling with a fishing line is recreational, trawling with a net is generally a commercial activity.

The noun *troll* comes from the [Old Norse](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Old_Norse) word for a [mythological monster](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll).[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-Online_Etymology_Dictionary-7). The word evokes the trolls of [Scandinavian folklore](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Scandinavian_folklore) and children's tales, where they are often creatures bent on mischief and wickedness. The contemporary use of the term is alleged to have appeared on the Internet in the late 1980s,[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-nyt-8) but the earliest known example is from 1992.[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-oed-9) Early non-Internet related use of *trolling* for actions deliberately performed to provoke a reaction can be found in the military; by 1972 the term *trolling for*[*MiGs*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mikoyan) was documented in use by [US Navy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/US_Navy) pilots in [Vietnam](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vietnam).[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-10)

### Early history

The most likely derivation of the word troll can be found in the phrase "trolling for newbies", popularized in the early 1990s in the [Usenet](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Usenet) group, *alt.folklore.urban* (AFU).[[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-Porter-11)[[13]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-GoogleUsenet-12) This use is lifted from [Polari](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Polari), which means walking about looking partners, especially [trade](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Trade_(gay_slang)). Commonly, what is meant is a relatively gentle inside joke by veteran users, presenting questions or topics that had been so overdone that only a new user would respond to them earnestly. For example, a veteran of the group might make a post on the [common misconception](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_common_misconceptions) that [glass flows over time](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Glass" \l "Behavior_of_antique_glass). Long-time readers would both recognize the poster's name and know that the topic had been discussed a lot, but new subscribers to the group would not realize, and would thus respond. These types of trolls served as a practice to identify group insiders. This definition of trolling, considerably narrower than the modern understanding of the term, was considered a positive contribution.[[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-Porter-11)[[14]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-SDope-13) One of the most notorious AFU trollers, David Mikkelson,[[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-Porter-11) went on to create the urban folklore website [Snopes.com](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Snopes.com).

By the late 1990s, *alt.folklore.urban* had such heavy traffic and participation that trolling of this sort was frowned upon. Others expanded the term to include the practice of playing a seriously misinformed or deluded user, even in [newsgroups](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Newsgroup) where one was not a regular; these were often attempts at humor rather than provocation. In such contexts, the noun*troll* usually referred to an act of trolling, rather than to the author.

### In other languages

In [Icelandic](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Icelandic_language), *[þurs](http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/en:þurs" \l "Icelandic)* (a [thurs](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thurs)) or *[tröll](http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/en:tröll" \l "Icelandic)* (a [troll](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll)) may refer to trolls, the verbs *þursa* (to troll) or *þursast* (to be trolling, to troll about) may be used.

In [Chinese](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chinese_language), trolling is referred to as *bái mù* ([Chinese](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chinese_language): [白目](http://zh.wikipedia.org/wiki/白目); literally "white eye"), which can be straightforwardly explained as "eyes without pupils", in the sense that whilst the [pupil](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pupil)of the eye is used for vision, the white section of the eye cannot see, and trolling involves blindly talking nonsense over the internet, having total disregard to sensitivities or being oblivious to the situation at hand, akin to having eyes without pupils. An alternative term is *bái làn* ([Chinese](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chinese_language): 白爛; literally "white rot"), which describes a post completely nonsensical and full of folly made to upset others, and derives from a Taiwanese slang term for the [male genitalia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Male_genitalia), where genitalia that is pale white in colour represents that someone is young, and thus foolish. Both terms originate from [Taiwan](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Taiwan), and are also used in [Hong Kong](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hong_Kong) and [mainland China](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mainland_China). Another term, *xiǎo bái* ([Chinese](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chinese_language): 小白; literally "little white") is a derogatory term that refers to both *bái mù* and *bái làn* that is used on anonymous posting internet forums.

In [Japanese](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Japanese_language), *[tsuri](http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/en:tsuri" \l "Japanese)* ([釣り](http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/en:釣り" \l "Japanese)[**?**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Help:Installing_Japanese_character_sets)) means "fishing" and refers to intentionally misleading posts whose only purpose is to get the readers to react, i.e. get trolled. *[arashi](http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/en:arashi" \l "Japanese)* ([荒らし](http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/en:荒らし" \l "Japanese)[**?**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Help:Installing_Japanese_character_sets)) means "laying waste" and can also be used to refer to simple [spamming](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spam_(electronic)).

In [Korean](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Korean_language), *nak-si* (낚시) means "fishing", and is used to refer to Internet trolling attempts, as well as purposefully misleading post titles. A person who recognizes the troll after having responded (or, in case of a post title nak-si, having read the actual post) would often refer to himself as a caught fish.[[*citation needed*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:Citation_needed)]

In [Portuguese](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Portuguese_language), more commonly in its [Brazilian](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Brazilian_Portuguese) variant, [troll](http://pt.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll) (produced [[ˈtɾɔw]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:IPA_for_Portuguese_and_Galician), in Portuguese [spelling pronunciation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spelling_pronunciation)) is the usual term to denote internet trolls (examples of common derivate terms are *trollismo* or *trollagem*, "trolling", and the verb *trollar*, "to troll", which entered popular use), but an older expression, used by those which want to avoid [anglicisms](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anglicism)or [slangs](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Slang), is [*complexo do pombo enxadrista*](http://pt.wikipedia.org/wiki/Complexo_do_pombo_enxadrista) to denote trolling behavior, and *pombos enxadristas* (literally, "chessplayer pigeons") or simply *pombos* are the terms used to name the trolls. The terms are explained by an [adage](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Adage) or popular saying: "Arguing with *[fulano](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Placeholder_names_in_different_languages" \l "Portuguese)* ([John Doe](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Doe) is its nearest equivalent) is the same as playing [chess](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chess) with a [pigeon](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pigeon): the pigeon defecates on the table, drop the pieces and simply [fly](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Flight), claiming victory."

In [Thai](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thai_language), the term "krean" (เกรียน) has been adopted to address Internet trolls. The term literally refers to a closely cropped hairstyle worn by most school boys in Thailand, thus equating Internet trolls to school boys. The term "tob krean" (ตบเกรียน), or "slapping a cropped head", refers to the act of posting intellectual replies to refute and cause the messages of Internet trolls to be perceived as unintelligent.[[*citation needed*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:Citation_needed)]

## Trolling, identity, and anonymity

Early incidences of trolling were considered to be the same as [flaming](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Flaming_(Internet)), but this has changed with modern usage by the news media to refer to the creation of any content that targets another person. The Internet dictionary NetLingo suggests there are four grades of trolling: playtime trolling, tactical trolling, strategic trolling, and domination trolling.[[15]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-14) The relationship between trolling and flaming was observed in open-access forums in California, on a series of modem-linked computers in the 1970s, like *CommuniTree* which when accessed by high school teenagers became a ground for trashing and abuse.[[16]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-guar-15) Some psychologists have suggested that flaming would be caused by [deindividuation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Deindividuation) or decreased self-evaluation: [the anonymity of online postings would lead to disinhibition](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Online_disinhibition_effect) amongst individuals[[17]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-16) Others have suggested that although flaming and trolling is often unpleasant, it may be a form of normative behavior that expresses the [social identity](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Social_identity) of a certain user group [[18]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-17)[[19]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-18) According to Tom Postmes, a professor of social and organisational psychology at the universities of Exeter and Groningen, Netherlands, and the author of *Individuality and the Group*, who has studied online behavior for 20 years, "Trolls aspire to violence, to the level of trouble they can cause in an environment. They want it to kick off. They want to promote antipathetic emotions of disgust and outrage, which morbidly gives them a sense of pleasure."[[16]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-guar-15)

In academic [literature](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Literature), the practice of trolling was first documented by [Judith Donath](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Judith_Donath) (1999). Donath's paper outlines the ambiguity of identity in a disembodied "[virtual community](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Virtual_community)" such as [Usenet](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Usenet):

In the physical world there is an inherent unity to the self, for the body provides a compelling and convenient definition of identity. The norm is: one body, one identity ... The virtual world is different. It is composed of information rather than matter.[[20]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-mit-19)

Donath provides a concise overview of [identity deception](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Identity_deception) games which trade on the confusion between physical and [epistemic community](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Epistemic_community):

Trolling is a game about identity deception, albeit one that is played without the consent of most of the players. The troll attempts to pass as a legitimate participant, sharing the group's common interests and concerns; the newsgroups members, if they are cognizant of trolls and other identity deceptions, attempt to both distinguish real from trolling postings, and upon judging a poster a troll, make the offending poster leave the group. Their success at the former depends on how well they – and the troll – understand identity cues; their success at the latter depends on whether the troll's enjoyment is sufficiently diminished or outweighed by the costs imposed by the group. Trolls can be costly in several ways. A troll can disrupt the discussion on a newsgroup, disseminate bad advice, and damage the feeling of trust in the newsgroup community. Furthermore, in a group that has become sensitized to trolling – where the rate of deception is high – many honestly naïve questions may be quickly rejected as trollings. This can be quite off-putting to the new user who upon venturing a first posting is immediately bombarded with angry accusations. Even if the accusation is unfounded, being branded a troll is quite damaging to one's online reputation.[[20]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-mit-19)

Susan Herring and colleagues in "Searching for Safety Online: Managing 'Trolling' in a Feminist Forum" point out the difficulty inherent in monitoring trolling and maintaining freedom of speech in online communities: "harassment often arises in spaces known for their freedom, lack of censure, and experimental nature".[[21]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-IUinformatics-20) Free speech may lead to tolerance of trolling behavior, complicating the members' efforts to maintain an open, yet supportive discussion area, especially for sensitive topics such as race, gender, and sexuality.[[21]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-IUinformatics-20)

In an effort to reduce uncivil behavior by increasing accountability, many we

## Troll sites

While many webmasters and forum administrators consider trolls a scourge on their sites, some websites welcome them. For example, a [*New York Times*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/New_York_Times) article discussed troll activity at [4chan](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/4chan) and at [Encyclopedia Dramatica](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Encyclopedia_Dramatica), which it described as "an online compendium of troll humor and troll lore".[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-nyt-8) This site and others are often used as a base to troll against sites that their members can not normally post on. These trolls feed off the reactions of their victims because "their agenda is to take delight in causing trouble".[[28]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-foxsp-27)

## Media coverage and controversy

Mainstream media outlets have focused their attention on the willingness of some Internet trolls to go to extreme lengths in their attempts at eliciting reactions.

### United States

On March 31, 2010, the [*Today Show*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Today_(NBC_program)) ran a segment detailing the deaths of three separate adolescent girls and trolls' subsequent reactions to their deaths. Shortly after the suicide of high school student Alexis Pilkington, anonymous posters began trolling for reactions across various message boards, referring to Pilkington as a "suicidal slut", and posting graphic images on her [Facebook](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Facebook) memorial page. The segment also included an expose of [a 2006 accident](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Nikki_Catsouras_photographs_controversy), in which an eighteen-year old fatally crashed her father's car into a highway pylon; trolls emailed her grieving family the leaked pictures of her mutilated corpse.[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-Trolling:TheTodayShowExplorestheDarkSideoftheInternet-5)

### Australia

In February 2010, the Australian government became involved after trolls defaced the Facebook tribute pages of murdered children Trinity Bates and Elliott Fletcher. Australian communications minister [Stephen Conroy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stephen_Conroy) decried the attacks, committed mainly by 4chan users, as evidence of the need for greater Internet regulation, stating, "This argument that the Internet is some mystical creation that no laws should apply to, that is a recipe for anarchy and the wild west."[[29]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-28) Conroy has been noted in the past for his advocacy of Internet censorship. In the wake of these events, Facebook responded by strongly urging administrators to be aware of ways to ban users and remove inappropriate content from Facebook pages.[[30]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-29)

### United Kingdom

In the United Kingdom, contributions made to the Internet are covered by the [Communications Act 2003](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Communications_Act_2003). Sending messages which are "grossly offensive or of an indecent, obscene or menacing character" is an offense whether they are received by the intended recipient or not.[[31]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-30) As of September 2011, two persons have been imprisoned in the UK for trolling.[[32][32]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-Tom_de_Castella_and_Virginia_Brown-31) Several high profile cases of trolling have been reported in the United Kingdom, with there being wide disparity between the action taken against assailants. In the case of teenager, Natasha MacBryde, who died a tragic death, the troll of her testimonial page, Sean Duffy, was sentenced to 18 weeks in prison and banned from using social networking sites for five years. [[33]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-32) This compared with Jamie Counsel being sentenced to four years for trying to incite riots [[34]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-33) and those who trolled the testimonial page of Georgia Varley facing no prosecution due to misunderstandings of the legal system in the wake of the term trolling being popularized [[35]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-34)

## Usage

Application of the term *troll* is [subjective](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Subjectivity). Some readers may characterize a post as *trolling*, while others may regard the same post as a legitimate contribution to the discussion, even if controversial. Like any [pejorative](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pejorative) term, it can be used as an [*ad hominem*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ad_hominem) attack, suggesting a negative motivation.

Regardless of the circumstances, controversial posts may attract a particularly strong response from those unfamiliar with the robust dialogue found in some online, rather than physical, communities. Experienced participants in online forums know that the most effective way to discourage a troll is usually to ignore it, because responding tends to encourage trolls to continue disruptive posts – hence the often-seen warning: "Please do not feed the trolls".

## Examples

As reported on April 8, 1999, investors became victims of trolling via an online financial discussion regarding PairGain, a telephone equipment company based in California. Trolls operating in the stock’s [Yahoo Finance](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yahoo) chat room posted a fabricated [Bloomberg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bloomberg_Television) News article stating that an Israeli telecom company could potentially acquire PairGain. As a result, PairGain’s stock jumped by 31%. However, the stock promptly crashed after the reports were identified as false.[[36]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-Bond-35)

So-called Gold Membership trolling originated in 2007 on [4chan](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/4chan) boards, users posting fake images claiming to offer upgraded 4chan account privileges; without a "Gold" account, one could not view certain content. This turned out to be a hoax designed to fool board members, especially newcomers. It was copied and became an [Internet meme](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Internet_meme). In some cases, this type of troll has been used as a scam, most notably on Facebook, where fake Facebook Gold Account upgrade ads have proliferated in order to link users to dubious websites and other content.[[37]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-36)

The case of [*Zeran v. America Online, Inc.*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Zeran_v._America_Online,_Inc.) resulted primarily from trolling. Six days after the [Oklahoma City bombing](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Oklahoma_City_bombing), anonymous users posted advertisements for shirts celebrating the bombing on AOL message boards, claiming that the shirts could be obtained by contacting Mr. Kenneth Zeran. The posts listed Zeran's address and home phone number. Zeran was subsequently harassed.[[36]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-Bond-35)

[Anti-Scientology](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Criticism_of_Scientology) protests by [Anonymous](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anonymous_(group)), commonly known as [Project Chanology](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Project_Chanology), are sometimes labeled as "trolling" by media such as [*Wired*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wired_magazine),[[38]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-37) and the participants sometimes explicitly self-identify as "trolls".

On February 3, 2007 the [Gay Nigger Association of America](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gay_Nigger_Association_of_America) (GNAA), an Internet trolling group, successfully managed to convince CNN reporter [Paula Zahn](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Paula_Zahn) that "one in three Americans" believe that the [September 11, 2001 terror attacks](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/September_11_attacks) were [carried out by Israeli agents](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/9/11_conspiracy_theories" \l "Israel). [[39]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-CNN3-38) CNN subsequently ran a story, erroneously reporting this, as well as including screenshots of the GNAA-owned website "jewsdidwtc.com". The story involved a round-table discussion regarding antisemitism and an interview with the father of a Jewish 9/11 victim. [[40]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-CNN2-39) The GNAA-owned website said that "over 4,000" Jews were absent from work at the World Trade Center on 9/11.[[40]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-CNN2-39) A *concern troll* is a [false flag](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/False_flag) pseudonym created by a user whose actual [point of view](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Perspective_(cognitive)) is opposed to the one that the user claims to hold. The concern troll posts in Web forums devoted to its declared point of view and attempts to sway the group's actions or opinions while claiming to [share their goals](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ingroup_bias), but with professed "concerns". The goal is to sow [fear, uncertainty and doubt](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fear,_uncertainty_and_doubt) within the group.[[23]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-timemag-22)

An example of this occurred in 2006 when Tad Furtado, a staffer for then-Congressman [Charles Bass](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles_Bass) ([R](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Republican_Party_(United_States))-[NH](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/New_Hampshire)), was caught posing as a "concerned" supporter of Bass's opponent,[Democrat](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic_Party_(United_States)) [Paul Hodes](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Paul_Hodes), on several liberal [New Hampshire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/New_Hampshire) blogs, using the pseudonyms "IndieNH" or "IndyNH". "IndyNH" expressed concern that Democrats might just be wasting their time or money on Hodes, because Bass was unbeatable.[[24]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-ConcordMonitor-23)[[25]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-WMUR-24) Hodes eventually won the election.

Although the term "concern troll" originated in discussions of online behavior, it now sees increasing use to describe similar behaviors that take place offline. For example, James Wolcott of *Vanity Fair* accused a conservative [*New York Daily News*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/New_York_Daily_News) columnist of "concern troll" behavior in his efforts to downplay the [Mark Foley scandal](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mark_Foley_scandal). Wolcott links what he calls concern trolls to what [Saul Alinsky](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Saul_Alinsky) calls "Do-Nothings", giving a long quote from Alinsky on the Do-Nothings' method and effects:

These Do-Nothings profess a commitment to social change for ideals of justice, equality, and opportunity, and then abstain from and discourage all effective action for change. They are known by their brand, 'I agree with your ends but not your means.'[[26]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-vanfair-25)

[*The Hill*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Hill_(newspaper)) published an op-ed piece by [Markos Moulitsas](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Markos_Moulitsas) of the liberal blog [Daily Kos](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Daily_Kos) titled "Dems: Ignore 'Concern Trolls'". The concern trolls in question were not Internet participants; they were Republicans offering public advice and warnings to the Democrats. The author defines "concern trolling" as "offering a poisoned apple in the form of advice to political opponents that, if taken, would harm the recipient".[[27]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-thehill-26)

## Media coverage and controversy

Mainstream media outlets have focused their attention on the willingness of some Internet trolls to go to extreme lengths in their attempts at eliciting reactions.

### United States

On March 31, 2010, the [*Today Show*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Today_(NBC_program)) ran a segment detailing the deaths of three separate adolescent girls and trolls' subsequent reactions to their deaths. Shortly after the suicide of high school student Alexis Pilkington, anonymous posters began trolling for reactions across various message boards, referring to Pilkington as a "suicidal slut", and posting graphic images on her [Facebook](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Facebook) memorial page. The segment also included an expose of [a 2006 accident](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Nikki_Catsouras_photographs_controversy), in which an eighteen-year old fatally crashed her father's car into a highway pylon; trolls emailed her grieving family the leaked pictures of her mutilated corpse.[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-Trolling:TheTodayShowExplorestheDarkSideoftheInternet-5)

### Australia

In February 2010, the Australian government became involved after trolls defaced the Facebook tribute pages of murdered children Trinity Bates and Elliott Fletcher. Australian communications minister [Stephen Conroy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stephen_Conroy) decried the attacks, committed mainly by 4chan users, as evidence of the need for greater Internet regulation, stating, "This argument that the Internet is some mystical creation that no laws should apply to, that is a recipe for anarchy and the wild west."[[29]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-28) Conroy has been noted in the past for his advocacy of Internet censorship. In the wake of these events, Facebook responded by strongly urging administrators to be aware of ways to ban users and remove inappropriate content from Facebook pages.[[30]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-29)

### United Kingdom

In the United Kingdom, contributions made to the Internet are covered by the [Communications Act 2003](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Communications_Act_2003). Sending messages which are "grossly offensive or of an indecent, obscene or menacing character" is an offense whether they are received by the intended recipient or not.[[31]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-30) As of September 2011, two persons have been imprisoned in the UK for trolling.[[32][32]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-Tom_de_Castella_and_Virginia_Brown-31) Several high profile cases of trolling have been reported in the United Kingdom, with there being wide disparity between the action taken against assailants. In the case of teenager, Natasha MacBryde, who died a tragic death, the troll of her testimonial page, Sean Duffy, was sentenced to 18 weeks in prison and banned from using social networking sites for five years. [[33]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-32) This compared with Jamie Counsel being sentenced to four years for trying to incite riots [[34]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-33) and those who trolled the testimonial page of Georgia Varley facing no prosecution due to misunderstandings of the legal system in the wake of the term trolling being popularized [[35]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-34)

## Usage

Application of the term *troll* is [subjective](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Subjectivity). Some readers may characterize a post as *trolling*, while others may regard the same post as a legitimate contribution to the discussion, even if controversial. Like any [pejorative](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pejorative) term, it can be used as an [*ad hominem*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ad_hominem) attack, suggesting a negative motivation.

Regardless of the circumstances, controversial posts may attract a particularly strong response from those unfamiliar with the robust dialogue found in some online, rather than physical, communities. Experienced participants in online forums know that the most effective way to discourage a troll is usually to ignore it, because responding tends to encourage trolls to continue disruptive posts – hence the often-seen warning: "Please do not feed the trolls".

## Examples

As reported on April 8, 1999, investors became victims of trolling via an online financial discussion regarding PairGain, a telephone equipment company based in California. Trolls operating in the stock’s [Yahoo Finance](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yahoo) chat room posted a fabricated [Bloomberg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bloomberg_Television) News article stating that an Israeli telecom company could potentially acquire PairGain. As a result, PairGain’s stock jumped by 31%. However, the stock promptly crashed after the reports were identified as false.[[36]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-Bond-35)

So-called Gold Membership trolling originated in 2007 on [4chan](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/4chan) boards, users posting fake images claiming to offer upgraded 4chan account privileges; without a "Gold" account, one could not view certain content. This turned out to be a hoax designed to fool board members, especially newcomers. It was copied and became an [Internet meme](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Internet_meme). In some cases, this type of troll has been used as a scam, most notably on Facebook, where fake Facebook Gold Account upgrade ads have proliferated in order to link users to dubious websites and other content.[[37]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-36)

The case of [*Zeran v. America Online, Inc.*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Zeran_v._America_Online,_Inc.) resulted primarily from trolling. Six days after the [Oklahoma City bombing](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Oklahoma_City_bombing), anonymous users posted advertisements for shirts celebrating the bombing on AOL message boards, claiming that the shirts could be obtained by contacting Mr. Kenneth Zeran. The posts listed Zeran's address and home phone number. Zeran was subsequently harassed.[[36]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-Bond-35)

[Anti-Scientology](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Criticism_of_Scientology) protests by [Anonymous](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anonymous_(group)), commonly known as [Project Chanology](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Project_Chanology), are sometimes labeled as "trolling" by media such as [*Wired*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wired_magazine),[[38]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-37) and the participants sometimes explicitly self-identify as "trolls".

On February 3, 2007 the [Gay Nigger Association of America](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gay_Nigger_Association_of_America) (GNAA), an Internet trolling group, successfully managed to convince CNN reporter [Paula Zahn](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Paula_Zahn) that "one in three Americans" believe that the [September 11, 2001 terror attacks](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/September_11_attacks) were [carried out by Israeli agents](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/9/11_conspiracy_theories" \l "Israel). [[39]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-CNN3-38) CNN subsequently ran a story, erroneously reporting this, as well as including screenshots of the GNAA-owned website "jewsdidwtc.com". The story involved a round-table discussion regarding antisemitism and an interview with the father of a Jewish 9/11 victim. [[40]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-CNN2-39) The GNAA-owned website said that "over 4,000" Jews were absent from work at the World Trade Center on 9/11.[[40]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-CNN2-39)

## See also

The term "cyberbullying" is attributed to anti-bullying activist [Bill Belsey](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bill_Belsey).[[1]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-Cyberbullying.org-0)

### Legal definition

Cyberbullying is defined in legal glossaries as

* actions that use information and communication technologies to support deliberate, repeated, and hostile behavior by an individual or group, that is intended to harm another or others.
* use of communication technologies for the intention of harming another person
* use of internet service and mobile technologies such as web pages and discussion groups as well as instant messaging or [SMS](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/SMS) text messaging with the intention of harming another person.

Examples of what constitutes cyberbullying include communications that seek to intimidate, control, manipulate, put down, falsely discredit, or humiliate the recipient. The actions are deliberate, repeated, and hostile behavior intended to harm another. Cyberbullying has been defined by [The National Crime Prevention Council](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_National_Crime_Prevention_Council): “when the Internet, cell phones or other devices are used to send or post text or images intended to hurt or embarrass another person.[[2]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-1)[[3]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-2)

A cyberbully may be a person whom the target knows or an online stranger. A cyberbully may be anonymous and may solicit involvement of other people online who do not even know the target.

### Cyberbullying vs. cyberstalking

Further information: [*Cyberstalking*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyberstalking)

The practice of cyberbullying is not limited children and, while the behavior is identified by the same definition when practiced by adults, the distinction in age groups sometimes refers to the abuse as [cyberstalking](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyberstalking) or [cyberharassment](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyberharassment) when perpetrated by adults toward adults. Common tactics used by cyberstalkers are performed in public forums, social media or online information sites and are intended to threaten a victim's earnings, employment, reputation, or safety. Behaviors may include encouraging others to harass the victim and trying to affect a victim's online participation. Many cyberstalkers try to damage the reputation of their victim and turn other people against them.

Cyberstalking may include false accusations, monitoring, making threats, identity theft, damage to data or equipment, the solicitation of minors for sex, or gathering information in order to harass. A repeated pattern of such actions and [harassment](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Harassment) against a target by an adult constitutes cyberstalking.[[4]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-3) There are consequences of law in offline stalking and online stalking, and cyber-stalkers can be put in jail.[[5]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-4) Cyberstalking is a form of cyberbullying.

### Methods used

Manuals to educate the public, teachers and parents summarize, "Cyberbullying is being cruel to others by sending or posting harmful material using a cell phone or the internet." Research, legislation and education in the field are ongoing. Basic definitions and guidelines to help recognize and cope with what is regarded as abuse of electronic communications have been identified.

* Cyberbullying involves repeated behavior with intent to harm and repeated nature
* Cyberbullying is perpetrated through [Harassment](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Harassment), [Cyberstalking](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyberstalking), Denigration (sending or posting cruel rumors and falsehoods to damage reputation and friendships),[Impersonation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Impersonation), Exclusion (intentionally and cruelly excluding someone from an online group)[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-5)

Cyberbullying can be as simple as continuing to send e-mail or text harassing someone who has said they want no further contact with the sender. It may also include public actions such as repeated [threats](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Threat), sexual remarks, pejorative labels (i.e., [hate speech](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hate_speech)) or defamatory false accusations), ganging up on a victim by making the person the subject of ridicule in online forums, hacking into or vandalizing sites about a person, and posting false statements as fact aimed a discrediting or humiliating a targeted person. Cyberbullying could be limited to posting rumors about a person on the internet with the intention of bringing about hatred in others' minds or convincing others to dislike or participate in online denigration of a target. It may go to the extent of personally identifying victims of crime and publishing materials severely defaming or humiliating them.[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-6)

Cyberbullies may disclose victims' personal data (e.g. real name, home address, or workplace/schools) at websites or forums or may use [impersonation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Impersonation), creating fake accounts, comments or sites posing as their target for the purpose of publishing material in their name that defames, discredits or ridicules them.

Some cyberbullies may also send threatening and harassing emails, instant messages or texts to the victims. Others post rumors or gossip and instigate others to dislike and gang up on the target.

### Growing awareness

The term "cyberbullying" was first coined and defined by Canadian educator and anti-bullying activist [Bill Belsey](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bill_Belsey), as "the use of information and communication technologies to support deliberate, repeated, and hostile behavior by an individual or group, that is intended to harm others."[[1]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-Cyberbullying.org-0)

Cyberbullying has subsequently been defined as "when the Internet, cell phones or other devices are used to send or post text or images intended to hurt or embarrass another person".[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-7) Other researchers use similar language to describe the phenomenon.[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-8)[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin-9)

## Law enforcement: cyberbullying, cyberstalking and electronic harassment

A majority of states have laws that explicitly include electronic forms of communication within stalking or harassment laws.[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-10)[[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-11)

Most law enforcement agencies have cyber-crime units and often Internet stalking is treated with more seriousness than reports of physical stalking.[[13]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-12) Help and resources can be searched by State or area.

### Schools

The safety of schools is increasingly becoming a focus of state legislative action. There was an increase in cyberbullying enacted legislation between 2006-2010.[[14]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-13)

In 2012, a group of teens in New Haven, Connecticut developed an app to help fight bullying. Called "Back Off Bully" (BOB), the web app is an anonymous resource for computer, smart phone or iPad. When someone witnesses or is the victim of bullying, they can immediately report the incident. The app asks questions about time, location and how the bullying is happening. As well as providing positive action and empowerment over an incident, the reported information helps by going to a data base where administrators study it. Common threads are spotted so others can intervene and break the bully's pattern.[[15]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-14) BOB, the brainchild of fourteen teens in a design class, is being considered as standard operating procedure at schools across the state.

### Protection for victims of any age

There are laws that only address online harassment of children or focus on child predators as well as laws that protect adult cyberstalking victims, or victims of any age. Currently, there are 45 cyberstalking (and related) laws on the books.

While some sites specialize in laws that protect victims age 18 and under, Working to Halt Online Abuse is a help resource containing a list of current and pending cyberstalking-related United States federal and state laws.[[16]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-15) It also lists those states that do not have laws yet and related laws from other countries. The Global Cyber Law Database (GCLD) aims to become the most comprehensive and authoritative source of cyber laws for all countries.[[17]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-16)

## Behavior

### Children and adolescents

Kids report being mean to each other online beginning as young as 2nd grade. According to research, boys initiate mean online activity earlier than girls do. However, by middle school, girls are more likely to engage in cyberbullying than boys do.[[18]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-17) Whether the bully is male or female, his or her purpose is to intentionally embarrass others, harass, intimidate, or make threats online to one another. This bullying occurs via email, text messaging, posts to blogs, and web sites.

The National Crime Prevention Association lists tactics often used by teen cyberbullies.[[19]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-18)

* Pretend they are other people online to trick others
* Spread lies and rumors about victims
* Trick people into revealing personal information
* Send or forward mean text messages
* Post pictures of victims without their consent

Studies in the psychosocial effects of cyberspace have begun to monitor the impacts cyberbullying may have on the victims, and the consequences it may lead to. Consequences of cyberbullying are multi-faceted, and affect online and offline behavior. Research on adolescents reported that changes in the victims' behavior as a result of cyberbullying could be positive. Victims "created a cognitive pattern of bullies, which consequently helped them to recognize aggressive people."[[20]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-19) However, the Journal of Psychosocial Research on Cyberspace abstract reports critical impacts in almost all of the respondents’, taking the form of lower self-esteem, loneliness, disillusionment, and distrust of people. The more extreme impacts were self-harm. Children have killed each other and committed suicide after having been involved in a cyberbullying incident.[[21]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-20)

The most current research in the field defines cyberbullying as "an aggressive, intentional act or behaviour that is carried out by a group or an individual repeatedly and over time against a victim who cannot easily defend him or herself" (Smith & Slonje, 2007, p. 249). [[22]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-21) Though the use of sexual remarks and threats are sometimes present in cyberbullying, it is not the same as sexual harassment, typically occurs among peers, and does not necessarily involve [sexual predators](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sexual_predators).

### Adults

Stalking online has criminal consequences just as physical stalking. A target's understanding of why cyberstalking is happening is helpful to remedy and take protective action to restore remedy. Cyberstalking is an extension of physical stalking.[[23]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-22) Among factors that motivate stalkers are: [envy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Envy), pathological obsession (professional or sexual), unemployment or failure with own job or life; intention to intimidate and cause others to feel inferior; the stalker is [delusional](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Delusional) and believes he/she "knows" the target; the stalker wants to instill fear in a person to justify his/her status; belief they can get away with it (anonymity).[[24]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-23)[[25]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-24) UK National Workplace Bullying Advice Line theorizes that bullies harass victims in order to make up for inadequacies in their own lives.[[26]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-25)

The US federal cyberstalking law is designed to prosecute people for using electronic means to repeatedly harass or threaten someone online. There are resources dedicated to assisting adult victims deal with cyberbullies legally and effectively. One of the steps recommended is to record everything and contact police.[[27]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-26) [[28]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-27)

## Research

In the summer of 2008, researchers Sameer Hinduja ([Florida Atlantic University](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Florida_Atlantic_University)) and Justin Patchin ([University of Wisconsin-Eau Claire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Wisconsin-Eau_Claire)) published a book on cyber-bullying that summarized the current state of cyber-bullying research. (*Bullying Beyond the Schoolyard: Preventing and Responding to Cyberbullying*).[[29]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin3-28) Their research documents that cyber-bullying instances have been increasing over the last several years. They also report findings from the most recent study of cyber-bullying among middle-school students. Using a random sample of approximately 2000 middle-school students from a large school district in the southern United States, about 10% of respondents had been cyber-bullied in the previous 30 days while over 17% reported being cyber-bullied at least once in their lifetime.[[29]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin3-28) While these rates are slightly lower than some of the findings from their previous research, Hinduja and Patchin point out that the earlier studies were predominantly conducted among older adolescents and Internet samples. That is, older youth use the Internet more frequently and are more likely to experience cyber-bullying than younger children.[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin-9)[[30]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin1-29)[[31]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin2-30)  
In addition to the current research, Sourander et al. (2010) conducted a population-based cross-sectional study that took place in Finland. The authors of this study took the self-reports of 2215 Finish adolescents between the ages of 13 to 16 years old about cyberbullying and cybervictimization during the past 6 months. It was found that, amongst the total sample, 4.8% were cybervictims only, 7.4% were cyberbullies only, and 5.4% were cyberbully-victims. Cybervictim-only status was associated with a variety of factors, including emotional and peer problems, sleeping difficulties, and feeling unsafe in school. Cyberbully-only status was associated with factors such as hyperactivity and low prosocial behavior, as well as conduct problems. Cyberbully-victim status was associated with all of the risk factors that were associated with both cybervictim-only status and cyberbully-only status. The authors of this study were able to conclude that cyberbullying as well as cybervictimization is associated not only with psychiatric issues, but psychosomatic issues. Many adolescents in the study reported headaches or difficulty sleeping. The authors believe that their results indicate a greater need for new ideas on how to prevent cyberbullying and what to do when it occurs. It is clearly a world-wide problem that needs to be taken seriously.[[32]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-31)

### Surveys and statistics

* 58% have not told their parents or an adult about something mean or hurtful that happened to them online.

A 2006 survey by Harris Interactive[[36]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-35) reported:

* 43% of U.S. teens having experienced some form of cyber-bullying in the past year.

Similarly, a Canadian study found:

* 23% of middle-schoolers surveyed had been bullied by e-mail
* 35% in chat rooms
* 41% by text messages on their cell phones
* Fully 41% did not know the identity of the perpetrators.

The Youth Internet Safety Survey-2, conducted by the Crimes Against Children Research Center at the [University of New Hampshire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_New_Hampshire) in 2005, found that 9% of the young people in the survey had experienced some form of harassment.[[37]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-ccrc-36) The survey was a nationally representative telephone survey of 1,500 youth 10–17 years old. One third reported feeling distressed by the incident, with distress being more likely for younger respondents and those who were the victims of aggressive harassment (including being telephoned, sent gifts, or visited at home by the harasser).[[38]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-ybarra-37) Compared to youth not harassed online, victims are more likely to have social problems. On the other hand, youth who harass others are more likely to have problems with rule breaking and aggression.[[39]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-ybarra2-38) Significant overlap is seen — youth who are harassed are significantly more likely to also harass others.

Hinduja and Patchin completed a study in the summer of 2005 of approximately 1,500 Internet-using adolescents and found that over one-third of youth reported being victimized online, and over 16% of respondents admitted to cyber-bullying others. While most of the instances of cyber-bullying involved relatively minor behavior (41% were disrespected, 19% were called names), over 12% were physically threatened and about 5% were scared for their safety. Notably, fewer than 15% of victims told an adult about the incident.[[30]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin1-29)

Additional research by Hinduja and Patchin[[31]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin2-30) found that youth who report being victims of cyber-bullying also experience stress or strain that is related to offline problem behaviors such as running away from home, cheating on a school test, skipping school, or using alcohol or marijuana. The authors acknowledge that both of these studies provide only preliminary information about the nature and consequences of online bullying, due to the methodological challenges associated with an online survey.

According to a 2005 survey by the [National Children's Home](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/NCH) charity and [Tesco Mobile](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tesco_Mobile)[[40]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-survey-39) of 770 youth between the ages of 11 and 19, 20% of respondents revealed that they had been bullied via electronic means. Almost three-quarters (73%) stated that they knew the bully, while 26% stated that the offender was a stranger. 10% of responders indicated that another person has taken a picture and/or video of them via a [cellular phone camera](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Camera_phone), consequently making them feel uncomfortable, embarrassed, or threatened. Many youths are not comfortable telling an authority figure about their cyber-bullying [victimization](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Victimization) for fear their access to technology will be taken from them; while 24% and 14% told a parent or teacher respectively, 28% did not tell anyone while 41% told a friend.[[40]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-survey-39)

A survey by the Crimes Against Children Research Center at the [University of New Hampshire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_New_Hampshire) in 2000 found that 6% of the young people in the survey had experienced some form of harassment including threats and negative rumours and 2% had suffered distressing harassment.[[37]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-ccrc-36)

Reporting on the results from a meta analysis from European Union countries, Hasebrink et al. (2009)[[41]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-Hasebrink-40) estimated (via median results) that approximately 18% of European young people had been "bullied/harassed/stalked" via the internet and mobile phones. Cyber-harassment rates for young people across the EU member states ranged from 10% to 52%.

The nation-wide Australian Covert Bullying Prevalence Survey (Cross et al., 2009)[[42]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-ACBPS-41) assessed cyber-bullying experiences among 7,418 students. Rates of cyber-bullying increased with age, with 4.9% of students in Year 4 reporting cyberbullying compared to 7.9% in year nine. Cross et al., (2009) reported that rates of bullying and harassing others were lower, but also increased with age. Only 1.2% of Year 4 students reported cyber-bullying others compared to 5.6% of Year 9 students.

## Comparison to traditional bullying

Certain characteristics inherent in online technologies increase the likelihood that they will be exploited for deviant purposes.[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin-9) Unlike physical bullying, electronic bullies can remain virtually anonymous using temporary email accounts, pseudonyms in chat rooms, instant messaging programs, cell-phone text messaging, and other Internet venues to mask their identity; this perhaps frees them from normative and social constraints on their behavior.

Additionally, electronic forums often lack supervision. While chat hosts regularly observe the dialog in some chat rooms in an effort to police conversations and evict offensive individuals, personal messages sent between users (such as electronic mail or text messages) are viewable only by the sender and the recipient, thereby outside the regulatory reach of such authorities. In addition, when teenagers know more about computers and cellular phones than their parents or guardians, they are therefore able to operate the technologies without concern that a parent will discover their experience with bullying (whether as a victim or offender).

Another factor is the inseparability of a cellular phone from its owner, making that person a perpetual target for victimization. Users often need to keep their phone turned on for legitimate purposes, which provides the opportunity for those with malicious intentions to engage in persistent unwelcome behavior such as harassing telephone calls or threatening and insulting statements via the cellular phone’s text messaging capabilities. Cyberbullying thus penetrates the walls of a home, traditionally a place where victims could seek refuge from other forms of bullying. Compounding this infiltration into the home life of the cyberbully victim is the unique way in which the internet can "create simultaneous sensations of exposure (the whole world is watching) and alienation (no one understands)."[[43]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-42) For youth who experience shame or self-hatred, this effect is dangerous because it can lead to extreme self isolation.

Moreover, bullies can gang up on their victims on electronic pages more efficiently than they do in traditional bullying, since there is no limit to the number of people who can join in, following a bullying statement.[[44]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-konsiderit-43)

One possible advantage for victims of cyberbullying over traditional bullying is that they may sometimes be able to avoid it simply by avoiding the site/chat room in question. Email addresses and phone numbers can be changed; in addition, most e-mail accounts now offer services that will automatically filter out messages from certain senders before they even reach the inbox, and phones offer similar caller ID functions.

However, this does not protect against all forms of cyberbullying; publishing of defamatory material about a person on the internet is extremely difficult to prevent and once it is posted, millions of people can potentially download it before it is removed. Some perpetrators may post victims' photos, or victims' edited photos like defaming captions or pasting victims' faces on nude bodies. Examples of famous forums for disclosing personal data or photos to "punish" the "enemies" include the [Hong Kong Golden Forum](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hong_Kong_Golden_Forum), [Live Journal](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Live_Journal), and more recently [JuicyCampus](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/JuicyCampus). Despite policies that describe cyberbullying as a violation of the terms of service, many social networking Web sites have been used to that end.[[45]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-44)

## Legislation against cyberbullying

Main article: [*Cyberstalking legislation*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyberstalking_legislation)

### United States

Legislation geared at penalizing cyberbullying has been introduced in a number of U.S. states including New York, Missouri, Rhode Island and Maryland. At least seven states passed laws against digital harassment in 2007. Dardenne Prairie of Springfield, Missouri, passed a city ordinance making online harassment a misdemeanor. The city of St. Charles, Missouri has passed a similar ordinance. Missouri is among other states where lawmakers are pursuing state legislation, with a task forces expected to have “cyberbullying” laws drafted and implemented.[[46]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-45) In June, 2008, Rep. Linda Sanchez (D-Calif.) and Rep. Kenny Hulshof (R-Mo.) proposed a federal law that would criminalize acts of cyberbullying.[[47]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-46)

Lawmakers are seeking to address cyberbullying with new legislation because there's currently no specific law on the books that deals with it. A fairly new federal cyberstalking law might address such acts, according to [Parry Aftab](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Parry_Aftab), but no one has been prosecuted under it yet. The proposed federal law would make it illegal to use electronic means to "coerce, intimidate, harass or cause other substantial emotional distress."

In August 2008, the California state legislature passed one of the first laws in the country to deal directly with cyberbullying. The legislation, [Assembly Bill 86 2008](http://info.sen.ca.gov/pub/07-08/bill/asm/ab_0051-0100/ab_86_cfa_20080115_125502_asm_comm.html), gives school administrators the authority to discipline students for bullying others offline or online.[[48]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-47) This law took effect, January 1, 2009.[[49]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-48)

A recent ruling first seen in the UK determined that it is possible for an [Internet Service Provider](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Internet_Service_Provider) (ISP) to be liable for the content of sites which it hosts, setting a precedent that any ISP should treat a notice of complaint seriously and investigate it immediately.[[50]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-49)

[18 U.S.C.](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Title_18_of_the_United_States_Code) [§ 875(c)](http://www.law.cornell.edu/uscode/18/875.html" \l "c) criminalizes the making of threats via Internet.

## Harmful effects

Research had demonstrated a number of serious consequences of cyberbullying victimization.[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin-9)[[29]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin3-28)[[30]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin1-29)[[31]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin2-30) For example, victims have lower self-esteem, increased suicidal ideation, and a variety of emotional responses, retaliating, being scared, frustrated, angry, and depressed.[[29]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin3-28)

One of the most damaging effects is that a victim begins to avoid friends and activities, often the very intention of the cyber-bully.

Cyberbullying campaigns are sometimes so damaging that victims have committed suicide. There are at least four examples in the United States where cyber-bullying has been linked to the suicide of a teenager.[[29]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin3-28) The [suicide of Megan Meier](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Suicide_of_Megan_Meier) is a recent example that led to the conviction of the adult perpetrator of the attacks.

### Intimidation, emotional damage, suicide

According to the Cyberbullying Research Center, "there have been several high‐profile cases involving teenagers taking their own lives in part because of being harassed and mistreated over the Internet, a phenomenon we have termed cyberbullicide – suicide indirectly or directly influenced by experiences with online aggression."[[51]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-50)

The reluctance youth have in telling an authority figure about instances of cyberbullying has led to fatal outcomes. At least three children between the ages of 12 and 13 have committed suicide due to depression brought on by cyberbullying, according to reports by USA Today and the Baltimore Examiner. These would include the [suicide of Ryan Halligan](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Suicide_of_Ryan_Halligan) and the [suicide of Megan Meier](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Suicide_of_Megan_Meier), the latter of which resulted in [United States v. Lori Drew](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_v._Lori_Drew).

### Lost revenue, threatened earnings, defamation

Studies are being conducted by large companies to gauge loss of revenue through malicious false postings. Cyberstalkers seek to damage their victim's earnings, employment, reputation, or safety. A 2008 High Court ruling determined that, generally speaking, [slander](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Defamation) is when a defamatory statement has been made orally without justification. Libelous statements are those that are recorded with some degree of permanence. This would include statements made by email or on online bulletin boards.[[52]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-51)

## Adults and the workplace

Cyberbullying is not limited to personal attacks or children. Cyberharassment, referred to as cyberstalking when involving adults, takes place in the workplace or on company web sites, blogs or product reviews.

A survey of 1,072 workers by the Dignity and Work Partnership found that one in five had been bullied at work by e-mail and research has revealed 1 in 10 UK employees believes cyberbullying is a problem in their workplace.[[53]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-52)

Cyberbullying can occur in product reviews along with other consumer-generated data are being more closely monitored and flagged for content that is deemed malicious and biased as these sites have become tools to cyberbully by way of malicious requests for deletion of articles, [vandalism](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vandalism), abuse of administrative positions, and ganging up on products to post "false" reviews and vote products down.

Cyberstalkers use posts, forums, journals and other online means to present a victim in a false and unflattering light. The question of liability for harassment and character assassination is particularly salient to legislative protection since the original authors of the offending material are, more often than not, not only anonymous, but untraceable. Nevertheless, abuse should be consistently brought to company staffers' attention.

### Recognition of adult and workplace cyberbullying tactics

Common tactics used by cyberstalkers is to vandalize a search engine or encyclopedia, to threaten a victim's earnings, employment, reputation, or safety. Various companies provide cases of cyber-stalking (involving adults) follow the pattern of repeated actions against a target. While motives vary, whether romantic, a business conflict of interest, or personal dislike, the target is commonly someone whose life the stalker sees or senses elements lacking in his or her own life. Web-based products or services leveraged against cyberstalkers in the harassment or defamation of their victims.

The source of the defamation seems to come from four types of online information purveyors: Weblogs, industry forums or boards, and commercial Web sites. Studies reveal that while some motives are personal dislike, there is often direct economic motivation by the cyberstalker, including conflict of interest, and investigations reveal the responsible party is an affiliate or supplier of a competitor, or the competitor itself.

## Awareness campaigns

### Spain

There are multiple non-profit organizations that fight cyberbullying and cyberstalking. They advise victims, provide awareness campaigns, and report offenses to the police. These NGOs include the *Protégeles*, *PantallasAmigas*, [*Foundation Alia2*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Foundation_Alia2), the non-profit initiative *Actúa Contra el Ciberacoso*, the National Communications Technology Institute (INTECO), the Agency of Internet quality, the *Agencia Española de Protección de Datos*, the *Oficina de Seguridad del Internauta*, the Spanish Internet users' Association, the Internauts' Association, and the Spanish Association of Mothers and Parents Internauts. The Government of [Castile and León](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Castile_and_León) has also created a *Plan de Prevención del Ciberacoso y Promoción de la Navegación Segura en Centro Escolares*, and the Government of the [Canary Islands](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Canary_Islands) has created a portal on the phenomenon called *Viveinternet*.

### United Kingdom

Cyberbullying was the subject of a forum at the [British House of Commons](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/British_House_of_Commons) chaired by [Tim Loughton](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tim_Loughton) and [Louise Burfitt-Dons](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Louise_Burfitt-Dons) of [Act Against Bullying](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Act_Against_Bullying).[[54]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-53)

### United States

In March 2007, the Advertising Council in the United States, in partnership with the National Crime Prevention Council, U.S. Department of Justice, and Crime Prevention Coalition of America, joined to announce the launch of a new [public service advertising](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Public_service_advertising) campaign designed to educate preteens and teens about how they can play a role in ending cyber-bullying.

A Pew Internet and American Life survey found that 33% of teens were subject to some sort of cyber-bullying.[[55]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-54)

January 20, 2008 – the [Boy Scouts of America](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Boy_Scouts_of_America)'s 2008 edition of [*The Boy Scout Handbook*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Boy_Scout_Handbook) addresses how to deal with online bullying. A new [First Class](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ranks_in_the_Boy_Scouts_of_America" \l "First_Class) rank requirements adds: "Describe the three things you should avoid doing related to use of the Internet. Describe a cyberbully and how you should respond to one." [[56]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-55) [[57]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-56)

January 31, 2008 – [KTTV](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/KTTV) Fox 11 News based in Los Angeles put out a report about organized cyber-bullying on sites like [Stickam](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stickam) by people who call themselves "[/b/rothas](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anonymous_(group))".[[58]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-57)The site had put out report on July 26, 2007, about a subject that partly featured cyberbullying titled "hackers on steroids".[[59]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-58)

June 2, 2008 – Parents, teens, teachers, and Internet executives came together at Wired Safety's International Stop Cyberbullying Conference, a two-day gathering in White Plains, New York and New York City. Executives from Facebook, [Verizon](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Verizon), MySpace, [Microsoft](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Microsoft), and many others talked with hundreds about how to better protect themselves, personal reputations, kids and businesses online from harassment. Sponsors of the conference included [McAfee](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/McAfee), [AOL](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/AOL), [Disney](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Walt_Disney_Company), [Procter & Gamble](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Procter_%26_Gamble), [Girl Scouts of the USA](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Girl_Scouts_of_the_USA), WiredTrust, Children’s Safety Research and Innovation Centre, KidZui.com and others. This conference was being delivered in conjunction and with the support of Pace University. Topics addressed included cyberbullying and the law, with discussions about laws governing cyberbullying and how to distinguish between rudeness and criminal harassment. Additional forums addressed parents’ legal responsibilities, the need for more laws, how to handle violent postings of videos be handled, as well as the differentiation between free speech and hate speech. Cyberharassment vs. cyberbullying was a forefront topic, where age makes a difference and abusive internet behavior by adults with repeated clear intent to harm, ridicule or damage a person or business was classified as [stalking](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stalking) harassment vs. bullying by teens and young adults.[[60]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-59)

## Community support

A number of businesses and organizations are in coalition to provide awareness, protection and recourse for the escalating problem. Some aim to inform and provide measures to avoid as well as effectively terminate cyber-bullying and cyber-harassment. Anti-bullying charity [Act Against Bullying](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Act_Against_Bullying) launched the CyberKind campaign in August 2009 to promote positive internet usage.

Firms have developed tools to help parents combat cyberbullying. In 2008, the company Vanden unveiled a tool that allows children to instantly notify selected adults when they are bullied or harassed online. CyberBully Alert also documents the threatening message by saving a screen shot of the child's computer when the child triggers an alert. CyberPatrol and LookBothWays are two firms that keep up with internet trends.[[61]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-60)

In 2007, YouTube introduced the first Anti-Bullying Channel for youth, (BeatBullying) engaging the assistance of celebrities to tackle the problem.[[62]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-61)

Mossley Hollins High School in Manchester has recently taken the national lead in developing resources and material in the UK for schools and services to use. Will Aitken, coordinator of ICT, recently organized the countries first cyber-bullying awareness day for students and parents.[[63]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-62)

In March 2010, a 17 year old girl named Alexis Skye Pilkington was found dead in her room by her parents. Her parents claimed that after repeated cyber-bullying she was driven to suicide. Shortly after her death, attacks resumed. Members of an online website forum, referred to as "eBaums World", "Baums", and "EB", began [trolling](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)) teens' memorial pages on the social networking site Facebook. Comments included expressions of pleasure over the death, with pictures of what seemed to be a banana as their profile pictures. Family and friends of the deceased teen responded by creating Facebook groups denouncing cyber-bullying and trolling, with logos of bananas behind a red circle with a diagonal line through it.[[64]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-63)

## In media and pop culture

* [*Adina's Deck*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Adina's_Deck)— a film about three 8th-graders who help their friend who's been cyberbullied.
* *Let's Fight It Together*— a film produced by [Childnet International](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Childnet) to be used in schools to support discussion and awareness-raising around cyberbullying.
* [*Odd Girl Out*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Odd_Girl_Out)— a film about a girl who is bullied at school and online.
* *At a Distance*— a short film produced by [NetSafe](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Netsafe) for the 8-12-year-old audience. It highlights forms and effects of cyberbullying and the importance of bystanders.
* [*Cyberbully*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyberbully_(film))— a TV movie broadcast July 17, 2011 on [ABC Family](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/ABC_Family). Similar to *Odd Girl Out*, it too depicts a girl who is bullied at school and online.

French and German social science research on rumor locates the modern scholarly definition of it to the pioneering work of the German [William Stern](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Louis_William_Stern) in 1902.[[5]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-4) Stern experimented on rumor involving a "chain of subjects" who passed a story from "mouth to ear" without the right to repeat or explain it. He found that the story was shortened and changed by the time it reached the end of the chain. His student was another pioneer in the field, [Gordon Allport](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gordon_Allport).

The experiment is similar to the children's game [Chinese Whispers](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chinese_Whispers).

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Rumor&action=edit&section=2)]Psychology of Rumor: Three Types (1944)

"A Psychology of Rumor" was published by Robert Knapp in 1944, in which he reports on his analysis of over one thousand rumors during World War II that were printed in the Boston Herald's "Rumor Clinic" Column. He defines rumor as

a proposition for belief of topical reference disseminated without official verification. So formidably defined, rumor is but a special case of informal social communications, including myth, legend, and current humor. From myth and legend it is distinguished by its emphasis on the topical. Where humor is designed to provoke laughter, rumor begs for belief.

[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-5)

Knapp identified three basic characteristics that apply to rumor: 1. they're transmitted by word of mouth; 2. they provide "information" about a "person, happening, or condition"; and 3. they express and gratify "the emotional needs of the community." Crucial to this definition and its characteristics is the emphasis on transmission (word of mouth, which then was heard and reported in the newspaper); on content ("topical" means that it can somehow be distinguished from trivial and private subjects—its domain is public issues); and on reception ("emotional needs of the community" suggests that though it is received by an individual from an individual, it is not comprehended in individual but community or social terms).

Based on his study of the newspaper column, Knapp divided those rumors into three types:

1. Pipe dream rumors: reflect public desires and wished-for outcomes.(e.g. Japan's oil reserves were low and thus World War II would soon end.)
2. Bogie or fear rumors reflect feared outcomes.(e.g. An enemy surprise attack is imminent).
3. Wedge-driving rumors intend to undermine group loyalty or interpersonal relations (e.g. American Catholics were seeking to avoid the draft; German-Americans, Italian-Americans, Japanese-Americans were not loyal to the American side).

Knapp also found that negative rumors were more likely to be disseminated than positive rumors. These types also differentiate between positive (pipe dream)and negative (bogie and wedge-driving) rumors.

In 2004, Prashant Bordia and Nicholas DiFonzo published their *Problem Solving in Social Interactions on the Internet: Rumor As Social Cognition* and found that rumor transmission is probably reflective of a "collective explanation process." (35).[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-internet-7) This conclusion was based on an analysis of archived message board discussions in which the statements were coded and analyzed. It was found that 29.4% (the majority) of statements within these discussions could be coded as “sensemaking” statements, which involved, “[...]attempts at solving a problem.” (42)[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-internet-7)

It was noted that the rest of the discussion was constructed around these statements, further reinforcing the idea of collective problem solving. The researchers also found that each rumor went through a four-stage pattern of development in which a rumor was introduced for discussion, information was volunteered and discussed, and finally a resolution was drawn or interest was lost (48).[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-internet-7)

For the study, archived discussions concerning rumors on the internet and other computer networks such as BITnet were retrieved. As a rule, each discussion had a minimum of five statements posted over a period of at least two days. The statements were then coded as being one of the following: *prudent*, *apprehensive*, *authenticating*, *interrogatory*,*providing information*, *belief*, *disbelief*, *sensemaking*, *digressive*, or *uncodable*. Each rumor discussion was then analyzed based on this coding system. A similar coding system based on statistical analysis was applied to each discussion as a whole, and the aforementioned four-stage pattern of rumor discussion emerged.

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Rumor&action=edit&section=5)]Rumor as Political Communication Strategy (2006)

"[Propaganda](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Propaganda) is neutrally defined as a systematic form of purposeful persuasion that attempts to influence the emotions, attitudes, opinions, and actions of specified target audiences for ideological, political or commercial purposes through the controlled transmission of one-sided messages (which may or may not be factual) via mass and direct media channels. A propaganda organization employs propagandists who engage in propagandism—the applied creation and distribution of such forms of persuasion."

Richard Alan Nelson, *A Chronology and Glossary of Propaganda in the United States*, 1996

In the past, much research on rumor came from psychological approaches (as the discussion of Allport and DiFonzio demonstrates above). The focus was especially on how statements of questionable veracity (absolutely false to the ears of some listeners) circulated orally from person to person. Scholarly attention to political rumors is at least as old as Aristotle's *Rhetoric*; however, not until recently has any sustained attention and conceptual development been directed at political uses of rumor, outside of its role in war situations. Almost no work had been done until recently on how different forms of media and particular cultural-historical conditions may facilitate a rumor's diffusion.[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-8)

The internet's recent appearance as a new media technology has shown ever new possibilities for the fast diffusion of rumor, as the debunking sites such as snopes.com, urbanlegend.com, and factcheck.org demonstrate. Nor had previous research taken into consideration the particular form or style of deliberately chosen rumors for political purposes in particular circumstances (even though significant attention to the power of rumor for mass-media-diffused war propaganda has been in vogue since World War I; see Lasswell 1927).[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-9) In the early part of the 21st century, some legal scholars have attended to political uses of rumor, though their conceptualization of it remains social psychological and their solutions to it as public problem are from a legal scholarly perspective, largely having to do with libel and privacy laws and the damage to personal reputations.[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-10)

Working within political communication studies, in 2006, Jayson Harsin[[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-11)

- [[13]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-12) introduced the concept of the "rumor bomb" as a response to the widespread empirical phenomenon of rumoresque communication in contemporary relations between media and politics, especially within the complex convergence of multiple forms of media, from cell phones and internet, to radio, TV, and print. Harsin starts with the widespread definition of rumor as a claim whose truthfulness is in doubt and which often has no clear source even if its ideological or partisan origins and intents are clear. He then treats it as a particular rhetorical strategy in current contexts of media and politics in many societies. For Harsin a "rumor bomb" extends the definition of rumor into a political communication concept with the following features:

1. A crisis of verification. - A crisis of verification is perhaps the most salient and politically dangerous aspect of rumor. Berenson (1952) defines rumor as a kind of persuasive message involving a proposition that lacks 'secure standards of evidence' (Pendleton 1998).[[14]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-13)
2. A context of public uncertainty or anxiety about a political group, figure, or cause, which the rumor bomb overcomes or transfers onto an opponent.
3. A clearly partisan even if an anonymous source (e.g. "an unnamed advisor to the president"), which seeks to profit politically from the rumor bomb’s diffusion.
4. A rapid diffusion via highly developed electronically mediated societies where news travels fast.

In addition, Harsin locates the "rumor bomb" within other communication genres, such as disinformation (intentional false information) and propaganda,as rumor has been viewed by others. However, he distinguishes it from these concepts as well, since disinformation is often too associated with government, and propaganda is a widely varying concept used to describe attempts to control opinion without regard for ethics and accuracy of statement. Similarly, "[spin](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spin_(public_relations))" is a generic term for strategic political communication that attempts to frame or re-frame an event or a statement in a way that is politically profitable for one side and detrimental to another, though at its core it may simply be a red herring (Bennett 2003, p. 130).[[15]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-14)

In addition, a "smear campaign" is a term that loosely means a coordinated effort to attack a person's character. Unlike a "smear campaign," rumor bombs need not be about discrediting a person (as is the case for example in claims about Iraq and 9/11 or weapons of mass destruction moved to Syria). Spin refers too specifically to an event and its re-framing. Rumor bombs may seek to produce events themselves.

A rumor bomb can be seen as having some characteristics of these general concepts, but rumor bombs happen in very particular cultural and historical conditions. They are not about mouth-to-ear interpersonal rumors as much rumor research has been interested in. They begin in a rapport between deliberate "disinformers" and *media*, whether TV news,talk shows, newspapers, radio, or internet. They then circulate across these media, perhaps but not necessarily resulting in interpersonal mouth-to-ear rumor diffusion.[[16]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-15)[[17]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-16)

Harsin wants to distinguish the rumor bomb from other more general concepts of rumor by *emphasizing changes in politics, media technology, and culture*. According to Harsin, rumor in politics has always existed, but recent changes have created an environment ripe for a new kind of political rumor: a new media "convergence culture" where information produced on the internet can influence the production of media content in other forms;new media technologies and business values that emphasize speed and circulation that combine with entertainment values in news, political marketing, and public craving of tabloid news that mirrors other entertainment genres.[[18]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-17)[[19]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-18)

Rumors of affairs, of "weapons of mass destruction" and their alleged removal to other countries[[20]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-19)"John Kerry is French,"[[21]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-20) Obama is a Muslim, John McCain had an illegitimate black child[[22]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-21) Obama's healthcare plan would legalize "[death panels](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Death_panels)," Shirley Sherrod is a racist--all of these involve statements whose veracity is in question or are simply false. Others are statements whose ambiguous nature makes them potentially appealing to different audiences who may interpret them in particular ways and circulate them. Harsin builds on rumor research that has emphasized social cognition and diffusion of propaganda. He extends Prashant and Difonzio's work in particular, since they attempt to distinguish rumor from [gossip](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gossip), in that rumor is supposedly about public issues and gossip is about private, trivial things. The emergence of infotainment and tabloidization in especially American and British news has broken that distinction, since politics is now just as much about bringing the private into the public view, as was clear with the Clinton-Lewinsky scandal.

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Rumor&action=edit&section=6)]Rumor in Strategic Communication (2010)

Similar to their appearance and function in political communication, wherein rumors can be deployed for specific deleterious effect (rumor bomb) or can otherwise plague a candidate for office, rumors also play an important role in [strategic communication](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Strategic_communication). Strategic communication is the process of crafting messages in support of specific organizational goals, and is usually concerned with governments, militaries and Non-Governmental Organizations ([NGOs](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/NGO)). Adroit strategic communication requires an understanding of stories, trends and memes circulating within a culture.

Rumors can be viewed as stories that seem rational but that are steeped into speculation, in connection with a certain narrative landscape (the vast array of cultural expression circulating within a community or region)[[23]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-22) . In their book, [Narrative Landmines: Rumors, Islamist Extremism and the Struggle for Strategic Influence](http://rutgerspress.rutgers.edu/acatalog/narrative_landmines.html), co-authors Daniel Bernardi, Pauline Hope Cheong, Chris Lundry and Scott W. Ruston coin the term [narrative IED](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Narrative_IED&action=edit&redlink=1) to help explain the function and danger of rumors in a strategic communication context. Rumors, as narrative IEDs, are low-cost, low-tech communication weapons that can be used by anyone to disrupt the efforts of communication, civil affairs or outreach campaigns such as those undertaken by governments in crisis response situations or militaries in insurgencies. As Bernardi notes, “"Like their explosive cousins, rumors can be created and planted by nearly anybody, require limited resources to utilize, can be deadly for those in its direct path, and can instill fear”[[24]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-23) .

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Rumor&action=edit&section=7)]See also

Allport was born in [Montezuma](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Montezuma,_Indiana), [Indiana](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Indiana), the youngest of four sons of John Edwards and Nellie Edith (Wise) Allport. His early education was in the public schools of Cleveland, Ohio, where his family moved when he was six years old. His father was a country doctor with his clinic and hospital in the family home. Because of inadequate hospital facilities at the time, Allport's father actually turned their home into a makeshift hospital, with patients as well as nurses residing there. [Gordon Allport](http://shrike.depaul.edu/~kmerz/early_life1.htm) and his brothers grew up surrounded by their father's patients, nurses, and medical equipment, and he and his brothers often assisted their father in the clinic. Allport reported that "Tending office, washing bottles, and dealing with patients were important aspects of my early training" (p. 172).[[2]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gordon_Allport" \l "cite_note-HJelle.2C_L.A._1992-1)

Allport's mother was a former school teacher, who forcefully promoted her values of intellectual development and religion. One of Allport's biographers states, "he grew up not only with the Protestant religion, but also the [Protestant work ethic](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Protestant_work_ethic), which dominated his home life." [Gordon Allport](http://shrike.depaul.edu/~kmerz/early_life1.htm)'s father, who was Scottish, shared this outlook, and operated by his own philosophy that "If every person worked as hard as he could and took only the minimum financial return required by his families needs, then there would be just enough wealth to go around."[[2]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gordon_Allport" \l "cite_note-HJelle.2C_L.A._1992-1)

Biographers describe Allport as a shy and studious boy who lived a fairly isolated childhood; the young Allport was the subject of high school mockery due to a birth defect that left him with only eight toes. As a teenager, Allport developed and ran his own printing business while serving as editor of his high school newspaper. In 1915, he graduated second in his class at [Glenville High School](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Glenville_High_School) at the age of eighteen. He earned a scholarship that allowed him to attend Harvard University, where one of his older brothers, [Floyd Henry Allport](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Floyd_Henry_Allport), was working on his Ph.D. in Psychology.[[3]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gordon_Allport" \l "cite_note-2)

Moving to Harvard was a difficult transition for Allport because the moral values and climate were so different from those of his home. However he earned his A.B. degree in 1919 in Philosophy and Economics (not psychology). His interest in the convergence of [social psychology](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Social_psychology) and [personality psychology](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Personality_psychology) was evident in his use of his spare time at Harvard in social service: conducting a boy's club in Boston, visiting for the Family Society, serving as a volunteer probation officer, registering homes for war workers, and aiding foreign students.[[4]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gordon_Allport" \l "cite_note-Pettigrew.2C_T.F._1999-3)

Next he traveled to [Robert College](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Robert_College) in Istanbul, Turkey, where he taught economics and philosophy for a year, before returning to Harvard to pursue his Ph.D. in psychology on fellowship in 1920 (in addition to German, Allport remained partially fluent in modern Greek throughout his life). His first publication, *Personality Traits: Their Classification and Measurement* in 1921, was co-authored with his older brother, [Floyd Henry Allport](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Floyd_Henry_Allport), who became an important social psychologist. Allport earned his Master's degree in 1921, studying under [Herbert S. Langfeld](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Herbert_S._Langfeld&action=edit&redlink=1), and then his Ph.D. in 1922, along the way taking a class with [Hugo Münsterberg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hugo_Münsterberg) before his death in 1916.[[5]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gordon_Allport" \l "cite_note-4)

Harvard then awarded Allport a coveted Sheldon Traveling Fellowship--"a second intellectual dawn," as he later described it. He spent the first Sheldon year studying with the new[Gestalt](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gestalt_psychology) School—which fascinated him—in [Berlin](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Berlin) and Hamburg, Germany; and then the second year at [Cambridge University](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cambridge_University).[[4]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gordon_Allport" \l "cite_note-Pettigrew.2C_T.F._1999-3)

Then Allport returned to Harvard as an instructor in psychology from 1924 to 1926. He began teaching his course "Personality: Its Psychological and Social Aspects" in 1924; it was probably the first course in personality psychology ever taught in the U.S. During this time, Allport married Ada Lufkin Gould, who was a clinical psychologist, and they had one child, a boy, who later became a pediatrician.[[4]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gordon_Allport" \l "cite_note-Pettigrew.2C_T.F._1999-3) After going to teach introductory courses on social psychology and personality at Dartmouth College for four years, Allport returned to Harvard and remained there for the rest of his career.

Gordon W. Allport was a longtime and influential member of the faculty at [Harvard University](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Harvard_University) from 1930 to 1967. In 1931, he served on the faculty committee that established Harvard's Sociology Department. In the late 1940s, he fashioned an introductory course for the new Social Relations Department into a rigorous and popular undergraduate class. At that time, he was also editor of the *Journal of Abnormal and Social Psychology*. Allport was also a Director of the Commission for the United Nations Educational Scientific, and Cultural Organization. He was elected a Fellow of the [American Academy of Arts and Sciences](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/American_Academy_of_Arts_and_Sciences) in 1933.[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gordon_Allport" \l "cite_note-AAAS-5)

Allport was elected President of the American Psychological Association in 1939. In 1943, he was elected President of the Eastern Psychological Association. In 1944, he served as President of the Society for the Psychological Study of Social Issues. In 1950, Allport published his third book titled *The Individual and His Religion*. His fourth book, *The Nature of Prejudice*, was published in 1954, and benefited from his insights from working with refugees during World War II. His fifth book, published in 1955, was titled *Becoming: Basic Considerations for Psychology of Personality*. This book became one of his most widely known publications. In 1963, Allport was awarded the Gold Medal Award from the American Psychological Foundation. In the following year, he received the APA's Distinguished Scientific Contribution Award. Gordon Allport died on October 9, 1967 in Cambridge, Massachusetts of lung cancer. He was seventy years old.[[1]](http://shrike.depaul.edu/~kmerz/later_life.htm)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Gordon_Allport&action=edit&section=2)]Visit with Freud

Allport told the story in his autobiographical essay in *Pattern and Growth in Personality*[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gordon_Allport" \l "cite_note-6) of his visit as a young, recent college graduate to the already famous Dr. [Sigmund Freud](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sigmund_Freud)in [Vienna](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vienna). To break the ice upon meeting Freud, Allport recounted how he had met a boy on the train on the way to Vienna who was afraid of getting dirty. He refused to sit down near anyone dirty, despite his mother's reassurances. Allport suggested that perhaps the boy had learned this dirt phobia from his mother, a very neat and apparently rather domineering type. After studying Allport for a minute, Freud asked, "And was that little boy you?"

Allport experienced Freud's attempt to reduce this small bit of observed interaction to some unconscious episode from his own remote childhood as dismissive of his current motivations, intentions, and experience. It served as a reminder that [psychoanalysis](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Psychoanalysis) tends to dig too deeply into both the past and the unconscious, overlooking in the process the reputedly more important conscious and immediate aspects of experience. While Allport never denied that unconscious and historical variables have a role to play in human psychology (particularly in the immature and disordered) his own work would always emphasize conscious motivations and current context. Allport believed that situation is not dependent on its history.

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Gordon_Allport&action=edit&section=3)]Allport's trait theory

Main article: [*Trait theory*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Trait_theory)

Allport is known as a "trait" psychologist. One of his early projects was to go through the dictionary and locate every term that he thought could describe a person. From this, he developed a list of 4500 trait like words. He organized these into three levels of traits. This is similar to Goldberg's [fundamental lexical hypothesis](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lexical_hypothesis), or the hypothesis that over time, humans develop widely used, generic terms for individual differences in their daily interactions.

Allport's three trait levels are:

1. **Cardinal trait** - This is the trait that dominates and shapes a person's behavior. These are the ruling passions/obsessions, such as a need for money, fame etc.

2. **Central trait** - This is a general characteristic found in some degree in every person. These are the basic building blocks that shape most of our behavior although they are not as overwhelming as cardinal traits. An example of a central trait would be honesty.

3. **Secondary trait** - These are characteristics seen only in certain circumstances (such as particular likes or dislikes that a very close friend may know). They must be included to provide a complete picture of human complexity.

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Gordon_Allport&action=edit&section=4)]Genotypes and phenotypes

Allport hypothesized the idea of internal and external forces that influence an individual’s behavior. He called these forces Genotypes and Phenotypes. **Genotypes** are internal forces relates to how a person retains information and uses it to interact with the external world. **Phenotypes** are external forces, these relate to the way an individual accepts his surroundings and how others influence their behavior. These forces generate the ways in which we behave and are the groundwork for the creation of individual traits.

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Gordon_Allport&action=edit&section=5)]Functional autonomy of motives

Allport was one of the first researchers to draw a distinction between [Motive](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Motivation) and Drive. He suggested that a drive formed as a reaction to a motive may outgrow the motive as a reason. The drive then is autonomous and distinct from the motive, whether it is instinct or any other. Allport gives the example of a man who seeks to perfect his task or craft. His reasons may be a sense of inferiority engrained in his childhood but his diligence in his work and the motive it acquires later on is a need to excel in his chosen profession. In the words of Allport, the theory "avoids the absurdity of regarding the energy of life now, in the present, as somehow consisting of early archaic forms (instincts, prepotent reflexes, or the never-changing Id). Learning brings new systems of interests into existence just as it does new abilities and skills. At each stage of development these interests are always contemporary; whatever drives, drives now."[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gordon_Allport" \l "cite_note-7) We also can see functional autonomy (the notion that motives can become independent of their origins) in the drive associated with making money to buy goods and services when it becomes an end in itself. Many obsessive and compulsive acts and thoughts might be manifestations of functional autonomy.

John Adams was the eldest of three sons,[[3]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-2) was born on October 30, 1735 (October 19, 1735 Old Style, [Julian calendar](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Julian_calendar)), in what is now [Quincy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Quincy,_Massachusetts), Massachusetts (then called the "north precinct" of [Braintree](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Braintree,_Massachusetts), Massachusetts), to [John Adams, Sr.](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams,_Sr.), and [Susanna Boylston](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Susanna_Boylston) Adams.[[4]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-3) While he did not speak much of his mother later in life, he commonly praised his father and was very close to him as a child. [Adams' birthplace](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams_Birthplace) is now part of [Adams National Historical Park](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Adams_National_Historical_Park). His father (1691–1761), was a fifth-generation descendant of Henry Adams, who emigrated from [Somerset](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Somerset)[[5]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-4) in England to [Massachusetts Bay Colony](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Massachusetts_Bay_Colony) in about 1638. The elder Adams was a farmer, a [Congregationalist](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Congregationalist) (that is, [Puritan](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Puritan)) [deacon](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Deacon), a lieutenant in the militia and a [selectman](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Board_of_selectmen), or town councilman, who supervised schools and roads; Susanna Boylston Adams was a descendant of the Boylstons of [Brookline](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Brookline,_Massachusetts).[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-5)

Adams was born to a modest family, but he felt acutely the responsibility of living up to his family heritage: the founding generation of Puritans, who came to the American wilderness in the 1630s and established colonial presence in America. The Puritans of the great migration "believed they lived in the Bible. England under the [Stuarts](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/House_of_Stuart) was Egypt; they were Israel fleeing ... to establish a refuge for godliness, a city upon a hill."[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-brookhiser-6) By the time of John Adams' birth in 1735, Puritan tenets such as predestination were no longer as widely accepted, and many of their stricter practices had mellowed with time, but John Adams "considered them bearers of freedom, a cause that still had a holy urgency." It was a value system he believed in, and a heroic model he wished to live up to.[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-brookhiser-6)

Young Adams went to [Harvard College](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Harvard_College) at age sixteen in 1751.[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-7) His father expected him to become a minister, but Adams had doubts. After graduating in 1755 with an [A.B.](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bachelors_of_Arts), he taught school for a few years in [Worcester](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Worcester,_Massachusetts), allowing himself time to think about his career choice. After much reflection, he decided to become a lawyer, writing his father that he found among lawyers “noble and gallant achievements" but among the clergy, the "pretended sanctity of some absolute dunces." He later became a Unitarian, and dropped belief in predestination, eternal damnation, and most other Calvinist beliefs of his Puritan ancestors. Adams then studied law in the office of John Putnam, a prominent lawyer in Worcester.

In 1758, after earning an [A.M.](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Master_of_Arts_(postgraduate)) from Harvard,[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-8) Adams was admitted to the bar. From an early age, he developed the habit of writing descriptions of events and impressions of men which are scattered through his diary. He put the skill to good use as a lawyer, often recording cases he observed so that he could study and reflect upon them. His report of the 1761 argument of [James Otis](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Otis,_Jr.) in the superior court of Massachusetts as to the legality of [Writs of Assistance](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Writ_of_Assistance) is a good example. Otis's argument inspired Adams with zeal for the cause of the American colonies.[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-9)

On October 25, 1764, five days before his 29th birthday, Adams married [Abigail Smith](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Abigail_Adams) (1744–1818), his third cousin[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-10) and the daughter of a [Congregational](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Congregational_church) minister, Rev. William Smith, at [Weymouth, Massachusetts](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Weymouth,_Massachusetts). Their children were [Abigail](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Abigail_Adams_Smith) (1765–1813); future president [John Quincy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Quincy_Adams) (1767–1848); Susanna (1768–1770); [Charles](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles_Adams_(1770–1800)) (1770–1800); [Thomas Boylston](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Boylston_Adams) (1772–1832); and Elizabeth (1777).[[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-11)

Adams was not a popular leader like his second cousin, [Samuel Adams](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Samuel_Adams). Instead, his influence emerged through his work as a constitutional lawyer and his intense analysis of historical examples,[[13]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-12) together with his thorough knowledge of the law and his dedication to the principles of [republicanism](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Republicanism). Adams often found his inborn contentiousness to be a constraint in his political career.

## Career before the Revolution

### Opponent of Stamp Act 1765

Adams first rose to prominence as an opponent of the [Stamp Act 1765](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stamp_Act_1765), which was imposed by the British Parliament without consulting the American legislatures. Americans protested vehemently that it violated their traditional rights as Englishmen. Popular resistance, he later observed, was sparked by an oft-reprinted sermon of the Boston minister,[Jonathan Mayhew](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Jonathan_Mayhew), interpreting [Romans 13](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Epistle_to_the_Romans) to elucidate the principle of just insurrection.[[14]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-13)

In 1765, Adams drafted the instructions which were sent by the inhabitants of [Braintree](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Braintree,_Massachusetts) to its representatives in the Massachusetts legislature, and which served as a model for other towns to draw up instructions to their representatives. In August 1765, he anonymously contributed four notable articles to the [Boston Gazette](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Boston_Gazette) (republished in *The London Chronicle* in 1768 as *True Sentiments of America*, also known as *A Dissertation on the Canon and Feudal Law*). In the letter he suggested that there was a connection between the Protestant ideas that Adams' Puritan ancestors brought to New England and the ideas behind their resistance to the Stamp Act. In the former he explained that the opposition of the colonies to the [Stamp Act](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stamp_Act) was because the Stamp Act deprived the American colonists of two basic rights guaranteed to all Englishmen, and which all free men deserved: rights to be taxed only by consent and to be tried only by a jury of one's peers.

The "[Braintree Instructions](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Braintree_Instructions)" were a succinct and forthright defense of colonial rights and liberties, while the Dissertation was an essay in political education.

In December 1765, he delivered a speech before the governor and council in which he pronounced the Stamp Act invalid on the ground that Massachusetts, being without representation in Parliament, had not assented to it.[[15]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-14)

### Boston Massacre

In 1770, a street confrontation resulted in [British soldiers](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/29th_Regiment_of_Foot) killing five civilians in what became known as the [Boston Massacre](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Boston_Massacre).[[16]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-15) The soldiers involved were arrested on criminal charges. Not surprisingly, they had trouble finding legal counsel to represent them. Finally, they asked Adams to defend. He accepted, though he feared it would hurt his reputation. In their defense, Adams made his now famous quote regarding making decisions based on the evidence: "Facts are stubborn things; and whatever may be our wishes, our inclinations, or the dictates of our passion, they cannot alter the state of facts and evidence."[[17]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-16) Six of the soldiers were acquitted. Two who had fired directly into the crowd were charged with murder but were convicted only of manslaughter. Adams was paid eighteen guineas by the British soldiers, or about the cost of a pair of shoes.[[18]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-17)

Despite his previous misgivings, Adams was elected to the [Massachusetts General Court](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Massachusetts_General_Court) (the colonial legislature) in June 1770, while still in preparation for the trial.[[19]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-18)

### Dispute concerning Parliament's authority

In 1772, Massachusetts Governor [Thomas Hutchinson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Hutchinson_(governor)) announced that he and his judges would no longer need their salaries paid by the Massachusetts legislature, because the Crown would henceforth assume payment drawn from customs revenues. Boston radicals protested and asked Adams to explain their objections. In "Two Replies of the Massachusetts House of Representatives to Governor Hutchinson" Adams argued that the colonists had never been under the sovereignty of Parliament. Their original charter was with the person of the king and their allegiance was only to him. If a workable line could not be drawn between parliamentary sovereignty and the total independence of the colonies, he continued, the colonies would have no other choice but to choose independence.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/thumb/4/4c/Wikisource-logo.svg/38px-Wikisource-logo.svg.png | [Wikisource](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikisource) has original text related to this article:  [**Novanglus Essays**](http://en.wikisource.org/wiki/Novanglus_Essays) |

In *Novanglus; or, A History of the Dispute with America, From Its Origin, in 1754, to the Present Time* Adams attacked some essays by[Daniel Leonard](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Daniel_Leonard) that defended Hutchinson's arguments for the absolute authority of Parliament over the colonies. In *Novanglus* Adams gave a point-by-point refutation of Leonard's essays, and then provided one of the most extensive and learned arguments made by the colonists against British imperial policy.

It was a systematic attempt by Adams to describe the origins, nature, and jurisdiction of the unwritten British constitution. Adams used his wide knowledge of English and colonial legal history to argue that the provincial legislatures were fully sovereign over their own internal affairs, and that the colonies were connected to Great Britain only through the King.

## Continental Congress

[](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Declaration_independence.jpg)

[http://bits.wikimedia.org/static-1.20wmf9/skins/common/images/magnify-clip.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Declaration_independence.jpg)

[Trumbull's](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Trumbull) [*Declaration of Independence*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Trumbull's_Declaration_of_Independence) depicts committee presenting draft Declaration of Independence to Congress. Adams at center has hand on hip.

Massachusetts sent Adams to the first and second [Continental Congresses](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Continental_Congress) in 1774 and from 1775 to 1777.[[20]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-19) In June 1775, with a view of promoting union among the colonies, he nominated [George Washington](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Washington) of Virginia as commander-in-chief of the [army](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Continental_Army) then assembled around Boston. His influence in Congress was great, and almost from the beginning, he sought permanent separation from Britain.

Over the next decade, Americans from every state gathered and deliberated on new governing documents. As radical as it was to write constitutions (prior tradition suggested that a society's form of government need not be codified, nor its organic law written down in a single document), what was equally radical was the revolutionary nature of American political thought as the summer of 1776 dawned.[[21]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-20)

### Thoughts on Government

Several representatives turned to Adams for advice about framing new governments. To relieve Adams of the burden of repeatedly writing out his thoughts, [Richard Henry Lee](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Richard_Henry_Lee) published one version as the pamphlet "[*Thoughts on Government*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thoughts_on_Government)" (April 1776),[[22]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-21) which was subsequently influential in the writing of state constitutions.[[23]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-22) Using the conceptual framework of [Republicanism in the United States](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Republicanism_in_the_United_States), the patriots believed it was the corrupt and nefarious aristocrats, in the [British Parliament](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Parliament_of_Britain), and their minions stationed in America, who were guilty of the British assault on American liberty.[[24]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-23)

Adams advised that the form of government should be chosen to attain the desired ends, which are the happiness and virtue of the greatest number of people. With this goal in mind, he wrote in "*Thoughts on Government*",

There is no good government but what is republican. That the only valuable part of the [British constitution](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Constitution_of_the_United_Kingdom) is so; because the very definition of a republic is an empire of laws, and not of men.

The treatise also defended [bicameralism](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bicameralism), for "*a single assembly is liable to all the vices, follies, and frailties of an individual*."[[25]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-24) He also suggested that there should be a[separation of powers](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Separation_of_powers) between the [executive](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Executive_(government)), the [judicial](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Judicial), and the [legislative](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Legislative) branches, and further recommended that if a continental government were to be formed then it "*should sacredly be confined*" to certain [enumerated powers](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Enumerated_powers). "*Thoughts on Government*" was enormously influential and was referenced as an authority in every state-constitution writing hall.

### Declaration of Independence

On May 10, 1776 Adams seconded [Richard Henry Lee](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Richard_Henry_Lee)'s resolution calling on the colonies to adopt new (presumably independent) governments.[[26]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-25) Adams then drafted a preamble to this resolution which elaborated on it, and which congress approved on May 15. The full document was, as Adams put it, "independence itself"[[27]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-26) and set the stage for the formal passage of the [Declaration of Independence](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Declaration_of_Independence). Once the combined document passed in May, independence became inevitable, though it still had to be declared formally. On June 7, 1776, Adams seconded the [resolution of independence](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Resolution_of_independence) introduced by [Richard Henry Lee](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Richard_Henry_Lee) which stated, "These colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent states," and championed the resolution until it was adopted by Congress on July 2, 1776.[[28]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-27)

[](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:StatenIslandConference_By_Chappel.jpg)

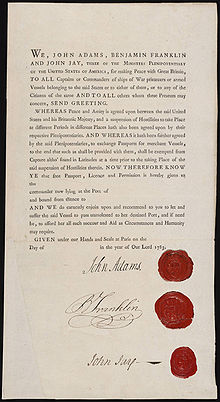
[http://bits.wikimedia.org/static-1.20wmf9/skins/common/images/magnify-clip.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:StatenIslandConference_By_Chappel.jpg)

Adams at left in [Chappel's](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alonzo_Chappel)depiction of [Staten Island Peace Conference](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Staten_Island_Peace_Conference)

He was appointed to a [committee](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Committee_of_Five) with [Thomas Jefferson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Jefferson), [Benjamin Franklin](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Benjamin_Franklin), [Robert R. Livingston](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Robert_Livingston_(1746-1813)) and [Roger Sherman](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Roger_Sherman), to draft the Declaration of Independence, which was to be ready when congress voted on independence. Because the committee left no minutes, there is some uncertainty about how the drafting process proceeded—accounts written many years later by Jefferson and Adams, although frequently cited, are contradictory and not entirely reliable.[[29]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-28) What is certain is that the committee, after discussing the general outline that the document should follow, decided that Jefferson would write the first draft.[[30]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-29) The committee in general, and Jefferson in particular, thought Adams should write the document, but Adams persuaded the committee to choose Jefferson and promised to consult with Jefferson personally.[[31]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-30) Although the first draft was written primarily by Jefferson, Adams continued to occupy the foremost place in the debate on its adoption. After editing the document further, congress approved it on July 4. Many years later, Jefferson hailed Adams as "the pillar of [the Declaration's] support on the floor of Congress, its ablest advocate and defender against the multifarious assaults it encountered."[[32]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-31)

After the defeat of the [Continental Army](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Continental_Army) at the [Battle of Long Island](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Battle_of_Long_Island) on August 27, 1776, Admiral [Lord Richard Howe](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Richard_Howe,_1st_Earl_Howe) requested the Second Continental Congress send representatives in an attempt to negotiate peace. A delegation including Adams and [Benjamin Franklin](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Benjamin_Franklin) [met with Howe](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Staten_Island_Peace_Conference)on [Staten Island](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Staten_Island) on September 11.[[33]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-32) Both Howe's authority and that of the delegation were limited, and they were unable to find common ground.[[34]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-33) When Lord Howe unhappily stated he could only view the American delegates as British subjects, Adams replied, "Your lordship may consider me in what light you please, [...] except that of a British subject."[[35]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-34) Lord Howe then addressed the other delegates, stating, "Mr. Adams appears to be a decided character." Adams learned many years later that his name was on a list of people specifically excluded from Howe's pardon-granting authority.[[36]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-35) In 1777, Adams began serving as the head of the [Board of War and Ordnance](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Board_of_War_and_Ordnance), as well as serving on many other important committees.

## In Europe

[](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Passport_John_Adams_Benjamin_Franklin_John_Jay_Ministers_Plenipotentiary_1783.jpg)

[http://bits.wikimedia.org/static-1.20wmf9/skins/common/images/magnify-clip.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Passport_John_Adams_Benjamin_Franklin_John_Jay_Ministers_Plenipotentiary_1783.jpg)

[Passport](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Passport) for [ministers plenipotentiary](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Plenipotentiary)John Adams, [Benjamin Franklin](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Benjamin_Franklin), and [John Jay](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Jay) for safe passage to negotiate treaties, 1783

[](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Erkenning_onafhankelijkheid_Verenigde_Staten_foto2.JPG)

[http://bits.wikimedia.org/static-1.20wmf9/skins/common/images/magnify-clip.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Erkenning_onafhankelijkheid_Verenigde_Staten_foto2.JPG)

A medallion produced in Amsterdam for John Adams in 1782 by [Johann Georg Holtzhey](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Johann_Georg_Holtzhey) to celebrate recognition of the United States as an independent nation by The Netherlands, from the coin collection of the [Teylers Museum](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Teylers_Museum)

Congress twice dispatched Adams to represent the fledgling union in Europe, first in 1777, and again in 1779. Accompanied, on both occasions, by his eldest son, [John Quincy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Quincy_Adams) (who was ten years old at the time of the first voyage), Adams sailed for France aboard the[Continental Navy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Continental_Navy) [frigate](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Frigate) [*Boston*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/USS_Boston_(1777)) on February 15, 1778. The trip through winter storms was treacherous, with lightning injuring 19 sailors and killing one. Adams' ship was then pursued by but successfully evaded several British frigates in the mid-Atlantic. Toward the coast of Spain, Adams himself took up arms to help capture a heavily armed British merchantman ship, the *Martha*. Later, a cannon malfunction killed one and injured five more of Adams' crew before the ship finally arrived in France.[[37]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-36)

Adams was in some regards an unlikely choice inasmuch as he did not speak French, the international language of diplomacy at the time.[[38]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-37) His first stay in Europe, between April 1, 1778, and June 17, 1779, was largely unproductive, and he returned to his home in Braintree in early August 1779.

Between September 1 and October 30, 1779, he drafted the [Massachusetts Constitution](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Massachusetts_Constitution) together with [Samuel Adams](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Samuel_Adams) and [James Bowdoin](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Bowdoin). He was selected in September 1779 to return to France and, following the conclusion of the Massachusetts constitutional convention, left on November 14[[39]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-38) aboard the French frigate *Sensible*.

On the second trip, Adams was appointed as [Minister Plenipotentiary](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Minister_Plenipotentiary) charged with the mission of negotiating a treaty of amity and commerce with Britain. The French government, however, did not approve of Adams' appointment and subsequently, on the insistence of the French foreign minister, the [Comte de Vergennes](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles_Gravier,_Comte_de_Vergennes), [Benjamin Franklin](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Benjamin_Franklin), [Thomas Jefferson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Jefferson), [John Jay](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Jay) and [Henry Laurens](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Henry_Laurens) were appointed to cooperate with Adams, although Jefferson did not go to Europe and Laurens was posted to the [Dutch Republic](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dutch_Republic). In the event Jay, Adams, and Franklin played the major part in the negotiations. Overruling Franklin and distrustful of Vergennes, Jay and Adams decided not to consult with France. Instead, they dealt directly with the British commissioners.[[40]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-39)

Throughout the negotiations, Adams was especially determined that the right of the United States to the fisheries along the Atlantic coast should be recognized. The American negotiators were able to secure a favorable treaty, which gave Americans ownership of all lands east of the Mississippi, except [East](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/East_Florida) and [West Florida](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/West_Florida), which were transferred to Spain. The treaty was signed on November 30, 1782.

After these negotiations began, Adams had spent some time as the [ambassador](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ambassador) in the Dutch Republic, then one of the few other Republics in the world (the [Republic of Venice](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Republic_of_Venice) and the [Old Swiss Confederacy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Old_Swiss_Confederacy) being the other notable ones). In July 1780, he had been authorized to execute the duties previously assigned to Laurens. With the aid of the Dutch [Patriot](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Patriots_(faction)) leader [Joan van der Capellen tot den Pol](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Joan_van_der_Capellen_tot_den_Pol), Adams secured the recognition of the United States as an independent government at [The Hague](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Hague) on April 19, 1782.[[41]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-40) During this visit, he also negotiated a loan of five million guilders financed by [Nicolaas van Staphorst](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Nicolaas_van_Staphorst) and [Wilhelm Willink](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wilhelm_Willink).[[42]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-41) In October 1782, he negotiated with the Dutch a treaty of amity and commerce, the first such treaty between the United States and a foreign power following the 1778 treaty with France. The house that Adams bought during this stay in [The Netherlands](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Netherlands) became the first American-owned embassy on foreign soil anywhere in the world.[[43]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-42) For two months during 1783, Adams lodged in London with radical publisher [John Stockdale](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Stockdale).[[44]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-43)

In 1784 and 1785, he was one of the architects of far-going trade relations between the [United States](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States) and [Prussia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Prussia). The Prussian ambassador in The Hague, [Friedrich Wilhelm von Thulemeyer](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Friedrich_Wilhelm_von_Thulemeyer), was involved, as were Jefferson and Franklin, who were in Paris.[[45]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-44)

In 1785, John Adams was appointed the first American minister to the [Court of St. James's](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Court_of_St._James's) (ambassador to [Great Britain](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Great_Britain)). In his diary he mentions an exchange between himself and another ambassador who asked if he had often been in England and if he had English relations to which Adams explained he had only been to England once for a two month visit back in 1783 and that he had no relations in the country. The ambassador asked "None, how can that be? you are of English extraction?" to which Adams replied "Neither my father or mother, grandfather or grandmother, great grandfather or great grandmother, nor any other relation that I know of, or care a farthing for, has been in England these one hundred and fifty years; so that you see I have not one drop of blood in my veins but what is American".[[46]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-FOOTNOTEAdamsAdams1851392-45)

When he was presented to his former sovereign, [George III](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_III_of_the_United_Kingdom), the King intimated that he was aware of Adams' lack of confidence in the French government. Adams admitted this, stating: "I must avow to your Majesty that I have no attachment but to my own country."

[Queen Elizabeth II](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Queen_Elizabeth_II) of the [United Kingdom](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_Kingdom) referred to this episode on July 7, 1976, at the [White House](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/White_House). She said:

John Adams, America's first Ambassador, said to my ancestor, King George III, that it was his desire to help with the restoration of 'the old good nature and the old good humor between our peoples.' That restoration has long been made, and the links of language, tradition, and personal contact have maintained it.[[47]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-46)

While in London, John and Abigail had to suffer the stares and hostility of the Court, and chose to escape it when they could by seeking out [Richard Price](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Richard_Price), minister of [Newington Green Unitarian Church](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Newington_Green_Unitarian_Church) and instigator of the [Revolution Controversy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Revolution_Controversy). Both admired Price very much, and Abigail took to heart the teachings of the man and his protegee [Mary Wollstonecraft](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mary_Wollstonecraft), author of [*A Vindication of the Rights of Woman*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/A_Vindication_of_the_Rights_of_Woman).[[48]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-47)

Adams' home in England, a house off London's [Grosvenor Square](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Grosvenor_Square), still stands and is commemorated by a plaque. He returned to the United States in 1788 to continue his domestic political life.

## Constitutional ideas

[Massachusetts's new constitution](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Massachusetts_Constitution), ratified in 1780 and written largely by Adams himself, structured its government most closely on his views of politics and society.[[49]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-48) It was the first constitution written by a special committee and ratified by the people. It was also the first to feature a bicameral legislature, a clear and distinct executive with a partial (two-thirds) veto (although he was restrained by an executive council), and a distinct judicial branch.

"The whole people must take upon themselves the education of the whole people and be willing to bear the expenses of it. There should not be a district of one mile square, without a school in it, not founded by a charitable individual, but maintained at the public expense of the people themselves."

 – John Adams, September 10, 1785[[50]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-49)

While in London, Adams published a work entitled *A Defence of the Constitutions of Government of the United States* (1787).[[51]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-50)In it he repudiated the views of [Turgot](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anne_Robert_Jacques_Turgot,_Baron_de_Laune) and other European writers as to the viciousness of the framework of state governments. Turgot argued that countries that lacked aristocracies needn't have bicameral legislatures. He thought that republican governments feature "all authorities into one center, that of the nation."[[52]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-51) In the book, Adams suggested that "the rich, the well-born and the able" should be set apart from other men in a senate—that would prevent them from dominating the lower house. Wood (2006) has maintained that Adams had become intellectually irrelevant by the time the Federal Constitution was ratified. By then, American political thought, transformed by more than a decade of vigorous and searching debate as well as shaping experiential pressures, had abandoned the classical conception of politics which understood government as a mirror of social estates. Americans' new conception of [popular sovereignty](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Popular_sovereignty) now saw the people-at-large as the sole possessors of power in the realm. All agents of the government enjoyed mere portions of the people's power and only for a limited time. Adams had completely missed this concept and revealed his continued attachment to the older version of politics.[[53]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-52) Yet Wood overlooks Adams' peculiar definition of the term "republic," and his support for a constitution ratified by the people.[[54]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-53) He also underplays Adams' belief in checks and balances. "Power must be opposed to power, and interest to interest," Adams wrote; this sentiment would later be echoed by [James Madison](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Madison)'s famous statement that "[a]mbition must be made to counteract ambition" in [*The Federalist* No. 51](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Federalist_No._51), in explaining the powers of the branches of the [United States federal government](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_federal_government) under the new [Constitution](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Constitution_of_the_United_States).[[55]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-54)[[56]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-55) Adams did as much as anyone to put the idea of "checks and balances" on the intellectual map.

Adams' *Defence* can be read as an articulation of the [classical republican](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Classical_republicanism) theory of [mixed government](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mixed_government). Adams contended that social classes exist in every political society, and that a good government must accept that reality. For centuries, dating back to Aristotle, a mixed regime balancing monarchy, aristocracy, and democracy—that is, the king, the nobles, and the people—was required to preserve order and liberty.[[57]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-56)

Adams never bought a slave and declined on principle to employ slave labor.[[58]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-57) Abigail Adams opposed slavery and employed free blacks in preference to her father's two domestic slaves. John Adams spoke out in 1777 against a bill to emancipate slaves in Massachusetts, saying that the issue was presently too divisive, and so the legislation should "sleep for a time."[[59]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-Wiencek-58) He also was against use of black soldiers in the Revolution, due to opposition from southerners.[[59]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-Wiencek-58) Adams generally tried to keep the issue out of national politics, because of the anticipated southern response.[[59]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-Wiencek-58)[[60]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-59) Though it is difficult to pinpoint the exact date on which slavery was abolished in Massachusetts, a common view is that it was abolished no later than 1780, when it was forbidden by implication in the Declaration of Rights that John Adams wrote into the Massachusetts Constitution.[[61]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-60)

## Vice Presidency

[](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Jadams.jpeg)

[http://bits.wikimedia.org/static-1.20wmf9/skins/common/images/magnify-clip.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Jadams.jpeg)

Portrait of Adams by [John Trumbull](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Trumbull), 1792–93

While Washington won the [presidential election of 1789](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/U.S._presidential_election,_1789) with 69 votes in the [electoral college](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Electoral_College), Adams came in second with 34 votes and became Vice President. According to [David McCullough](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/David_McCullough), what he really might have wanted was to be the first [Chief Justice of the Supreme Court of the United States](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chief_Justice_of_the_Supreme_Court_of_the_United_States). He presided over the Senate but otherwise played a minor role in the politics of the early 1790s; he was reelected Vice President in [1792](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/U.S._presidential_election,_1792). Washington seldom asked Adams for input on policy and legal issues during his tenure as vice president.[[62]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-61)

In the first year of Washington's administration, Adams became deeply involved in a month-long Senate controversy over the official title of the President. Adams favored grandiose titles such as "His Majesty the President" or "His High Mightiness" over the simple "President of the United States" that eventually won the debate. The pomposity of his stance, along with his being overweight, led to Adams earning the nickname "His Rotundity."

As [president of the Senate](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/President_of_the_Senate" \l "United_States), Adams cast 29 [tie-breaking votes](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/U.S._Vice_President's_tie-breaking_votes)—a record that only [John C. Calhoun](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_C._Calhoun) came close to tying, with 28.[[63]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-62) His votes protected the president's sole authority over the removal of appointees and influenced the location of the national capital. On at least one occasion, he persuaded senators to vote against legislation that he opposed, and he frequently lectured the Senate on procedural and policy matters. Adams' political views and his active role in the Senate made him a natural target for critics of the[Washington](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Washington) administration. Toward the end of his first term, as a result of a threatened resolution that would have silenced him except for procedural and policy matters, he began to exercise more restraint. When the two political parties formed, he joined the [Federalist Party](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Federalist_Party_(United_States)), but never got on well with its dominant leader [Alexander Hamilton](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alexander_Hamilton). Because of Adams' seniority and the need for a northern president, he was elected as the Federalist nominee for president in [1796](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/U.S._presidential_election,_1796), over [Thomas Jefferson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Jefferson), the leader of the opposition [Democratic-Republican Party](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican_Party_(United_States)). His success was due to peace and prosperity; Washington and Hamilton had averted war with Britain with the [Jay Treaty](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Jay_Treaty) of 1795.[[64]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-63)

Adams' two terms as Vice President were frustrating experiences for a man of his vigor, intellect, and vanity. He complained to his wife Abigail, "My country has in its wisdom contrived for me the most insignificant office that ever the invention of man contrived or his imagination conceived."[[65]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-64)

## Election of 1796

Main article: [*United States presidential election, 1796*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_presidential_election,_1796)

The 1796 election was the first contested election under the [First Party System](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/First_Party_System). Adams was the presidential candidate of the [Federalist Party](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Federalist_Party) and [Thomas Pinckney](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Pinckney), the [Governor](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_South_Carolina)of [South Carolina](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/South_Carolina), was also running as a Federalist (at this point, the vice president was whoever came in second, so no running mates existed in the modern sense). The Federalists wanted Adams as their presidential candidate to crush Thomas Jefferson's bid. Most Federalists would have preferred Hamilton to be a candidate. Although Hamilton and his followers supported Adams, they also held a grudge against him. They did consider him to be the lesser of the two evils. However, they thought Adams lacked the seriousness and popularity that had caused Washington to be successful and feared that Adams was too vain, opinionated, unpredictable, and stubborn to follow their directions.[[66]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-65)

Adams' opponents were former [Secretary of State](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Secretary_of_State) [Thomas Jefferson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Jefferson) of [Virginia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Virginia), who was joined by [Senator](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Senate) [Aaron Burr](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Aaron_Burr) of [New York](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/New_York) on the [Democratic-Republican](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican_Party_(United_States)) ticket.

As was customary, Adams stayed in his home town of [Quincy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Quincy,_Massachusetts) rather than actively campaign for the Presidency. He wanted to stay out of what he called the silly and wicked game. His [party](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Federalist_Party), however, campaigned for him, while the [Democratic-Republicans](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican_Party_(United_States)) campaigned for Jefferson.

It was expected that Adams would dominate the votes in New England, while Jefferson was expected to win in the Southern states. In the end, Adams won the election by a narrow margin of 71 electoral votes to 68 for Jefferson (who became the vice president).[[67]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-66)

## Presidency: 1797–1801

See also: [*1797 State of the Union Address*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/1797_State_of_the_Union_Address)

[](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:PhiladelphiaPresidentsHouse.jpg)

[http://bits.wikimedia.org/static-1.20wmf9/skins/common/images/magnify-clip.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:PhiladelphiaPresidentsHouse.jpg)

[President's House](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/President's_House_(Philadelphia,_Pennsylvania)), [Philadelphia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Philadelphia). The presidential mansion of George Washington before him, Adams occupied this Philadelphia mansion from March 1797 to May 1800.

As President, Adams followed Washington's lead in making the presidency the example of republican values, and stressing [civic virtue](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Civic_virtue); he was never implicated in any scandal. Adams continued not just the Washington cabinet but all the major programs of the Washington Administration as well. Adams continued to strengthen the central government, in particular by expanding the navy and army. His economic programs were a continuation of those of Hamilton, who regularly consulted with key cabinet members, especially the powerful Secretary of the Treasury, [Oliver Wolcott, Jr.](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Oliver_Wolcott,_Jr.)[[68]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-67) Historians debate his decision to keep the Washington cabinet. Though they were very close to Hamilton, their retention ensured a smoother succession.[[69]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-68) He remained quite independent of his cabinet throughout his term, often making decisions despite strong opposition from it. It was out of this management style that he avoided war with France, despite a strong desire among his cabinet secretaries for war. The [Quasi-War](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Quasi-War) with France resulted in the [disentanglement with European affairs](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Convention_of_1800)that Washington had sought. It also, like [other conflicts](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Battle_of_New_Orleans), had enormous psychological benefits, as America saw itself as holding its own against a European power.

Historian George Herring argues that Adams was the most independent-minded of all the founders.[[70]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-George-69) Though he aligned with the Federalists, he was more his own party, disagreeing with the Federalists almost as much as he did the [Democratic-Republican](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican)opposition.[[71]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-70) Though often described as "prickly", his independence meant that he had a talent for making good decisions in the face of almost universal hostility.[[70]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-George-69) Indeed, it was Adams' decision to push for peace with France, rather than to continue hostilities, that hurt his popularity.[[72]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-71) Though this decision played an important role in his reelection defeat, he was ultimately thrilled with that decision, so much so that he had it engraved on his tombstone.[[73]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-72) Adams spent much of his term at his home in Massachusetts, ignoring the details of political patronage that were not ignored by others. Adams' combative spirit did not always lend itself to presidential decorum, as Adams himself admitted in his old age: "[As president] I refused to suffer in silence. I sighed, sobbed, and groaned, and sometimes screeched and screamed. And I must confess to my shame and sorrow that I sometimes swore."[[74]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-73)

### Quasi-War and peace with France

See also: [*XYZ Affair*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/XYZ_Affair), [*Quasi-War*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Quasi-War), and [*Fries Rebellion*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fries_Rebellion)

John Adams said, in a letter to James Lloyd, January 1815, of peace:

"I desire no other inscription over my gravestone than: Here lies John Adams, who took upon himself the responsibility of the peace with France in the year 1800."[[75]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-74)

Adams' term was marked by intense disputes over foreign policy, in particular a desire to stay out of the [expanding conflict](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/French_Revolution) in Europe. [Britain and France were at war](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/French_Revolutionary_Wars); Hamilton and the Federalists favored Britain, while Jefferson and the Democratic-Republicans favored France.[[76]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-75) The French wanted Jefferson to be elected president, and when he wasn't, they became even more belligerent.[[77]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-76) When Adams [entered office](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams_1797_presidential_inauguration), he realized that he needed to continue Washington's policy of staying out of the European war. Indeed, the intense battle over the [Jay Treaty](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Jay_Treaty) in 1795 permanently polarized politics up and down the nation, marking the start of the [First Party System](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/First_Party_System).[[78]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-77) The French saw America as Britain's junior partner and began seizing American merchant ships that were trading with the British. Americans remained pro-French, due to France's assistance during the [Revolutionary War](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/American_Revolutionary_War). Because of this, Americans wouldn't rally behind Adams, nor anyone else, to stop France.[[79]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-78)

[](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:John_Adams_Presidential_$1_Coin_obverse.png)

[http://bits.wikimedia.org/static-1.20wmf9/skins/common/images/magnify-clip.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:John_Adams_Presidential_$1_Coin_obverse.png)

[Presidential Dollar](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Presidential_Dollar) of John Adams, released in 2007

That problem ended with the [XYZ Affair](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/XYZ_Affair), in which the French demanded huge bribes before any discussions could begin. Before this event, Americans mostly supported France, but after the event, most opposed France. The Jeffersonians, who were friends to France, were embarrassed and quickly became the minority as Americans began to demand full scale war. Adams and his advisers knew that America would be unable to win such a conflict, as France at the time was successfully fighting much of Europe. Instead, Adams pursued a strategy whereby American ships would harass French ships in an effort to stop the French assaults on American interests. This was the undeclared naval war between the U.S. and France, called the [Quasi-War](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Quasi-War), which broke out in 1798. There was danger of invasion from the much larger and more powerful French forces, so Adams and the Federalist congress built up the [army](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/U.S._Army), bringing back Washington at its head. Washington wanted Hamilton to be his second-in-command and, given Washington's fame, Adams reluctantly gave in.[[80]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-79) Given Washington's age, as everyone knew, Hamilton was truly in charge. Adams rebuilt the Navy, adding [six fast, powerful frigates](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Six_original_United_States_frigates), most notably the [USS *Constitution*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/USS_Constitution). To pay for the new Army and Navy, Congress imposed new taxes on property: the Direct Tax of 1798.[[81]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-80) It was the first (and last) such federal tax. Taxpayers were angry, nowhere more so than in southeast Pennsylvania, where the bloodless [Fries's Rebellion](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fries's_Rebellion) broke out among rural German-speaking farmers who protested what they saw as a threat to their republican liberties and to their churches.[[82]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-81)

Hamilton assumed a high degree of control over the War department, and the rift between Adams and Hamilton's supporters grew wider. They acted as though Hamilton were president by demanding that he control the army. They also refused to recognize the necessity of giving prominent Democratic-Republicans positions in the army, which Adams wanted to do in order to gain Democratic-Republican support. By building a large [standing army](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Standing_army), Hamilton's supporters raised popular alarms and played into the hands of the Democratic-Republicans. They also alienated Adams and his large personal following. They shortsightedly viewed the Federalist party as their own tool and ignored the need to pull together the entire nation in the face of war with France.[[83]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-82) Overall, however, due to patriotism and a series of naval victories, the war remained popular and Adams' popularity remained high.

Adams knew victory in an all out war against imperial France would be impossible, so despite the threats to his popularity, he sought peace. In February 1799, he stunned the country by sending diplomat [William Vans Murray](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/William_Vans_Murray) on a peace mission to France. [Napoleon](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Napoleon), realizing that the conflict was pointless, signaled his readiness for friendly relations. At the [Convention of 1800](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Convention_of_1800) the [Treaty of Alliance of 1778](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Treaty_of_Alliance_(1778)) was superseded and the United States could now be free of foreign entanglements, as Washington advised in his farewell address. He brought in [John Marshall](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Marshall) as Secretary of State and demobilized the emergency army.[[84]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-83) Adams avoided war, but deeply split his own party in the process. As he suspected would happen, peace hurt his popularity. Nevertheless, Adams was extremely proud of having kept the nation out of war; later in life he even asked that his tombstone read "Here lies John Adams, who took upon himself the responsibility of Peace with France in the year 1800."[[85]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-84)

### Alien and Sedition Acts

Main article: [*Alien and Sedition Acts*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alien_and_Sedition_Acts)

Though the Democratic-Republicans were discredited by the [XYZ Affair](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/XYZ_Affair), their opposition to the Federalists remained high. In an environment of war, and with recent memories of the[reign of terror](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Reign_of_terror) during the [French Revolution](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/French_Revolution), nerves remained explosive. Democratic-Republicans had supported France, and some even seemed to want an event similar to the French Revolution to come to America to overthrow the Federalists.[[86]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-85) When Democratic-Republicans in some states refused to enforce federal laws, and even threatened possible rebellion, some Federalists threatened to send in an army and force them to capitulate.[[87]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-KnottAlexander-86) As the paranoia sweeping Europe was bleeding over into America, calls for secession reached unparalleled heights, and America seemed ready to rip itself apart.[[87]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-KnottAlexander-86) Some of this was seen by Federalists as having been caused by French and French-sympathizing immigrants. Federalists in Congress therefore passed the [Alien and Sedition Acts](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alien_and_Sedition_Acts), which were signed by Adams in 1798.[[88]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-87)[[89]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-88)

[](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:John_adams_stamp.JPG)

[http://bits.wikimedia.org/static-1.20wmf9/skins/common/images/magnify-clip.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:John_adams_stamp.JPG)

John Adams, as depicted in 1938 on a two-cent American president [U.S. Postage stamp](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/U.S._Presidents_on_U.S._postage_stamps)

There were four separate acts, the [Naturalization Act](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Naturalization_Act_of_1798), the Alien Act, the Alien Enemies Act, and the Sedition Act. These four acts were passed to cool down the opposition by stopping their most extreme firebrands. The Naturalization Act changed the period of residence required before an immigrant could attain American citizenship to 14 years (naturalized citizens tended to vote for the Democratic-Republicans). The Alien Friends Act and the Alien Enemies Act allowed the president to deport any foreigner he thought dangerous to the country. The Sedition Act made it a crime to publish "false, scandalous, and malicious writing" against the government or its officials. Punishments included 2–5 years in prison and fines of up to $5,000. Although Adams had not originated or promoted any of these acts, he nevertheless signed them into law.

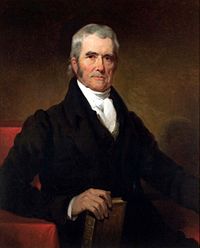
Those acts, and the high-profile prosecution of a number of newspaper editors and one member of Congress by the Federalists, became highly controversial. Some historians have noted that the Alien and Sedition Acts were relatively rarely enforced, as only 10 convictions under the Sedition Act have been identified and as Adams never signed a deportation order, and that the furor over the Alien and Sedition Acts was mainly stirred up by the Democratic-Republicans. However, other historians emphasize that the Acts were highly controversial from the outset, resulting in many aliens leaving the country voluntarily, and created an atmosphere where opposing the Federalists, even on the floor of Congress, could and did result in prosecution. The election of 1800 became a bitter and volatile battle, with each side expressing extraordinary fear of the other party and its policies.[[90]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-89) After Democratic-Republicans won in 1800, they used the acts against Federalists before the acts finally expired.[[91]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-90)

### Reelection campaign 1800

Main article: [*United States presidential election, 1800*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_presidential_election,_1800)

The death of Washington, in 1799, weakened the Federalists, as they lost the one man who symbolized and united the party. In the [presidential election of 1800](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Presidential_election_of_1800), Adams and his fellow Federalist candidate, [Charles Cotesworth Pinckney](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles_Cotesworth_Pinckney), went against the Republican duo of Jefferson and Burr. Hamilton tried his hardest to sabotage Adams' campaign in the hope of boosting Pinckney's chances of winning the presidency. In the end, Adams lost narrowly to Jefferson by 65 to 73 electoral votes, with New York casting the decisive vote.

Adams was defeated because of better organization by the Republicans and Federalist disunity; by the controversy of the Alien and Sedition Acts, the popularity of Jefferson in the south, and the effective politicking of [Aaron Burr](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Aaron_Burr) in [New York State](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/New_York), where the legislature (which selected the electoral college) shifted from Federalist to Democratic-Republican on the basis of a few wards in [New York City](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/New_York_City) controlled by Burr's machine.[[92]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-91) Ultimately, however, Jefferson owed his election victory to the South's inflated number of Electors, which counted slaves under the [three-fifths compromise](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Three-fifths_compromise).[[93]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-History-92)

[](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:John_Marshall_by_Henry_Inman,_1832.jpg)

[http://bits.wikimedia.org/static-1.20wmf9/skins/common/images/magnify-clip.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:John_Marshall_by_Henry_Inman,_1832.jpg)

Adams' appointment of [John Marshall](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Marshall)is often cited as one of his most important contributions

In the closing months of his term Adams became the first president to occupy the new, but unfinished [President's Mansion](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/White_House) (later known as the White House), beginning November 1, 1800.[[94]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-93)

### Midnight Judges

Main article: [*Midnight Judges*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Midnight_Judges)

The lame-duck session of Congress enacted the Judiciary Act of 1801, which created a set of federal appeals courts between the district courts and the Supreme Court. The purpose of the statute was twofold—first, to remedy the defects in the federal judicial system inherent in the [Judiciary Act of 1789](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Judiciary_Act_of_1789), and, second, to enable the defeated Federalists to staff the new judicial offices with loyal Federalists in the face of the party's defeat in presidential and congressional elections in 1800.[[95]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-94) As his term was expiring, Adams filled the vacancies created by this statute by appointing a series of judges, whom his opponents called the "[Midnight Judges](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Midnight_Judges)" because most of them were formally appointed days before the presidential term expired. Most of these judges lost their posts when the Jeffersonian Republicans enacted the Judiciary Act of 1802, abolishing the courts created by the Judiciary Act of 1801 and returning the structure of the federal courts to its original structure as specified in the 1789 statute. One of Adams' greatest legacies was his naming of [John Marshall](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Marshall) as the fourth [Chief Justice of the United States](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chief_Justice_of_the_United_States) to succeed [Oliver Ellsworth](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Oliver_Ellsworth), who had retired due to ill health. Marshall's long tenure represents the most lasting influence of the Federalists, as Marshall infused the Constitution with a judicious and carefully reasoned nationalistic interpretation and established the Judicial Branch as the equal of the Executive and Legislative branches.[[96]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-95)

### Speeches

#### Inaugural Addresses

* [Inaugural Address](http://en.wikisource.org/wiki/John_Adams'_Inaugural_Address) (March 4, 1797)

#### State of the Union Address

* [First State of the Union Address](http://en.wikisource.org/wiki/John_Adams'_First_State_of_the_Union_Address) (November 22, 1797)
* [Second State of the Union Address](http://en.wikisource.org/wiki/John_Adams'_Second_State_of_the_Union_Address), (December 8, 1798)
* [Third State of the Union Address](http://en.wikisource.org/wiki/John_Adams'_Third_State_of_the_Union_Address), (December 3, 1799)
* [Fourth State of the Union Address](http://en.wikisource.org/wiki/John_Adams'_Fourth_State_of_the_Union_Address), (November 22, 1800)

## Administration, Cabinet and Supreme Court Appointments 1797–1801

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | | The Adams Cabinet | | | | Office | Name | Term | |  | | | | [President](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/President_of_the_United_States) | John Adams | 1797–1801 | | [Vice President](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vice_President_of_the_United_States) | [**Thomas Jefferson**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Jefferson) | 1797–1801 | |  | | | | [Secretary of State](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Secretary_of_State) | [**Timothy Pickering**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Timothy_Pickering) | 1797–1800 | | [**John Marshall**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Marshall) | 1800–1801 | |  | | | | [Secretary of Treasury](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Secretary_of_the_Treasury) | [**Oliver Wolcott, Jr.**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Oliver_Wolcott,_Jr.) | 1797–1801 | | [**Samuel Dexter**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Samuel_Dexter) | 1801 | |  | | | | [Secretary of War](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Secretary_of_War) | [**James McHenry**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_McHenry) | 1796–1800 | | [**Samuel Dexter**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Samuel_Dexter) | 1800–1801 | |  | | | | [Attorney General](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Attorney_General) | [**Charles Lee**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles_Lee_(Attorney_General)) | 1797–1801 | |  | | | | [Secretary of the Navy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Secretary_of_the_Navy) | [**Benjamin Stoddert**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Benjamin_Stoddert) | 1798–1801 | |  | |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | | Supreme Court Appointments by President Adams | | | | Position | Name | Term | |  | | | | [Chief Justice](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chief_Justice_of_the_United_States) | [**John Jay**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Jay) | 1800 (declined) | | [**John Marshall**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Marshall) | 1801–1835 | |  | | | | [Associate Justice](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Associate_Justice_of_the_Supreme_Court_of_the_United_States) | [**Bushrod Washington**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bushrod_Washington) | 1799–1829 | | [**Alfred Moore**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alfred_Moore) | 1800–1804 | |

## After his presidency

[](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Brooklyn_Museum_-_Portrait_of_John_Adams_-_Samuel_Finley_Breese_Morse_-_overall.jpg)

[http://bits.wikimedia.org/static-1.20wmf9/skins/common/images/magnify-clip.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Brooklyn_Museum_-_Portrait_of_John_Adams_-_Samuel_Finley_Breese_Morse_-_overall.jpg)

John Adams, ca 1816, by [Samuel F.B. Morse](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Samuel_F.B._Morse) ([Brooklyn Museum](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Brooklyn_Museum_of_Art))

Following his 1800 defeat, Adams retired into private life. Depressed when he left office, he did not attend Jefferson's inauguration, making him one of only four surviving presidents (i.e., those who did not die in office) not to attend his successor's inauguration. Interestingly, one of the other three was his son, [John Quincy Adams](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Quincy_Adams). Adams' correspondence with Jefferson at the time of the transition suggests that he did not feel the animosity or resentment that later scholars have attributed to him. He left Washington before Jefferson's inauguration as much out of sorrow at the death of his son Charles Adams (due in part to the younger man's alcoholism) and his desire to rejoin his wife Abigail, who had left for Massachusetts months before the inauguration. Adams resumed farming at his home, [Peacefield](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Peacefield), in the town of Quincy (formerly a part of the town of Braintree, as it was earlier in his life). He began to work on an autobiography (which he never finished), and resumed correspondence with such old friends as [Benjamin Waterhouse](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Benjamin_Waterhouse) and [Benjamin Rush](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Benjamin_Rush). He also began a bitter and resentful correspondence with an old family friend, [Mercy Otis Warren](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mercy_Otis_Warren), protesting how in her 1805 history of the American Revolution she had, in his view, caricatured his political beliefs and misrepresented his services to the country. Primarily, this revolved around a dispute about whether Adams was sufficiently republican in Warren's view, instead of monarchical, and was related to the Federalist/Republican political divide.[[97]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-Ferling_1992_ch_20-96)

After Jefferson's retirement from public life in 1809 after two terms as President, Adams became more vocal. For three years he published a stream of letters in the [*Boston Patriot* newspaper](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Boston_Patriot_(newspaper)), presenting a long and almost line-by-line refutation of an 1800 pamphlet by Hamilton attacking his conduct and character. Though Hamilton had died in 1804 from a mortal wound sustained in his notorious duel with [Aaron Burr](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Aaron_Burr), Adams felt the need to vindicate his character against the New Yorker's vehement attacks.[[98]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-97)

In early 1812, Adams reconciled with Jefferson. Their mutual friend [Benjamin Rush](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Benjamin_Rush), a fellow signer of the [Declaration of Independence](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Declaration_of_Independence)who had been corresponding with both, encouraged each man to reach out to the other. On New Year's Day 1812, Adams sent a brief, friendly note to Jefferson to accompany the delivery of "two pieces of homespun," a two-volume collection of lectures on rhetoric by [John Quincy Adams](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Quincy_Adams). Jefferson replied immediately with a warm, friendly letter, and the two men revived their friendship, which they conducted by mail. The correspondence that they resumed in 1812 lasted the rest of their lives, and thereafter has been hailed as one of their greatest legacies and a monument of American literature.[[99]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-Cappon_1988-98)

[](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Gilbert_Stuart_John_Adams.jpg)

[http://bits.wikimedia.org/static-1.20wmf9/skins/common/images/magnify-clip.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Gilbert_Stuart_John_Adams.jpg)

John Adams was nearly 89 when, at the request of his son, John Quincy Adams, he posed a final time for [Gilbert Stuart](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gilbert_Stuart) (1823).

Their letters are rich in insight into both the period and the minds of the two Presidents and revolutionary leaders. Their correspondence lasted fourteen years, and consisted of 158 letters.[[99]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-Cappon_1988-98) It was in these years that the two men discussed "natural aristocracy." Jefferson said, "The natural aristocracy I consider as the most precious gift of nature for the instruction, the trusts, and government of society. And indeed it would have been inconsistent in creation to have formed man for the social state, and not to have provided virtue and wisdom enough to manage the concerns of society. May we not even say that the form of government is best which provides most effectually for a pure selection of these natural aristoi into the offices of government?"[[100]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-99) Adams wondered if it ever would be so clear who these people were, "Your distinction between natural and artificial aristocracy does not appear to me well founded. Birth and wealth are conferred on some men as imperiously by nature, as genius, strength, or beauty. . . . When aristocracies are established by human laws and honour, wealth, and power are made hereditary by municipal laws and political institutions, then I acknowledge artificial aristocracy to commence."[[101]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-100) It would always be true, Adams argued, that fate would bestow influence on some men for reasons other than true wisdom and virtue. That being the way of nature, he thought such "talents" were natural. A good government, therefore, had to account for that reality.

Sixteen months before John Adams' death, his son, [John Quincy Adams](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Quincy_Adams), became the sixth President of the United States (1825–1829), the only son of a former President to hold the office until [George W. Bush](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_W._Bush) in 2001.

Adams' daughter [Abigail ("Nabby")](Smith) was married to [Representative](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Congressman) [William Stephens Smith](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/William_Stephens_Smith), but she returned to her parents' home after the failure of her marriage. She died of breast cancer in 1813. His son Charles died as an alcoholic in 1800. Abigail, his wife, died of[typhoid](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Typhoid) on October 28, 1818. His son Thomas and his family lived with Adams and Louisa Smith (Abigail's niece by her brother William) to the end of Adams' life.[[97]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-Ferling_1992_ch_20-96)

## Death

[](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Graves_of_the_Adams,_Quincy,_Massachusetts.JPG)

[http://bits.wikimedia.org/static-1.20wmf9/skins/common/images/magnify-clip.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Graves_of_the_Adams,_Quincy,_Massachusetts.JPG)

Tombs of Presidents John Adams (distance) and [John Quincy Adams](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Quincy_Adams)(foreground) and their wives, in a family crypt beneath the [United First Parish Church](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_First_Parish_Church,_Quincy,_Massachusetts).

Less than a month before his death, John Adams issued a statement about the destiny of the United States, which historians such as[Joy Hakim](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Joy_Hakim) have characterized as a "warning" for his fellow citizens. Adams said:

My best wishes, in the joys, and festivities, and the solemn services of that day on which will be completed the fiftieth year from its birth, of the independence of the United States: a memorable epoch in the annals of the human race, destined in future history to form the brightest or the blackest page, according to the use or the abuse of those political institutions by which they shall, in time to come, be shaped by the human mind.[[102]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-101)

On July 4, 1826, the fiftieth anniversary of the adoption of the Declaration of Independence, Adams died at his home in Quincy. Told that it was the Fourth, he answered clearly, "It is a great day. It is a *good* day." His last words have been reported as "Thomas Jefferson survives" (Jefferson himself, however, had died hours before he did). His death left [Charles Carroll of Carrollton](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles_Carroll_of_Carrollton) as the last surviving signatory of the Declaration of Independence. John Adams died while his son [John Quincy Adams](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Quincy_Adams) was president.[[103]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-102)

His crypt lies at [United First Parish Church](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_First_Parish_Church) (also known as the *Church of the Presidents*) in Quincy. Originally, he was buried in [Hancock Cemetery](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hancock_Cemetery), across the road from the Church. Until his record was broken by [Ronald Reagan](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ronald_Reagan) in 2001, he was the nation's longest-living President (90 years, 247 days) maintaining that record for 175 years.

## Religious views

[](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Adams'_Burial_Site_002.jpg)

[http://bits.wikimedia.org/static-1.20wmf9/skins/common/images/magnify-clip.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Adams'_Burial_Site_002.jpg)

[United First Parish Church](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_First_Parish_Church), Quincy

Adams was raised a [Congregationalist](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Congregational_church), since his ancestors were puritans. According to his biographer David McCullough, "as his family and friends knew, Adams was both a devout Christian, and an independent thinker".[[104]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-103) In a letter to Benjamin Rush, Adams credited religion with the success of his ancestors since their migration to the New World in the 1630s.[[105]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-104) Adams was educated at Harvard when the influence of [deism](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Deism) was growing there, and sometimes used deistic terms in his speeches and writing.[[106]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-105) He also believed that regular church service was beneficial to man's moral sense. Everett (1966) concludes that "Adams strove for a religion based on a common sense sort of reasonableness" and maintained that religion must change and evolve toward perfection.[[107]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-106) Fielding (1940) argues that Adams' beliefs synthesized Puritan, deist, and [humanist](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Humanism) concepts. Adams at one point said that Christianity had originally been [revelatory](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Revelation), but was being misinterpreted and misused in the service of superstition, fraud, and unscrupulous power.[[108]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-107) Goff (1993) acknowledges Fielding's "persuasive argument that Adams never was a deist because he allowed the suspension of the laws of nature and believed that evil was internal, not the result of external institutions."[[109]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-108)

Frazer (2004) notes that, while Adams shared many perspectives with deists, "Adams clearly was not a deist. Deism rejected any and all supernatural activity and intervention by God; consequently, deists did not believe in miracles or God's providence....Adams, however, did believe in miracles, providence, and, to a certain extent, the Bible as revelation."[[110]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-109) Fraser argues that Adams' "theistic rationalism, like that of the other Founders, was a sort of middle ground between Protestantism and deism."[[111]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-110) By contrast, David L. Holmes has argued that John Adams, beginning as a Congregationalist, ended his days as a Christian Unitarian, accepting central tenets of the Unitarian creed but also accepting Jesus as the redeemer of humanity and the biblical account of his miracles as true.[[112]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-111) In common with many of his Protestant contemporaries, Adams criticized the claims to universal authority made by the Roman Catholic Church.[[113]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-112)In 1796, Adams denounced political opponent [Thomas Paine](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Paine)'s criticisms of Christianity in his Deist book [*The Age of Reason*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Age_of_Reason), saying, "The Christian religion is, above all the religions that ever prevailed or existed in ancient or modern times, the religion of wisdom, virtue, equity and humanity, let the Blackguard Paine say what he will."[[114]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-113)

## Ancestry

|  |
| --- |
| [[show](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams)]**Ancestors of John Adams** |

## Biographies

The first notable biography of John Adams appeared as the first two volumes of *The Works of John Adams, Esq., Second President of the United States*, edited by Charles Francis Adams and published between 1850 and 1856 by Charles C. Little and James Brown in Boston. This biography's first seven chapters were the work of [John Quincy Adams](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Quincy_Adams), but the rest of the biography was the work of [Charles Francis Adams](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles_Francis_Adams,_Sr.).

The first modern biography was *Honest John Adams*, a 1933 biography by the noted French specialist in American history Gilbert Chinard, who came to Adams after writing his acclaimed 1929 biography of [Thomas Jefferson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Jefferson). For a generation, Chinard's work was regarded as the best life of Adams, and it is still a key factor in determining the themes of Adams biographical and historical scholarship. Following the opening of the Adams family papers in the 1950s, [Page Smith](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Page_Smith) published the first major biography to use these previously inaccessible primary sources; his biography won a 1962 [Bancroft Prize](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bancroft_Prize) but was criticized for its scanting of Adams' intellectual life and its diffuseness. In 1975, [Peter Shaw](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Peter_Shaw) published *The Character of John Adams,* a thematic biography noted for its graceful prose and its psychological insight into Adams' life. The 1992 character study by [Joseph J. Ellis](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Joseph_J._Ellis), *Passionate Sage: The Character and Legacy of John Adams,* was Ellis's first major publishing success and remains one of the most useful and insightful studies of Adams' personality. In 1993, the Revolutionary War historian and biographer [John E. Ferling](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_E._Ferling) published his acclaimed *John Adams,* also noted for its psychological sensitivity; many scholars regard it as the best biography to date.

In 2001, the popular historian [David McCullough](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/David_McCullough) published a large biography of John Adams that won various awards and general acclaim. McCullough's biography was developed into a 2008 [TV miniseries](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams_(TV_miniseries)), in which [Paul Giamatti](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Paul_Giamatti) portrayed John Adams. Finance writer [James Grant](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Grant_(finance)) published *John Adams, Party of One* in 2005.

Source: Kenneth C. Martis, *The Historical Atlas of Political Parties in the United States Congress, 1789-1989* (1989). The numbers are estimates.

The affiliation of many Congress-men in the earliest years is an assignment by later historians; these were slowly coalescing groups with initially considerable independent thinking and voting; Cunningham noted that only about a quarter of the House of Representatives, up till 1794, voted with Madison as much as two-thirds of the time, and another quarter against him two-thirds of the time, leaving almost half as fairly independent. [Albert Gallatin](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Albert_Gallatin) recalled only two caucuses on legislative policy between 1795 and 1801, one over appropriations for Jay's Treaty, the other over the [Quasi-War](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Quasi-War), and in neither case did the party decide to vote unanimously.[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-7)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Democratic-Republican_Party&action=edit&section=4)]Organizational strategy

The new party invented some of the campaign and organizational techniques that were later adopted by the Federalists and became standard American practice. It was especially effective in building a network of [newspapers](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/History_of_American_newspapers) in major cities to broadcast its statements and editorialize its policies.[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-8) [Fisher Ames](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fisher_Ames), a leading Federalist, used the term "[Jacobin](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Jacobin_(politics))" to link members of Jefferson's party to the radicals of the [French Revolution](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/French_Revolution). He blamed the newspapers for electing Jefferson; they were, he wrote, "an overmatch for any Government…. The Jacobins owe their triumph to the unceasing use of this engine; not so much to skill in use of it as by repetition."[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-9)

As one historian explained, "It was the good fortune of the Republicans to have within their ranks a number of highly gifted political manipulators and propagandists. Some of them had the ability… to not only see and analyze the problem at hand but to present it in a succinct fashion; in short, to fabricate the apt phrase, to coin the compelling slogan and appeal to the electorate on any given issue in language it could understand." Outstanding propagandists included editor [William Duane](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/William_Duane) and party leaders [Albert Gallatin](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Albert_Gallatin), [Thomas Cooper](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Cooper_(US_politician)) and Jefferson himself.[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-10)

Just as important was effective party organization of the sort that [John J. Beckley](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_J._Beckley) pioneered. In 1796, he managed the Jefferson campaign in Pennsylvania, blanketing the state with agents who passed out 30,000 hand-written tickets, naming all 15 electors (printed tickets were not allowed). He told one agent, "In a few days a select republican friend from the City will call upon you with a parcel of tickets to be distributed in your County. Any assistance and advice you can furnish him with, as to suitable districts & characters, will I am sure be rendered." Beckley was the first American professional campaign manager, and his techniques were quickly adopted in other states.[[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-11)

The emergence of the new organizational strategies can be seen in the politics of Connecticut around 1806, which have been well documented by Cunningham. The Federalists dominated Connecticut, so the Republicans had to work harder to win. In 1806, the state leadership sent town leaders instructions for the forthcoming elections. Every town manager was told by state leaders "to appoint a district manager in each district or section of his town, obtaining from each an assurance that he will faithfully do his duty." Then the town manager was instructed to compile lists and total the number of taxpayers and the number of eligible voters, find out how many favored the Republicans and how many the Federalists, and to count the number of supporters of each party who were not eligible to vote but who might qualify (by age or taxes) at the next election. These highly detailed returns were to be sent to the county manager and in turn were compiled and sent to the state manager. Using these lists of potential voters, the managers were told to get all eligible people to town meetings and help the young men qualify to vote. The state manager was responsible for supplying party newspapers to each town for distribution by town and district managers.[[13]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-12) This highly coordinated "get-out-the-vote" drive would be familiar to modern political campaigners, but was the first of its kind in world history.

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Democratic-Republican_Party&action=edit&section=5)]Revolution of 1800

Main article: [*United States presidential election, 1800*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_presidential_election,_1800)

The party's electors secured a majority in the 1800 election, but an equal number of electors cast votes for Jefferson and [Aaron Burr](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Aaron_Burr). The tie sent the election to the House, and Federalists there blocked any choice. Finally Hamilton, believing that Burr would be a poor choice for president, intervened, letting Jefferson win (a move that would result in the collapse of the Federalist Party and Hamilton's death, four years later, at the hands of Burr in a pistol duel). Starting in 1800 in what Jefferson called the “Revolution of 1800”, the party took control of the presidency and both houses of Congress, beginning a quarter century of control of those institutions. A faction called “Old Republicans” opposed the nationalism that grew popular after 1815; they were stunned when party leaders started a [Second Bank of the United States](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Second_Bank_of_the_United_States) in 1816.

The first official Republican Congressional Caucus meeting took place at Marache's boarding house on May 11, 1800 in Philadelphia, PA. The January 26, 1799 letter Thomas Jefferson wrote to Elbridge Gerry became the party's platform.

In the Senate chamber on February 25, 1804 a "Convention of Republican members of both houses of Congress" met. Senator Stephen Bradley presided, a Committee on Presidential Electors was formed and it was resolved that Thomas Jefferson be nominated for the Office of President of the United States and George Clinton be nominated for the Office of Vice-President of the United States.

The party held a convention by the same name on January 23, 1808, again in the Senate chamber at 6:00 pm on a Saturday. Senator Stephen Bradley, who was the President Pro Tempore of the Senate again President of this convention with Representative Richard Johnson as the Secretary. A Committee on Correspondence was formed and James Madison was nominated for the Office of President of the United States and with George Clinton nominated for a second term in the Office of Vice-President of the United States.

Legislative issues were handled by the Committee of the Whole elected Speaker of the House of Representatives and floor leaders, who at that time were the Chairman for the Committee on Ways and Means of the House of Representatives and Chairman for the Committee on Finance of the Senate.

The state legislatures often instructed Members of Congress how to vote on specific issues. More exactly, they "instructed" the Senators (who were elected by the legislatures), and "requested" the Representatives (who were elected by the people.) On rare occasions a Senator resigned rather than follow instructions.

The opposition Federalist Party, suffering from a lack of leadership after the death of Hamilton and the retirement of [John Adams](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams), quickly declined; it revived briefly in opposition to the [War of 1812](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/War_of_1812), but the extremism of its [Hartford Convention](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hartford_Convention) of 1815 utterly destroyed it as a political force.

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Democratic-Republican_Party&action=edit&section=6)]Monroe and Adams, 1816–1828

In rapidly expanding western states, the Federalists had few supporters. Every state had a distinct political geography that shaped party membership. In Pennsylvania, the Republicans were weakest around [Philadelphia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Philadelphia) and strongest in [Scots-Irish](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Scots-Irish_American) settlements in the west. Members came from all social classes, but came predominantly from the poor, subsistence farmers, mechanics and tradesmen.[[14]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-13) After the [War of 1812](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/War_of_1812), partisanship subsided across the young republic—people called it the [Era of Good Feelings](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Era_of_Good_Feelings). James Monroe narrowly won the party's nomination for President in Congress over [William Crawford](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/William_H._Crawford) in 1816 and defeated Federalist [Rufus King](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rufus_King) in the general election.

In the early years of the party, the key central organization grew out of caucuses of Congressional leaders in Washington. However, the key battles to choose electors occurred in the states, not in the caucus. In many cases, legislatures still chose electors; in others, the election of electors was heavily influenced by local parties that were heavily controlled by relatively small groups of officials. Without a significant Federalist opposition, the need for party unity was greatly diminished and the party's organization faded away.

[James Monroe](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe) ran under the party's banner in the [1820 election](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/U.S._presidential_election,_1820) and built support by consensus. Monroe faced no serious rival and was nearly unanimously elected by the electoral college. The party's historic domination by the Virginian delegation faded as New York and Pennsylvania became more important. In the [1824 election](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/U.S._presidential_election,_1824), most of the party in Congress boycotted the caucus; only a small rump group backed [William Crawford](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/William_H._Crawford). The Crawford faction included most "Old Republicans", who remained committed to states' rights and the Principles of 1798, and distrustful of the nationalizing program promoted by [Henry Clay](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Henry_Clay) and [John C. Calhoun](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_C._Calhoun).

Thomas Jefferson wrote on the state of party politics in the early 1820s:[[15]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-14)

An opinion prevails that there is no longer any distinction, that the republicans & Federalists are completely amalgamated but it is not so. The amalgamation is of name only, not of principle. All indeed call themselves by the name of Republicans, because that of Federalists was extinguished in the battle of New Orleans. But the truth is that finding that monarchy is a desperate wish in this country, they rally to the point which they think next best, a consolidated government. Their aim is now therefore to break down the rights reserved by the constitution to the states as a bulwark against that consolidation, the fear of which produced the whole of the opposition to the constitution at its birth. Hence new Republicans in Congress, preaching the doctrines of the old Federalists, and the new nick-names of Ultras and Radicals. But I trust they will fail under the new, as the old name, and that the friends of the real constitution and union will prevail against consolidation, as they have done against monarchism. I scarcely know myself which is most to be deprecated, a consolidation, or dissolution of the states. The horrors of both are beyond the reach of human foresight.

In the aftermath of the disputed [1824](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_presidential_election,_1824) election, the separate factions took on many characteristics of parties in their own right. Adams' supporters, in league with Clay, favored modernization, banks, industrial development, and federal spending for roads and other [internal improvements](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Internal_improvements), which the Old Republicans and the Jackson men usually opposed. Writing in his personal journal on December 13, 1826, President Adams noted the difficulty he faced in attempting to be nonpartisan in appointing men to office:[[16]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-15)

And it is upon the occasion of appointments to office that all the wormwood and the gall of the old party hatred ooze out. Not a vacancy to any office occurs but there is a distinguished federalist started and pushed home as a candidate to fill it—always well qualified, sometimes in an eminent degree, and yet so obnoxious to the Republican party, that he cannot be appointed without exciting a vehement clamor against him and the Administration. It becomes thus impossible to fill any appointment without offending one half of the community—the federalists, if their associate is overlooked; the Republicans, if he is preferred.

Presidential electors were now all chosen by direct election, except in South Carolina, where the state legislatures chose them. White manhood [suffrage](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Suffrage) was the norm throughout the West and in most of the East as well. The voters thus were much more powerful, and to win their votes required complex party organization. Under the leadership of [Martin Van Buren](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Martin_Van_Buren), a firm believer in political organization, the Jacksonians built strong state and local organizations throughout the country. The Old Republicans, or "Radicals," mostly supported Jackson and joined with supporters of incumbent Vice President Calhoun in an alliance. President Adams was defeated by Andrew Jackson in the election of [1828](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_presidential_election,_1828).

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Democratic-Republican_Party&action=edit&section=7)]Party name

Political parties were new in the United States, and people were not accustomed to having formal names for them. There was no single, official name for the party. Party members generally called themselves "Republicans" and voted for what they called the "Republican Party," "republican ticket," or the "republican interest".[[17]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-Republican_name-16) Jefferson and Madison often used the terms "republican" and "Republican party" in their letters.[[18]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-17) The 1804 Convention of Republican members of Congress that renominated Jefferson described itself as a, "regular republican caucus."

This name was used by contemporaries only occasionally.[[19]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-18)

The term "republican" was in widespread usage from the 1770s to describe the political values of the nation, especially the emphasis on civic duty and the opposition to corruption, elitism, aristocracy and monarchy.[[20]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-19) The word is used in the U.S. Constitution.[[21]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-20)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Democratic-Republican_Party&action=edit&section=8)]Claims to the party's heritage

The [Democratic Party](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic_Party_(United_States)) is often called "the party of [Jefferson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Jefferson),"[[22]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-21)[[23]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-22)[[24]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-23) while the modern [Republican Party](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Republican_Party_(United_States)) is often called "the party of [Lincoln](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Abraham_Lincoln)."

The Republican party evolved in the National Republican Party during the 1824 elections. When the election was thrown to the House of Representatives, [Henry Clay](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Henry_Clay) backed [John Quincy Adams](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Quincy_Adams) to deny the presidency to [Andrew Jackson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Andrew_Jackson), a longtime political rival.

The first [Democratic national convention](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/1832_Democratic_National_Convention) was held in Baltimore, Maryland on May 21–23, 1832. Andrew Jackson was nominated and went on to win the presidency.

The Adams/Clay alliance became the basis of the [National Republican Party](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/National_Republican_Party_(United_States)), a rival to the Jackson's Democracy. This party favored a higher tariff in order to protect U.S. manufacturers, as well as public works, especially roads. Many former members of the defunct Federalist Party, including [Daniel Webster](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Daniel_Webster), joined the party. After Clay's defeat by Jackson in the 1832 presidential election, the National Republicans were absorbed into the [Whig Party](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Whig_Party_(United_States)), a diverse group of Jackson opponents. Taking a leaf from the Jacksonians, the Whigs tended to nominate non-ideological war heroes as their presidential candidates. The Whig party fell apart in the 1850s over the question of whether to allow the expansion of slavery into new territories.

The modern [Republican Party](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/History_of_the_Republican_Party_(United_States)) was founded in 1854 to oppose the expansion of slavery; its name was chosen in reference to Jefferson's earlier party. Many former Whig party leaders (such as [Abraham Lincoln](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Abraham_Lincoln)) and former [Free Soil Party](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Free_Soil_Party) leaders joined the newly formed anti-slavery party.[[25]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-24) The party sought to combine Jefferson's ideals of liberty and equality with Clay's program of using an active government to modernize the economy.[[26]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-25)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Democratic-Republican_Party&action=edit&section=9)]Party Presidents

**James Monroe** (April 28, 1758 – July 4, 1831) was the [fifth](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_Presidents_of_the_United_States) [President of the United States](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/President_of_the_United_States) (1817–1825). Monroe was the last president who was a [Founding Father of the United States](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Founding_Fathers_of_the_United_States), the third of them to die on Independence Day, and the last president from the [Virginia dynasty](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Virginia_dynasty) and the [Republican Generation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_Presidents_of_the_United_States_by_date_of_birth" \l "Generation).[[1]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-0) His presidency was marked both by an "[Era of Good Feelings](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Era_of_Good_Feelings)" – a period of relatively little partisan strife – and later by the [Panic of 1819](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Panic_of_1819) and a fierce national debate over conditions of the admission of the [Missouri Territory](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Missouri_Territory). Monroe is most noted for his foreign policy proclamation in the [Monroe Doctrine](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Monroe_Doctrine) in 1823, which stated that the United States would not tolerate further European intervention in the [Americas](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Americas).

Born in [Westmoreland County](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Westmoreland_County,_Virginia), [Virginia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Virginia), Monroe was of the planter class and fought in the [American Revolutionary War](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/American_Revolutionary_War). He was injured in the [Battle of Trenton](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Battle_of_Trenton) with a musket ball to his shoulder. After studying law under [Thomas Jefferson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Jefferson) from 1780 to 1783, he served as a [delegate](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_delegates_to_the_Continental_Congress) in the [Continental Congress](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Continental_Congress). As an [anti-federalist](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anti-Federalism) delegate to the Virginia convention that considered ratification of the[United States Constitution](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Constitution), Monroe opposed [ratification](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ratification), claiming it gave too much power to the central government. He took an active part in the new government, and in 1790 he was elected to the [Senate](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Senate) of [the first United States Congress](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/1st_United_States_Congress), where he joined the[Jeffersonians](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican_Party). He gained experience as an executive as the [Governor of Virginia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Virginia) and rose to national prominence as a diplomat in France, when he helped negotiate the [Louisiana Purchase](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Louisiana_Purchase) in 1803. Monroe was of French and Scottish descent.

During the [War of 1812](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/War_of_1812), Monroe held the critical roles of [Secretary of State](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Secretary_of_State) and the [Secretary of War](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Secretary_of_War) under President [James Madison](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Madison).[[2]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-Hart1-1) Facing little opposition from the fractured [Federalist Party](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Federalist_Party), Monroe was [easily elected](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_presidential_election,_1816) president in 1816, winning over 80 percent of the electoral vote and becoming the last president during the [First Party System](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/First_Party_System) era of American politics. As president, he sought to ease partisan tensions and embarked on a tour of the country and was well received everywhere.[[*citation needed*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:Citation_needed)] As nationalism surged, partisan fury subsided and the "[Era of Good Feelings](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Era_of_Good_Feelings)" ensued until the [Panic of 1819](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Panic_of_1819) struck and [dispute over the admission of Missouri](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Missouri_Compromise) embroiled the country in 1820. Nonetheless, Monroe [won near-unanimous reelection](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_presidential_election,_1820). In 1823, he announced the[Monroe Doctrine](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Monroe_Doctrine), which became a landmark in American foreign policy. His presidency concluded the first period of American presidential history before the beginning of [Jacksonian democracy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Jacksonian_democracy) and the [Second Party System](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Second_Party_System) era. Following his retirement in 1825, Monroe was plagued by financial difficulties. He died in [New York City](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/New_York_City) on July 4, 1831.

First tutored at home by his mother Elizabeth, between the ages of 11 and 16, the young Monroe studied at Campbelltown Academy, a school run by the Reverend Archibald Campbell of Washington Parish. There he excelled as a pupil and progressed through Latin and mathematics at a rate faster than that of most boys his age. [John Marshall](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Marshall), later [Chief Justice of the United States](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chief_Justice_of_the_United_States), was among his classmates.

In 1774 at the age of 16, Monroe's father died and he inherited his small [plantation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Plantation) and slaves, officially joining the ruling class of the planter elite in what had become the slave society of Virginia.[[4]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-3) He began forming a close relationship with his maternal uncle, the influential Judge Joseph Jones, who had been educated at the [Inns of Court](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Inns_of_Court) in London and was the executor of his father's estate.

That same year, Monroe enrolled in the [College of William and Mary](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/College_of_William_and_Mary). But in 1774, most students were charged with excitement over the prospect of rebellion against [King George](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_III_of_the_United_Kingdom). The following spring, Monroe dropped out of college and joined the 3rd Virginia Regiment in the [Continental Army](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Continental_Army).[[5]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-4) In June 1775, after the battles of Lexington and Concord, Monroe joined 24 older men in raiding the arsenal at the Governor's Palace. They used the loot of 200 muskets and 300 swords to arm the Williamsburg [militia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Militia). The following spring, Monroe dropped out of college and joined the Continental Army where, as a planter, he was commissioned as an officer. He never returned to earn a degree.

Although [Andrew Jackson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Andrew_Jackson) served as a courier in a militia unit at age thirteen, Monroe is regarded as the last U.S. President who was a[Revolutionary War](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/American_Revolutionary_War) veteran, since he served as an officer of the Continental Army and took part in combat.[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-5) He served with distinction at the [Battle of Trenton](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Battle_of_Trenton), where he was shot in his left shoulder. He spent three months recuperating from his wound. In [John Trumbull](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Trumbull)'s painting *Capture of the*[*Hessians*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hessians)*at the Battle of Trenton*, Monroe can be seen lying wounded at left center of painting. In the famous painting, [*Washington Crossing the Delaware*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Washington_Crossing_the_Delaware), Monroe is depicted holding the flag.[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-Library-6)[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-7)

He left the war and, between 1780 and 1783, Monroe studied law as a legal apprentice under [Thomas Jefferson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Jefferson).[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-isbn0-19-530092-0-8)[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-log-cabin-76-9) Monroe was not particularly interested in legal theory or practice, but chose to take it up because he thought that it offered "the most immediate rewards" and could ease his path to wealth, social standing, and political influence.[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-log-cabin-76-9) After passing the bar, he practiced law in [Fredericksburg, Virginia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fredericksburg,_Virginia).[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-Library-6)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=James_Monroe&action=edit&section=3)]Marriage and family

James Monroe married [Elizabeth Kortright](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Elizabeth_Kortright) (1768–1830), daughter of Laurence Kortright and Hannah Aspinwall Kortright, on February 16, 1786, in New York City. He had met her while serving with the Continental Congress, which then met in New York, the temporary capital of the new nation. After a brief honeymoon on [Long Island, New York](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Long_Island,_New_York), the Monroes returned to New York City to live with her father until Congress adjourned. The Monroes had the following children:

* Eliza Monroe (1786–1835) – married [George Hay](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Hay_(Virginia)) in 1808 and substituted for her ailing mother as official White House hostess for her father's presidential events.
* James Spence Monroe (1799–1801) – his grave reads "J.S. Monroe", so the proper names are speculative but typical of naming patterns of the time, which passed on family names.
* Maria Hester Monroe (1803–1850) – married her cousin [Samuel L. Gouverneur](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Samuel_L._Gouverneur) on March 8, 1820, in the first wedding of a president's child in the White House.[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-10)[[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-11)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=James_Monroe&action=edit&section=4)]Plantation

He sold his small inherited Virginia plantation in 1783 to enter law and politics. Monroe later fulfilled his youthful dream of becoming the owner of a large [plantation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Plantation) and wielding great political power, but his plantation was never profitable. Although he owned much more land and [slaves](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Slaves) and speculated in property, he was rarely on-site to oversee the operations. Overseers treated the slaves harshly to force production, but the plantations barely broke even. Monroe incurred debts by his lavish lifestyle and often sold property (including slaves) to pay them off.[[13]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-12)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=James_Monroe&action=edit&section=5)]Early political career

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=James_Monroe&action=edit&section=6)]Virginia politics

Monroe was elected to the [Virginia House of Delegates](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Virginia_House_of_Delegates) in 1782. After serving for the Continental legislature, he was elected to the Fourth [Continental Congress](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Continental_Congress) in November 1783. He was also elected to and served in the Fifth and Sixth Congresses, serving for a total of three years where he finally retired from that office by the rule of rotation.[[14]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-13) In those years, the government was meeting in the temporary capital of [New York City](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/New_York_City).

In Virginia the struggle in 1788 over the ratification of the proposed new Constitution involved more than a simple clash between federalists and anti-federalists. Virginians held a full spectrum of opinions about the merits of the proposed change in national government. [George Washington](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Washington) and [James Madison](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Madison) were leading supporters; [Patrick Henry](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Patrick_Henry) and [George Mason](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Mason) were leading opponents. Those who held the middle ground in the ideological struggle became the central figures. Led by Monroe and [Edmund Pendleton](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Edmund_Pendleton), these "federalists who are for amendments," criticized the absence of a [bill of rights](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bill_of_rights) and worried about surrendering taxation powers to the central government. Virginia ratified the Constitution in June 1788, largely because Monroe, Pendleton and followers suspended their reservations and vowed to press for changes after the new government had been established.[[15]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-14)

Virginia narrowly ratified the Constitution. Monroe ran for a House seat in the 1st Congress but was defeated by Madison. In 1790 he was elected by the Virginia legislature as[United States Senator](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Senate). He soon joined the ["Democratic-Republican" faction](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican_Party) led by Jefferson and Madison, and by 1791 was the party leader in the Senate.[[16]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-15)

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=James_Monroe&action=edit&section=7)]Ambassador to France

Monroe resigned his Senate seat after being appointed [Minister to France](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/U.S._Ambassador_to_France) in 1794.[[17]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-bio.congress-16) As ambassador, Monroe secured the release of [Thomas Paine](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Paine) in revolutionary France after his arrest for opposition to the execution of [Louis XVI](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Louis_XVI). The government insisted that Paine be deported to the United States.[[18]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-17)

Monroe arranged to free all the Americans held in French prisons. He also gained the freedom of [Madame Adrienne Lafayette](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Adrienne_de_La_Fayette) and issued her and her family American passports (they had been granted [citizenship](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Honorary_Citizen_of_the_United_States) by the US government for contributions during the Revolution.) She used that for travel to her [husband](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gilbert_du_Motier,_marquis_de_Lafayette), imprisoned in [Olmutz](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Olmutz).[[19]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-18)

A strong friend of the [French Revolution](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/French_Revolution), Monroe tried to assure France that [Washington's](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Washington) policy of strict neutrality did not favor Britain. But American policy had come to favor Britain, and Monroe was stunned by the United States' signing of the [Jay Treaty](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Jay_Treaty) in London. With France and Britain at war, the Jay Treaty alarmed and angered the French. Washington had differences with Monroe and discharged him as Minister to France, claiming his "inefficiency, disruptive maneuvers, and failure to safeguard the interests of his country."[[20]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-19)

Monroe had long been concerned about foreign influence on the presidency. He was alarmed by the Spanish diplomat [Don Diego de Gardoqui](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Don_Diego_de_Gardoqui), who in 1785 tried to convince Congress to allow Spain to close the [Mississippi River](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mississippi_River) to American traffic for 30 years. Spain controlled much of the Mississippi since taking over former French territory, including the important port of New Orleans. Monroe thought that Spain could have endangered the US retention of its Southwest and caused the dominance of the Northeast.[[21]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-20) Monroe believed in both a strong presidency and the system of checks and balances.

In the 1790s he fretted over an aging George Washington being too much influenced by close advisers such as [Alexander Hamilton](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alexander_Hamilton), who Monroe thought too close to Britain. He was humiliated by Washington's criticism for his support of revolutionary France as minister to the nation.[[22]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-21) He thought foreign and [Federalist](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Federalist) elements created the [Quasi War](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Quasi_War) of 1798–1800, and were behind efforts to prevent the election of [Thomas Jefferson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Jefferson) as president in 1800. As governor he considered using the Virginia militia to force the outcome in favor of Jefferson.[[23]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-22) Federalists responded in kind, some seeing Monroe as at best a French dupe and at worst a traitor.[[24]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-23)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=James_Monroe&action=edit&section=8)]Governor of Virginia and Diplomat

Out of office, Monroe returned to practicing law in [Virginia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Virginia) until elected [governor](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Virginia) there as a Republican, his first term serving from 1799 to 1802. He was reelected Virginia's governor four times.[[25]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-24) He called out the state militia to suppress [Gabriel's Rebellion](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gabriel's_Rebellion). Gabriel and 26 other enslaved people who participated were all hanged for treason.

President [Jefferson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Jefferson) sent Monroe to France to assist [Robert R. Livingston](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Robert_Livingston_(1746–1813)) to negotiate the [Louisiana Purchase](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Louisiana_Purchase). Monroe was then appointed [Minister to the Court of St. James (Britain)](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/U.S._Ambassador_to_Great_Britain) from 1803 to 1807. In 1806 he negotiated a treaty with Britain, known as the [Monroe–Pinkney Treaty](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Monroe–Pinkney_Treaty). It would extend the [Jay Treaty](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Jay_Treaty) of 1794 which had expired after ten years; Jefferson had fought the Jay Treaty intensely in 1794–95 because he felt it would allow the British to subvert [American republicanism](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Republicanism_in_the_United_States). The treaty had produced ten years of peace and highly lucrative trade for American merchants, but Jefferson was still hostile. When Monroe and the British signed a renewal in December 1806, Jefferson decided to reject it, and not submit it to the Senate. Although the new treaty called for ten more years of trade between the U.S. and the British Empire, and gave American merchants certain guarantees that would have been good for business, Jefferson refused to give up the potential weapon of commercial warfare against Britain and was unhappy that it did not end the hated British practice of [impressment](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Impressment) of American sailors. Jefferson did not attempt to obtain another treaty, and as a result, the two nations moved from peace toward the [War of 1812](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/War_of_1812).[[26]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-25)

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=James_Monroe&action=edit&section=9)]1808 election and the Quids

The Republican Party was increasingly factionalized with "[Old Republicans](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Old_Republicans)" or "Quids" denouncing the Administration for abandoning true republican principles. The Quids, seeing that Monroe's foreign policy had been rejected by Jefferson, tried to enlist Monroe in their cause. The plan was to run Monroe for president in the 1808 election in cooperation with the [Federalist Party](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Federalist_Party), which had a strong base in New England. [John Randolph of Roanoke](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Randolph_of_Roanoke) led the Quid effort to stop Jefferson's choice of [James Madison](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Madison). However, the regular Republicans overcame the Quids, kept control of the party in Virginia, and protected Madison's base. Monroe did not run for president and Madison was elected president.[[27]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-26)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=James_Monroe&action=edit&section=10)]Secretary of State and Secretary of War

Monroe returned to the Virginia House of Delegates and was elected to another term as governor in 1811, but only served four months. He became Secretary of State in April of that year. He had little to do with the [War of 1812](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/War_of_1812), as President Madison and the War Hawks in Congress were dominant. The war went very badly, and when the British burned the capitol building on August 24, 1814, Madison removed John Armstrong as Secretary of War and turned to Monroe for help, appointing him [Secretary of War](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Secretary_of_War) on September 27.[[28]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-27)Monroe resigned as Secretary of State on October 1, but no successor was ever appointed, so he continued doing the work. Thus from October 1, 1814, to February 28, 1815, Monroe effectively held both cabinet posts. Monroe formulated plans for an offensive invasion of Canada to win the war, but a peace treaty was ratified in February 1815, before any armies moved north. Monroe therefore resigned as Secretary of War on March 15, 1815 and was formally reappointed Secretary of State. Monroe stayed on at State until March 4, 1817, when he began his term as the new President of the United States.[[2]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-Hart1-1)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=James_Monroe&action=edit&section=11)]Presidential elections of 1816 and 1820

The congressional nominating caucus experienced little opposition during the administrations of Jefferson and Madison, but this situation changed in the election year of 1816. An indeterminate number of anti-Virginia Republicans, led by the New York delegation, objected to the caucus system along with the Federalists. Disorganization and failure to agree on [William H. Crawford](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/William_H._Crawford), [Daniel Tompkins](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Daniel_Tompkins), [Henry Clay](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Henry_Clay) or another possible contender weakened opposition to Monroe. The boycott by Virginia delegates of the March 12 caucus removed the chances of Monroe's opponents, and he received the caucus nomination four days later.[[29]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-28) With the [Federalist Party](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Federalist_Party) in disarray due to the unpopularity of their opposition to the [War of 1812](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/War_of_1812), he was easily elected.[[30]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-miller.monroe.elections-29) The Federalists did not even name a candidate, though [Rufus King](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rufus_King) of New York did run in opposition to Monroe under the Federalist banner.[[30]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-miller.monroe.elections-29) King carried only Connecticut, Delaware, and Massachusetts and won only 34 of 217 electoral votes cast.[[30]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-miller.monroe.elections-29) (See [United States presidential election, 1816](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_presidential_election,_1816).)

The collapse of the Federalists left Monroe with no organized opposition at the end of his first term, and he ran for reelection unopposed,[[30]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-miller.monroe.elections-29) the only president other than[Washington](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Washington) to do so. A single elector from New Hampshire cast a vote for [John Quincy Adams](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Quincy_Adams), preventing a unanimous vote in the [electoral college](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Electoral_college).[[30]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-miller.monroe.elections-29) (See [United States](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_presidential_election,_1820)

In 1985 and 2000 the University of Virginia was described as a "[Public Ivy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Public_Ivy)" by authors Richard Moll, Howard Greene, and Matthew Greene, in reference to a group of public universities offering an education comparable to [Ivy League](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ivy_League) universities.[[71]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-70) In 2009 and 2010,[*U.S. News & World Report*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/U.S._News_%26_World_Report) ranked the University of Virginia as the number two public university among "National Universities" in the United States and #130 among the world's best universities.[[72]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-71)[[73]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-72) In the 2011 edition, the undergraduate program at U.Va. ranked #2 out of roughly 200 public universities in the United States, tied with [UCLA](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/UCLA),[[74]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-usnews-public2011-73) and #25 overall (including private schools), tied with[UCLA](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_California,_Los_Angeles), the [University of Southern California](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Southern_California), and [Wake Forest University](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wake_Forest_University).[[75]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-74) In the 26-year history of the rankings, U.Va. has never dropped out of the Top 25 listing and has always ranked either #1 or #2 among public schools.[[76]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-75) In every published edition of the report going back to 1983, the undergraduate program at the University has also retained its position as the highest ranked school, public or private, in its home state of Virginia. [Forbes Magazine](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Forbes_Magazine) ranked the University #44 in its 2010 ranking of U.S. universities, the highest ranking for a public university on the list.[[77]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-forbes2010-76) Internationally, in 2010 U.Va. ranked 72nd in the world according to the [Times Higher Education World University Rankings](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Times_Higher_Education_World_University_Rankings).[[78]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-World_University_Rankings-77) The 2011 [QS World University Rankings](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/QS_World_University_Rankings) placed Virginia at 126th overall, four places up from 2011, and 96th in Arts & Humanities.[[79]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-78) GQ magazine recognized the University of Virginia noting classroom attendance of scholarship athletes as well as student traditions such as referring to the institution as "the University", ranking it 25th.[[80]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-79)

U.Va. has been recognized numerous times as having the highest [African American](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/African_American) graduation rate among public universities, and by a wide margin.[[81]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-virginia.edu-80)[[82]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-81)[[83]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-82)[[84]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-jbhe.com-83) Among the Top Four public universities that consistently rank highest in the ubiquitous *U.S. News* rankings, the University of Virginia has an 87% black student graduation rate, some 15 to 20 percentage points higher than the 70% at the [University of California, Berkeley](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_California,_Berkeley), 68% at the [University of Michigan](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Michigan), and 73% at [UCLA](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/UCLA).[[84]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-jbhe.com-83) In addition, due in part to [California Proposition 209](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/California_Proposition_209_(1996)) and the [Michigan Proposal 2](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Michigan_Civil_Rights_Initiative), the University also has much higher African American populations than these peer universities. The University of Virginia has an undergraduate student body that is 8.7%[[85]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-84) African American, while the [University of California](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_California) undergraduate student bodies at Berkeley and UCLA are just 3.2%[[86]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-85) and 3.7%[[87]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-86)African American, respectively. Only 5.2%[[88]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-87) of University of Michigan undergraduates are African American. Thus, relative to its closest peers, the University of Virginia has twice to three times the proportion of African American undergraduate students, and they go on to graduate at significantly higher rates.

The University of Virginia has many highly regarded graduate programs. Programs ranked in their respective fields' top 10 by *U.S. News & World Report* include [Law](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Law), [Tax Law](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tax_Law),[International Law](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/International_Law), [architecture](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Architecture),[[89]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-88) 18th through 20th Century [British Literature](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/British_Literature), [African-American Literature](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/African-American_Literature), [American Literature](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/American_Literature), American Literature Before 1865, [Creative Writing](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Creative_Writing),[[90]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-89) [U.S. Colonial History](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Colonial_history_of_the_United_States), [Political Theory](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Political_Theory), [Developmental Psychology](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Developmental_Psychology), [Adult/Medical-Surgical Nursing](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Medical-surgical_nursing), [Psychiatric/Mental Health Nursing](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Psychiatric_and_mental_health_nursing), [Management](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Management), [Elementary Teacher Education](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Primary_education), [Secondary Teacher Education](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Secondary_education), and [Special Education](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Special_Education).[[91]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-90)

Appointment powers

The Governor appoints almost all military and civil officers of the State government, subject to advice and consent of the [Maryland State Senate](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Maryland_State_Senate). The Governor also appoints certain boards and commissions in each [of the 24 Counties](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_counties_in_Maryland) and in [Baltimore City](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Baltimore_City), such as local Boards of Elections, commissions [notaries public](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Notary_public), and he appoints officers to fill vacancies in the elected offices of [Attorney General](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Attorney_General_of_Maryland) and [Comptroller](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Comptroller_of_Maryland).[[3]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-origins-2) Should a vacancy arise in the General Assembly, the Governor also fills that vacancy, though the Governor must choose from among the recommendations of the local party organization to which the person leaving the vacancy belonged.[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-6) Any officer appointed by the Governor, except a member of the General Assembly, is removable by him, if there is a legitimate cause for removal. Among the most prominent of the Governor's appointees are the 24 secretaries and heads of departments that make up the Governor's [Cabinet](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cabinet_(government)), also known as the Executive Council.[[3]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-origins-2)

[[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Governor_of_Maryland&action=edit&section=5)]**Executive Council**

The Governor of Maryland is the Chairman of the Governor's Executive Council (or Cabinet) which coordinates all state government functions. This is composed of the following members, all of whom, except the Lieutenant Governor, are appointed by the Governor with the advice and consent of the Maryland State Senate as heads of executive departments[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-msa.md.gov-7):

* Lieutenant Governor, currently [Anthony G. Brown](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anthony_G._Brown)
* Secretary of State, currently John P. McDonough, Esq.
* Secretary of Aging, currently Gloria G. Lawlah
* Secretary of Agriculture, currently Earl F. (Buddy) Hance
* Secretary of Budget and Management, currently T. Eloise Foster
* Secretary of Business and Economic Development, currently Christian S. Johansson
* Secretary of Disabilities, currently Catherine A. Raggio
* State Superintendent of Schools (appointed by the State Board of Education to direct the [Maryland State Department of Education](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Maryland_State_Department_of_Education)), currently Lillian M. Lowery
* Secretary of Environment, currently Shari T. Wilson
* Secretary of General Services, currently Alvin C. Collins
* Secretary of Health and Mental Hygiene, currently John M. Colmers
* Secretary of Housing and Community Development, currently Raymond A. Skinner
* Secretary of Human Resources, currently Theodore Dallas
* Secretary of Information Technology, currently Elliot H. Schlanger
* Secretary of Juvenile Services, currently Donald W. DeVore
* Secretary of Labor, Licensing, and Regulation, currently Alexander M. Sanchez
* Secretary of Natural Resources, currently John R. Griffin
* Secretary of Planning, currently Richard T. Hall
* Secretary of Public Safety and Correctional Services, currently Gary D. Maynard
* Secretary of State Police (commanding officer of the [Maryland State Police](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Maryland_State_Police)), currently Col. Marcus L. Brown
* Secretary of Transportation, currently Beverley K. Swaim-Staley
* Secretary of Veterans Affairs, currently Edward J. Chow, Jr.
* Secretary of Higher Education (head of the Maryland Higher Education Commission), currently James E. Lyons, Ph.D.
* Adjutant General (head of the Maryland Military Department), currently Maj. Gen. [James A. Adkins](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_A._Adkins)

Other members of the Governor's Staff may be invited to Cabinet meetings as "attendees".[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-msa.md.gov-7)

The Governor also oversees several sub-cabinets that coordinate the activities of a certain function of state government that involves several state departments or agencies. Currently, these are the [Base Realignment and Closure](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Base_Realignment_and_Closure) Subcabinet, BayStat Subcabinet, Chesapeake Bay cabinet, Children's Cabinet, Governor's Subcabinet for International Affairs, Smart Growth Subcabinet, and Workforce Creation Subcabinet.[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-8)

[[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Governor_of_Maryland&action=edit&section=6)]**Other powers and responsibilities**

The Governor is the [commander-in-chief](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Commander-in-chief) of the military forces of the State: the [Maryland National Guard and Air National Guard](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_National_Guard) and the [Maryland Defense Force](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Maryland_Defense_Force), except when these forces have been called into Federal service, which the Federal government has the authority to do. In times of public emergency, the Governor may exercise emergency powers, including the mobilization of these military forces. In the area of criminal justice, the Governor may grant [pardons](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pardon) to criminals, commute the sentences of prisoners, or remit fines and forfeitures imposed on people who have been convicted, jailed, or fined for violations of state laws.

In both these areas, and a variety of others, the Governor sits on state and interstate boards and commissions with varying powers. The Governor is also obligated to report on the condition of the state at any time during the year, though this traditionally happens in a State of the State Address each January.[[3]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-origins-2)

[[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Governor_of_Maryland&action=edit&section=7)]**The Governor's Staff**

In addition to the various departments and agencies under gubernatorial control, the Governor has an executive staff that assist in coordinating the executive duties. This staff is led by a [Chief of Staff](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chief_of_staff_(politics)), and includes five offices: Intergovernmental Relations, Legal Counsel, Legislative and Policy, Press, and the Governor's Office in [Washington, DC](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Washington,_DC). The Chief of Staff has a number of deputies to assist in running these departments. The Governor's staff is appointed and therefore largely exempt from state civil service laws.[[3]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-origins-2)

During the [Colonial period](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Province_of_Maryland), Maryland's Proprietors, the [Lords of Baltimore](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Baron_Baltimore), who generally remained in England, chose who would serve as the Governor of Maryland on their behalf. Between 1692, when the Baltimores lost control, and 1715, Maryland was a direct Royal Colony, and the Governor was appointed by the British [Monarch](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_English_monarchs). The Lords of Baltimore regained their Royal Charter in 1715, and then they resumed choosing the Governors until the beginning of the [American Revolution](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/American_Revolution).[[3]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-origins-2) The first Governor chosen to break this chain of Colonial Governors was [Thomas Johnson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Johnson_(jurist)) (1732–1819), who took office on March 21, 1777.

Under the [Maryland Constitution of 1776](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Maryland_Constitution_of_1776), the Governor was chosen for one-year terms by both houses of the General Assembly. An 1838 constitutional amendment allowed voters to elect the Governor to three-year terms from one of three rotating gubernatorial districts: eastern, southern, and western. At each election, only voters from a single gubernatorial election district selected the Governor. The Maryland Constitution of 1851 lengthened the Governor's term of office from three to four years, which brought elections for Governor in line with elections for Federal offices that occur only in even years. Finally, the [Constitution of 1864](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Maryland_Constitution_of_1864) eliminated the rotating gubernatorial election districts and, since the election of 1868, the Governor has been elected by all the voters of the state.[[3]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-origins-2)

From 1777 to 1870, the Governor resided in [Jennings House](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Jennings_House,_Maryland_Governors'_Residence) in [Annapolis](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Annapolis). Since 1870, the Governor has resided in the [Government House](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Government_House_(Maryland)), a [Georgian](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Georgian_architecture) mansion adjacent to the [Maryland State House](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Maryland_State_House). In addition to being the residence for the Governor and his family, Government House has a number of public rooms that are used by the Governor on official occasions.[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-9)

[Spiro T. Agnew](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spiro_T._Agnew), who was the Governor of Maryland from 1967–1969, later served as the [Vice-President of the United States](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vice-President_of_the_United_States) for a time under [President](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/President_of_the_United_States) [Richard M. Nixon](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Richard_M._Nixon), and Agnew is, thus far, the highest-ranking Marylander in the history of the [United States](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States).[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-List-10)Following his [resignation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Resignation) due to charges of corruption, Agnew's official gubernatorial portrait was removed [*Damnatio memoriae*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Damnatio_memoriae) from the[Maryland State House](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Maryland_State_House) Governor's Reception Room from 1979 until 1995. Then-Governor [Parris Glendening](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Parris_Glendening) stated that in re-including Agnew's portrait that it was not up to anyone to alter history, whether for good or bad, citing [*Nineteen Eighty-Four*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Nineteen_Eighty-Four). [[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-11)

In 1971, the office of [Lieutenant Governor of Maryland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lieutenant_Governor_of_Maryland), which had existed for only a few years in the 1860s, was re-instituted by an amendment to the Maryland Constitution. The Lieutenant Governor is a weak office compared to other counterparts (in other states including Texas, the Lieutenant Governor is the President of the State's Senate, while in California the Lieutenant Governor assumes all of the Governor's powers when the sitting Governor is out of the state), as it only possesses the powers and duties that the Governor assigns to him or her. The Lieutenant Governor is elected on the same ballot with the Governor, and to the same term-of-office as the Governor. The Lieutenant Governor succeeds to the Governorship only if there is a vacancy in that office.[[13]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-12) Despite the Governor and Lieutenant Governor being elected on the same party ticket, very often there have been public rifts between the two; for instance Gov. Marvin Mandel and Lt. Gov. Blair Lee IV; Gov. Harry R. Hughes and Lt. Gov. Samuel W. Bogley III; Gov. Schaefer and Lt. Gov. Melvin A. Steinberg., and Gov. Parris Glendening and Lt. Gov. Kathleen Kennedy Townsend. [[14]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-13) No Lieutenant Governor of Maryland has yet been elected as the Governor in future elections, or permanently succeeded to the Governor's office due to a vacancy (which would be created by the resignation, death, or removal of the sitting Governor), although [Blair Lee III](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Blair_Lee_III) served as acting Governor from June 4, 1977 until January 15, 1979 while Governor [Marvin Mandel](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Marvin_Mandel) was serving a sentence for mail fraud and racketeering (consequently, in a modern example of [*Damnatio memoriae*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Damnatio_memoriae), Mandel's official gubernatorial portrait was not hung in the [Maryland State House](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Maryland_State_House) Governor's Reception Room until 1993).[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-List-10)

As of 2010, Maryland has yet to have been served by a female Governor.[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-List-10) However, women were the runners-up in four gubernatorial elections (in 1974, 1994, 1998, and 2002).[[15]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-14)In addition, one woman has served as the Lieutenant Governor, [Kathleen Kennedy Townsend](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kathleen_Kennedy_Townsend), under Gov. [Parris Glendening](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Parris_Glendening) from 1995 to 2003.[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-List-10) Another woman, [Kristen Cox](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kristen_Cox), who was the Secretary of Disabilities, unsuccessfully ran for Lieutenant Governor as the running mate of the incumbent Governor Robert Ehrlich, when the Lieutenant Governor at that time, [Michael Steele](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Michael_Steele), left office to run for the [U.S. Senate](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/U.S._Senate). Cox was a unique person to run for that office, not only because she is a woman, but also because she is [legally](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Legally_blind)

The connection between Calvert's resignation and his conversion to Catholicism was a complex one. George Cottington, a former employee of Calvert, suggested in 1628 that Calvert's conversion had been in progress a long time before it was made public.[[38]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-37) [George Abbot, Archbishop of Canterbury](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Abbot_(Archbishop_of_Canterbury)), reported that political opposition to Calvert, combined with his loss of office, had "made him discontented and, as the saying is, *Desperatio facit monachum*, so hee apparently did turne papist, which hee now professeth, this being the third time that he hath bene to blame that way [sic]".[[39]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-38) [Godfrey Goodman](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Godfrey_Goodman), Bishop of Gloucester, later claimed Calvert had been a secret Catholic all along ("infinitely addicted to the Catholic faith"), which explained his support for lenient policies towards Catholics and for the Spanish match.[[40]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-39)

But, no one had questioned Calvert's conformity at the time, and if he had indeed been secretly Catholic, he had hidden it well. It seems more likely Calvert converted in late 1624. At the time, Simon Stock, a [Discalced Carmelite](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Discalced_Carmelites) priest reported to the [Congregation*Propaganda Fide*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Congregation_for_the_Evangelization_of_Peoples)[[41]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-40) in Rome on November 15 that he had converted two Privy Councillors to Catholicism, one of whom historians are certain was Calvert.[[42]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-41) Calvert, who had probably met Stock at the Spanish embassy in London, later worked with the priest on a plan for a Catholic mission in his Newfoundland colony.[[43]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-42)

When King James died in March 1625, his successor Charles I maintained Calvert's barony but not his place on the Privy Council.[[44]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-43)Calvert turned his attention to his Irish estates and his overseas investments. He was not entirely forgotten at court.[[45]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-44) After Buckingham's dabblings in wars against Spain and France had ended in failure, he recalled Baltimore to court, and for a while may have considered employing him in the peace negotiations with Spain.[[46]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-45) Though nothing came of Baltimore's recall, he renewed his rights over the silk-import duties, which had lapsed with the death of James I,[[47]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-46) and secured Charles' blessing for his venture in Newfoundland.

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore&action=edit&section=6)]Avalon colony

Calvert had long maintained an interest in the exploration and settlement of the New World, beginning with his investment of twenty-five pounds in the second [Virginia Company](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Virginia_Company) in 1609, and a few months later a more substantial sum in the [East India Company](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/British_East_India_Company), which he increased in 1614.[[48]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-47) In 1620, Calvert purchased a tract of land in [Newfoundland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Newfoundland_(island)) from Sir[William Vaughan](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/William_Vaughan_(writer)), who had failed to establish a colony on the island. He named it [Avalon](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Avalon), after the legendary spot where Christianity was introduced to Britain.[[49]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-48) The plantation lay on what is now called the [Avalon Peninsula](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Avalon_Peninsula)[[50]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-49) and included the fishing station at [Ferryland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ferryland).[[51]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-50) Calvert almost certainly had a fishery project in mind at this stage.[[52]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-51)

Calvert dispatched Captain [Edward Wynne](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Edward_Wynne) and a group of [Welsh](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wales) colonists to Ferryland, where they landed in August 1621 and set about constructing a settlement.[[53]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-52) Wynne sent positive reports concerning the potential for local fisheries and for the production of salt, [hemp](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hemp), [flax](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Flax), [tar](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tar), iron, timber and [hops](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hops).[[54]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-53) Wynne also praised the climate, declaring, "It is better and not so cold as England" and predicted that the colony would become self-sufficient after one year.[[55]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-Klxxix-54) Others corroborated Wynne's reports: for example, Captain Daniel Powell, who delivered a further party of settlers to Ferryland, wrote: "The land on which our Governor planted is so good and commodious, that for the quantity, I think there is no better in many parts of England"; but he added ominously that Ferryland was "the coldest harbour in the land".[[56]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-55) Wynne and his men began work on various building projects, including a substantial house and the shoring up of the harbour. To protect them against marauding French ships, a recent hazard in the area, Calvert employed the pirate [John Nutt](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Nutt).[[57]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-56)

The settlement appeared to be progressing so well that in January 1623 Calvert obtained a concession from King James for the whole of Newfoundland, though the grant was soon reduced to cover only the Avalon peninsula, owing to competing claims.[[58]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-57) The final charter constituted the province as a [palatinate](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/County_palatine), officially titled the "Province of Avalon", under Calvert's personal rule.[[59]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-58)

After resigning the secretariat in 1625, the new Baron Baltimore made clear his intention to visit the colony: "I intend shortly," he wrote in March, "God willing, a journey for Newfoundland to visit a plantation which I began there some few years since."[[60]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-59) His plans were disrupted by the death of King James, and by the crackdown on Catholics with which Charles I began his reign in order to appease his opponents. The new king required all privy councillors to take the oaths of supremacy and allegiance; and since Baltimore, as a Catholic, had to refuse, he was obliged to step down from that cherished office.[[61]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-60) Given the new religious and political climate, and perhaps also to escape a serious outbreak of [plague](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Plague_(disease)) in England, Baltimore moved to Ireland. His expedition to Newfoundland set sail without him in late May 1625 under Sir [Arthur Aston](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Arthur_Aston), who became the new governor of Avalon.[[62]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-61)

A reference by David Rothe, bishop of Ossary, in Ireland, to a "Joane [also recorded as Jane] Baltimore now wife" of Calvert, reveals that Baltimore had recently remarried.[[63]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-62)

From the time of his conversion in 1625 onwards, Baltimore took care to cater for the religious needs of his colonists, both Catholic and Protestant. He had asked Simon Stock to provide priests for the 1625 expedition,[[64]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-63) but Stock's recruits arrived in England after Aston had sailed. Stock's own ambitions for the colony appear to have exceeded Baltimore's: in letters to [De Propaganda Fide](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Congregation_for_the_Evangelization_of_Peoples) in Rome, Stock claimed the Newfoundland settlement could act as a springboard for the conversion of natives not only in the New World but also in China, the latter via a passage he believed existed from the east coast to the Pacific Ocean.[[65]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-64)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore&action=edit&section=7)]Baltimore in Avalon

Baltimore was determined to visit his colony in person. In May 1626, he wrote to Wentworth:

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| “ | Newfoundland...imports me more than in Curiosity only to see; for I must either go and settle it in a better Order than it is, or else give it over, and lose all the Charges I have been at hitherto for other Men to build their Fortunes upon. And I had rather be esteemed a Fool for some by the Hazard of one Month’s journey, than to prove myself one certainly for six Years by past, if the Business be now lost for some want of a little Pains and Care.[[66]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-65) | ” |

Aston's return to England in late 1626,[[67]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-66) along with all the Catholic settlers, failed to deter Baltimore, who finally sailed for Newfoundland in 1627, arriving on July 23 and staying only two months before returning to England.[[68]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-67) He had taken both Protestant and Catholic settlers with him, as well as two [secular priests](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Secular_Clergy), Thomas Longville and Anthony Pole (also known as Smith), the latter remaining behind in the colony when Baltimore departed for England. The land Baltimore had seen was by no means the paradise described by some early settlers, being only marginally productive;[[69]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-68) as the summer climate was deceptively mild, his brief visit gave Baltimore no reason to alter his plans for the colony.

In 1628, he sailed again for Newfoundland, this time with his second wife Jane, most of his children,[[70]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-69) and 40 more settlers, to officially take over as [Proprietary Governor](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Proprietary_Governor) of Avalon.[[71]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-70) He and his family moved into the house at Ferryland built by Wynne, a sizeable structure for the time, by colonial standards, and the only one in the settlement large enough to accommodate religious services for the community.[[72]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-71)

Matters connected to religion were to bedevil Baltimore's stay in "this remote part of the worlde where I have planted my selfe [sic]". He sailed at a time when English military preparations were underway to relieve the [Huguenots](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Huguenots) at La Rochelle. He was dismayed to find that the war with France had spread to Newfoundland, and that he had to spend most of his time fighting off French attacks on English fishing fleets with his own ships the *Dove* and the *Ark*.[[73]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-72) As he wrote to Buckingham, "I came to builde, and sett, and sowe, but I am falne to fighting with Frenchmen [sic]". His settlers were so successful against the French that they captured several ships, which they escorted back to England to help with the war effort. Baltimore was granted the loan of one of the ships to aid in his defence of the colony, as well as a share of the prize money.[[74]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-73)

Adopting a policy of free religious worship in the colony, Baltimore allowed the Catholics to worship in one part of his house and the Protestants in another. This novel arrangement proved too much for the resident Anglican priest, [Erasmus Stourton](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Erasmus_Stourton)—"that knave Stourton", as Baltimore referred to him—who, after altercations with Baltimore, was placed on a ship for England, where he lost no time in reporting Baltimore's practices to the authorities, complaining that the Catholic priests Smith and Hackett said mass every Sunday and "doe use all other ceremonies of the church of Rome in as ample a manner as tis used in Spayne [sic]".[[75]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-74) and that Baltimore had the son of a Protestant forcibly baptised as a Catholic.[[76]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-Cliii-75) Although Stourton's complaints were investigated by the Privy Council, due to Baltimore's support in high places, the case was dismissed.[[77]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-76)

Baltimore had become disenchanted with conditions in "this wofull country", and he wrote to his old acquaintances in England lamenting his troubles.[[78]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-77) The final blow to his hopes was dealt by the Newfoundland winter of 1628–9, which did not release its grip until May. Like others before them, the residents of Avalon suffered terribly from the cold and from malnutrition.[[79]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-78) Nine or ten of Baltimore's company died that winter, and with half the settlers ill at one time, his house had to be turned into a hospital. The sea froze over, and nothing would grow before May. "Tis not terra Christianorum", Baltimore wrote to Wentworth.[[80]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-kcii-79) He confessed to the king: "I have found...by too deare bought experience [that which other men] always concealed from me...that there is a sad face of wynter upon all this land".[[80]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-kcii-79)

In late September or October 1629, Baltimore arrived in [Jamestown](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Jamestown,_Virginia), where the Virginians, who suspected him of designs on some of their territory and vehemently opposed Catholicism, gave him a cool welcome. They gave him the oaths of supremacy and allegiance, which he refused to take, so they ordered him to leave.[[85]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-84) After no more than a few weeks in the colony, Baltimore left for England to pursue the new charter, leaving his wife and servants behind.[[86]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-85) In early 1630, he procured a ship to fetch them, but it foundered off the Irish coast, and his wife was drowned.[[87]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-86)Baltimore described himself the following year as "a long time myself a [Man of Sorrows](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Man_of_Sorrows)".[[88]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-87)

Baltimore spent the last two years of his life constantly lobbying for his new charter, though the obstacles proved difficult. The Virginians, led by[William Claiborne](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/William_Claiborne), who sailed to England to make the case, campaigned aggressively against separate colonising of the Chesapeake, claiming they possessed the rights to that area.[[89]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-kxvii-88) Baltimore was short of capital, having exhausted his fortune, and was sometimes forced to depend on the assistance of his friends.[[89]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-kxvii-88) To make matters worse, in the summer of 1630, his household was infected by the plague, which he survived. He wrote to Wentworth: "Blessed be God for it who hath preserved me now from shipwreck, hunger,[scurvy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Scurvy) and pestilence..."[[90]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-89)

His health declining, Baltimore's persistence over the charter finally paid off in 1632. The king first granted him a location south of Jamestown, but Baltimore asked the king to reconsider in response to opposition from other investors interested in settling the new land of [Carolina](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Province_of_Carolina) into a sugar plantation.[[91]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-90) Baltimore eventually compromised by accepting redrawn boundaries to the north of the [Potomac River](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Potomac_River), on either side of the [Chesapeake Bay](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chesapeake_Bay).[[92]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-91) The charter was about to pass when the fifty-two-year-old Baltimore died in his lodgings at Lincoln's Inn Fields, on 15 April 1632.[[93]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-92) Five weeks later, on 20 June 1632, the charter for [Maryland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Maryland) passed the seals.[[94]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-93)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore&action=edit&section=9)]Legacy

In his will, written the day before he died, Baltimore beseeched his friends Wentworth and Cottington to act as guardians and supervisors to his first son Cecil, who inherited the title of Lord Baltimore and the imminent grant of Maryland.[[95]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-94) Baltimore's two colonies in the New World continued under the proprietorship of his family.[[96]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-95) Avalon, which remained a prime spot for the salting and export of fish, was expropriated by Sir [David Kirke](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/David_Kirke), with a new royal charter which Cecil Calvert vigorously challenged, and it was finally absorbed into Newfoundland in 1754.[[97]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-96) Although Baltimore's failed Avalon venture marked the end of an early era of attempts at proprietary colonisation, it laid the foundation upon which permanent settlements developed in that region of Newfoundland.[[98]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-97)

Maryland became a prime tobacco exporting colony in the mid-Atlantic and, for a time, a refuge for Catholic settlers, as George Calvert had hoped.[[99]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-Hennesey3645-98) Under the rule of the Lords Baltimore, thousands of British Catholics emigrated to Maryland, establishing some of the oldest Catholic communities in what later became the United States.[[99]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-Hennesey3645-98) Although Catholic rule in Maryland was eventually nullified by the re-assertion of royal control over the colony, only a few decades later Maryland joined twelve other British colonies along the Atlantic coast in declaring their independence from British rule and the right to freedom of religion for all citizens in the new United States.[[100]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-99)

The city of [Baltimore, Maryland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Baltimore,_Maryland) was named for his son, [Cecilius Calvert, 2nd Baron Baltimore](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cecilius_Calvert,_2nd_Baron_Baltimore). Numerous other place names honored the Barons Baltimore.

The metal band [Sir Lord Baltimore](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sir_Lord_Baltimore) was also named in honor of the Barons Baltimore.

**Francis Cottington, 1st Baron Cottington** (ca. 1579 – 1652) was the [English](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England) lord treasurer and ambassador and leader of the pro-Spanish, pro-Roman Catholic faction in the court of [Charles I](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles_I_of_England). He was the fourth son of Philip Cottington of [Godmonston](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Godmonston&action=edit&redlink=1) in [Somersetshire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Somerset).[[1]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Francis_Cottington" \l "cite_note-0)

According to [Hoare](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hoare), his mother was Jane, daughter of Thomas Biflete, but according to [Clarendon](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Edward_Hyde,_1st_Earl_of_Clarendon), a Stafford nearly allied to Sir Edward Stafford, through whom he was recommended to [Sir Charles Cornwallis](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sir_Charles_Cornwallis), ambassador to the court of [Philip III of Spain](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Philip_III_of_Spain), becoming a member of his suite and acting as English agent on the latter's recall, from 1609 to 1611.

In 1612 he was appointed English consul at [Seville](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Seville). Returning to England, he was made a clerk of the council in September 1613. His Spanish experience rendered him useful to [James I of England](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_I_of_England), and his bias in favor of Spain was always marked. He seems to have promoted the Spanish policy from the first, and pressed on [Diego Sarmiento de Acuña, conde de Gondomar](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Diego_Sarmiento_de_Acuña,_conde_de_Gondomar), the Spanish ambassador, the proposal for the Spanish in opposition to the [French](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Henrietta_Maria_of_France) marriage for Prince Charles (later King Charles I).

He was a Roman Catholic at least at heart, becoming a member of that communion in 1623, returning to [Protestantism](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Protestantism), and again declaring himself a Roman Catholic in 1636, and supporting the cause of the Roman Catholics in England. In 1616 he went as ambassador to Spain, transferring in 1618 the proposal of mediation by James I in the dispute with [Frederick V, Elector Palatine](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Frederick_V,_Elector_Palatine).

After his return he was appointed secretary to Prince Charles in October 1622, and was [knighted](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Knight) and made a [baronet](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Baronet) in 1623.[[2]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Francis_Cottington" \l "cite_note-Cockayne-1) He strongly disapproved of the prince's expedition to Spain, as an adventure likely to upset the whole policy of marriage and alliance, but was overruled and chosen to accompany him. His opposition greatly incensed [George Villiers, 1st Duke of Buckingham](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Villiers,_1st_Duke_of_Buckingham), and still more his perseverance in the Spanish policy after the failure of the expedition, and on Charles I's accession Cottington was through his means dismissed from all his employments and forbidden to appear at court. The duke's assassination, however, enabled him to return.

On the 12 November 1628 he was made a [privy councillor](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Privy_Council_of_the_United_Kingdom), and in March 1629 appointed [chancellor of the exchequer](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chancellor_of_the_exchequer). In the autumn he was again sent ambassador to Spain; he signed the treaty of peace of 5 November 1630, and subsequently a secret agreement arranging for the partition of [Holland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Netherlands) between Spain and England in return for the restoration of the Palatinate. On 10 July 1631 he was created **Baron Cottington of Hanworth** in [Middlesex](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Middlesex).

In March 1635 he was appointed master of the court of wards, and his exactions in this office were a principal cause of the unpopularity of the government. He was also appointed a commissioner for the treasury, together with [William Laud](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/William_Laud). Between Cottington and the latter there sprang up a fierce rivalry. In these personal encounters Cottington had nearly always the advantage, for he practised great reserve and possessed great powers of self-command, an extraordinary talent for dissembling and a fund of humour. Laud completely lacked these qualities, and though really possessing much greater influence with Charles, he was often embarrassed and sometimes exposed to ridicule by his opponent.

The aim of Cottington's ambition was the place of lord treasurer, but Laud finally triumphed and secured it for his own nominee, [Bishop Juxon](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/William_Juxon), when Cottington became no more a leader but meddled with his particular duties only. He continued, however, to take a large share in public business and served on the committees for foreign, [Irish](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ireland) and [Scottish](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Scotland)affairs. In the last, appointed in July 1638, he supported the war, and in May 1640, after the dismissal of the [Short Parliament](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Short_Parliament), he declared it his opinion that at such a crisis the king might levy money without the [Parliament](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Parliament_of_England). His attempts to get funds from the city were unsuccessful, and he had recourse instead to a speculation in [pepper](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Black_pepper).

He had been appointed constable of the [Tower](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tower_of_London), and he now prepared the fortress for a [siege](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Siege). In the trial of [Thomas Wentworth, 1st Earl of Strafford](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Wentworth,_1st_Earl_of_Strafford) in 1641, Cottington denied on oath that he had heard him use the incriminating words about reducing this kingdom. When the parliamentary opposition became too strong to be any longer defied, Cottington, as one of those who had chiefly incurred their hostility, hastened to retire from the administration, giving up the court of wards in May 1641 and the chancellorship of the exchequer in January 1642. He rejoined the king in 1643, took part in the proceedings of the [Oxford Parliament](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Oxford_Parliament_(1644)), and was made [lord treasurer](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lord_High_Treasurer) on the 3rd of October 1643. He signed the surrender of Oxford in July 1646, and being excepted from the indemnity retired abroad.

He joined Prince Charles at [the Hague](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Hague) in 1648, and became one of his counsellors. In 1649, together with [Nicholas Hyde](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Nicholas_Hyde), Cottington went on a mission to Spain to obtain help for the royal cause, having an interview with [Cardinal Mazarin](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cardinal_Mazarin) at [Paris](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Paris) on the way. They met, however, with an extremely ill reception, and Cottington found he had completely lost his popularity at the Spanish court, one cause being his shortcomings and waverings in the matter of religion. He now announced his intention of remaining in Spain and of keeping faithful to Roman Catholicism, and took up his residence at [Valladolid](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Valladolid), where he was maintained by the [Jesuits](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Jesuit). He died there on 19 June 1652, his body being subsequently buried in [Westminster Abbey](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Westminster_Abbey). He had amassed a large fortune and built two magnificent houses at [Hanworth](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hanworth) near [Heathrow](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Heathrow) and [Fonthill](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fonthill) near [Tisbury](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tisbury,_Wiltshire), [Salisbury](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Salisbury). Cottington was evidently a man of considerable ability, but the foreign policy pursued by him was opposed to the national interests and futile in itself. According to Clarendon's verdict he left behind him a greater esteem of his parts than love of his person. He married in 1623 Anne, daughter of Sir William Meredith and widow of Sir Robert Brett. All his children predeceased him, and his title became extinct at his death.

Gondomar's friends at court, the *bien intencionados* of his dispatches centered upon the [Howards](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Howard), [Henry Howard, 1st Earl of Northampton](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Henry_Howard,_1st_Earl_of_Northampton) (died 1614), [Thomas Howard, 1st Earl of Suffolk](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Howard,_1st_Earl_of_Suffolk), Lord High Treasurer, whose daughter was married to James's favourite,[Charles Howard, 1st Earl of Nottingham](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles_Howard,_1st_Earl_of_Nottingham), Lord High Admiral, [Thomas Howard, 21st Earl of Arundel](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Howard,_21st_Earl_of_Arundel), and their protégés. The "Howard faction" preferred a marriage alliance with Spain over one with France, the traditional ally of Scotland, and they preferred to keep out of open warfare with Spain promoted by the more zealous Puritans. Most of the Howards were Catholics, encouraging them towards a spirit of toleration at home. Like many at the English court, they were receiving pensions from Spain,[[4]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Diego_Sarmiento_de_Acuña,_conde_de_Gondomar" \l "cite_note-3) without much effect on their opinions and actions, and Gondomar seldom had the money to follow through. Among the pensioners, in an embarrassing list that surfaced in 1613, at Gondomar's first arrival was the King of England himself.

Gondomar conceived his embassy as a sortie in enemy country, and took for his maxim *aventurar la vida y osar morir*— "risk your life and dare to die"; his opening challenge was his refusal to strike the colours of Spain at his warships' entry to [Portsmouth](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Portsmouth) harbour, in which an appeal to the King averted an exchange of cannonfire that would have sunk the ambassador in his vessel. His handling of the unconditional release of the Catholic agitator [Luisa Carvajal y Mendoza](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Luisa_Carvajal_y_Mendoza) further established him in James's eyes as a man of unexpected strengths. In 1617 Sarmiento was created Count of Gondomar. The key to Gondomar's success was his relationship with James, whom he brought to admire and like his witty and learned companionship, his candour, within the obvious limits, and his personal integrity. They called themselves the "two Diegos" and drank from the same bottle (Carter 1964:205).

A key program for Gondomar at the outset was to block the marriage negotiations between Prince Charles and a sister of Louis XIII, a French counterweight to marital alliances being concluded with the Spanish Habsburgs.

For more details on this topic, see [*Spanish Match*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match).

In the matter of [Sir Walter Raleigh](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sir_Walter_Raleigh), it was Gondomar's pressure that lost Sir Walter's head, 29 October 1618. In a moment of weakness James had shown Gondomar the contract under which Raleigh had sailed, the restriction upon attacking Spanish settlements, in order to mollify his objections to an enterprise on which James had set his heart. Raleigh's attack on San Thomé (near modern [Ciudad Guayana](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ciudad_Guayana)) was a public violation. His execution kept the peace with Spain. The English could not forgive Gondomar, who in 1618 obtained leave to come home for his health, but was ordered to return by way of Flanders and France with a diplomatic mission.

In 1619 he returned to London, and remained till 1622. The [Guyana](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Guyana) expedition of [Roger North](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Roger_North) in 1620 seemed to be a repeat of Raleigh's violation of Spanish settlements in the Caribbean, and at Gondomar's insistence North was imprisoned.

The tensest late confrontation was over [Count Mansfeld](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ernst_von_Mansfeld)'s projected movement of troops raised in England to rescue James's son-in-law [Frederick V, Elector Palatine](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Frederick_V,_Elector_Palatine), the "Winter King" of Bohemia. Habsburg Madrid and Brussels were concerned that the French aimed to join Mansfeld's forces and retrieve [Artois](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Artois) for France, and the project was let slide.

When Gondomar was allowed to retire, on his return to Spain he was named a member of the royal council and governor of one of the king's palaces, and was appointed to a complimentary mission to [Vienna](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vienna). Gondomar was in [Madrid](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Madrid) when the prince of Wales— afterwards [Charles I](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles_I_of_England)— made his journey there in search of a wife. He died at the house of the [Constable of Castile](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Constable_of_Castile), near [Haro](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Haro,_La_Rioja) in the [Rioja](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/La_Rioja_(Spain)).

Gondomar was twice married, first to his niece Beatrix Sarmiento, by whom he had no children, and then to his cousin Constanza de Acuña, by whom he had four sons and three daughters. The hatred he aroused in England, which was shown by widespread mockery of an intestinal complaint from which he suffered for years, was a tribute to the zeal with which he served his own master.

Gondomar collected, both before he came to London and during his residence there, a fine library of printed books and manuscripts. Orders for the arrangement, binding and storing of his books in his house at [Valladolid](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Valladolid) appear frequently in his voluminous correspondence. In 1785 the library was ceded by his descendant and representative the marquis of Malpica to [Charles III of Spain](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles_III_of_Spain), and it is now in the Royal Library at Madrid.

A portrait of Gondomar, attributed to [Diego Velázquez](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Diego_Velázquez), was formerly at [Stowe, Buckinghamshire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stowe,_Buckinghamshire). It was [mezzotinted](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mezzotint) by [Robert Cooper](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Robert_Cooper).

The **Spanish Match** was a proposed marriage between [Prince Charles](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles_I_of_England), the son of [King James I](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_I_of_England) of [England](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England), and Infanta [Maria Anna of Spain](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Maria_Anna_of_Spain), the daughter of [Philip III of Spain](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Philip_III_of_Spain). The policy, unpopular with England's Protestant [House of Commons](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/British_House_of_Commons), where the recent [Anglo-Spanish War](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anglo-Spanish_War_(1585)) had not been forgotten, was initiated during the embassy to England of [Gondomar](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Diego_Sarmiento_de_Acuña,_conde_de_Gondomar), who arrived in London in 1614 with the offer that Spain would not interfere with James's troubled rule in Ireland if James would restrain the English "[privateers](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Privateer)" in Spanish American waters. Further, he proposed a marriage alliance, offering a dowry of £500,000 (later increased to £600,000), which seemed especially attractive to James after the failure of the [Parliament of 1614](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Addled_Parliament) to provide him with the financial subsidies he requested.

The climax of the ensuing decade of high-level negotiation to secure a marriage between the leading Protestant and Catholic royal families of Europe occurred in 1623 in Madrid, with the embassy of the Prince Charles and James's [favourite](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Favourite), [George Villiers, 1st Duke of Buckingham](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Villiers,_1st_Duke_of_Buckingham). The wedding never took place despite the signing of a marriage contract by King James; criticism instead led to the dissolution of Parliament.

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Spanish_Match&action=edit&section=1)]Background

The prospect of a Spanish dowry from a marriage between [Charles, Prince of Wales](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles_I_of_England), and Infanta [Maria Anna of Spain](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Maria_Anna_of_Spain) was a potential source of income for James I, who sought ways to rule without depending on the Commons for subsidies.[[1]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-0) The policy of the "Spanish Match", as it was called, was supported by the Howards and other Catholic-leaning ministers and diplomats—together known as the Spanish Party—but deeply distrusted in Protestant England, a sentiment voiced vociferously in the Commons when James called his first parliament for seven years in 1621 to raise funds for a military expedition in support of [Frederick V, Elector Palatine](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Frederick_V,_Elector_Palatine).

By the 1620s, events on the continent had stirred up anti-Catholic feeling to a new pitch. A conflict had broken out between the Catholic[Holy Roman Empire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Holy_Roman_Empire) and the Protestant Bohemians, who had deposed the emperor as their king and elected James's son-in-law, Frederick V, Elector Palatine, in his place, triggering the [Thirty Years' War](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thirty_Years'_War).[[2]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-1) James reluctantly summoned parliament as the only means to raise the funds necessary to assist his daughter [Elizabeth](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Elizabeth_of_Bohemia) and Frederick, who had been ousted from Prague by [Emperor Ferdinand II](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ferdinand_II,_Holy_Roman_Emperor) in 1620. The Commons on the one hand granted subsidies inadequate to finance serious military operations in aid of Frederick,[[3]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-2) and on the other called for a war directly against Spain.[[4]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-3)

In November 1621, led by [Sir Edward Coke](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Edward_Coke), the Commons framed a petition asking not only for a war with Spain but for Prince Charles to marry a Protestant, and for enforcement of the anti-Catholic laws. When James heard of the petition, he is said to have cried, "God give me patience".[[5]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-4) James flatly told them not to interfere in matters of [royal prerogative](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Royal_prerogative) or they would risk punishment;[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-5) to which provocation they reacted by issuing a statement protesting their rights, including freedom of speech. James wrote: "We cannot with patience endure our subjects to use such anti-monarchical words to us concerning their liberties, except they had subjoined that they were granted unto them by the grace and favour of our predecessors."[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-6) Urged on by Buckingham and the Spanish ambassador [Gondomar](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Diego_Sarmiento_de_Acuña,_conde_de_Gondomar), James ripped the protest out of the record book and dissolved Parliament.[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-7)

Denied the military option, James ignored public opinion and returned to the Spanish match as his only hope of restoring the possessions of Elizabeth and Frederick. When negotiations began to drag, Prince Charles, now 22, and Buckingham decided to seize the initiative and travel to Spain incognito, to win the Infanta directly.[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-8) Travelling under the names Thomas and John Smith, they arrived in Madrid on 17 February 1623 to the astonishment of [King Philip IV](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Philip_IV_of_Spain). The impetuous delegation proved a desperate mistake. Charles and Buckingham had no idea that Maria Anna was strongly averse to marrying a non-Catholic and that the Spanish, who had been protracting the marriage negotiations to keep British troops out of the war, would never agree to such a match unless James and Charles pledged to repeal the anti-Catholic laws.[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-9) Though a secret treaty was signed, the prince and duke returned to England in October without the Infanta, much to the delight of the British people.[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-10)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Spanish_Match&action=edit&section=3)]Return to Britain

Embittered by their treatment in Spain, Charles and Buckingham now turned James's Spanish policy upon its head and called for a French match and a war against the Habsburg empire.[[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-11) To raise the necessary finance, they prevailed upon James to call another Parliament, which met in February 1624. For once, the outpouring of anti-Catholic sentiment in the Commons was echoed in court, where control of policy had shifted from James to Charles and Buckingham,[[13]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-12) who pressured the king to declare war and engineered the impeachment and imprisonment of the [Lord Treasurer](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lord_Treasurer), [Lionel Cranfield](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lionel_Cranfield,_1st_Earl_of_Middlesex), [earl of Middlesex](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Earl_of_Middlesex), when he opposed the idea on grounds of cost.[[14]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-13)

The outcome of the Parliament of 1624 was ambiguous: James still refused to declare war, but Charles believed the Commons had committed themselves to financing a war against Spain, a stance which was to contribute to his problems with Parliament in his own reign.[[15]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-14) Charles eventually married [Henrietta Maria of France](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Henrietta_Maria_of_France).

**English Heritage** (officially the **Historic Building and Monuments Commission for England**).[[1]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-0) is an executive [non-departmental public body](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Non-departmental_public_body) of the [British Government](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Her_Majesty's_Government) sponsored by the [Department for Culture, Media and Sport](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Department_for_Culture,_Media_and_Sport) (DCMS). By caring for the [built environment](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Built_environment), English Heritage complements the work of [Natural England](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Natural_England) which aims to protect the [natural environment](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Natural_environment). It has a broad remit of managing the historic built environment of England and advises the relevant [Secretary of State](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Secretary_of_State_(United_Kingdom)) on policy and in individual cases such as registering [listed buildings](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building) and [scheduled ancient monuments](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Scheduled_ancient_monument). [Simon Thurley](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Simon_Thurley) has been chief executive since 2002.

It was set up under the terms of the [National Heritage Act 1983](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/National_Heritage_Act_1983). Its functions for maintaining ancient monuments had previously been undertaken by part of the [Department of the Environment](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Department_for_Environment,_Food_and_Rural_Affairs) which was the successor to the [Ministry of Works](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ministry_of_Works_(United_Kingdom)). The 1983 Act also dissolved the bodies that had hitherto provided independent advice — the [Ancient Monuments Board](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ancient_Monuments_Board) for England and the [Historic Buildings Council for England](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Historic_Buildings_Council_for_England) and incorporated these functions in the new body. Another advisory body, the [Royal Commission on the Historical Monuments of England](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Royal_Commission_on_the_Historical_Monuments_of_England) (RCHME) was not merged with English Heritage until 1 April 1999.[[2]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-1)

English Heritage's best known role is as the steward of over 400 significant historical and archaeological sites, from [Stonehenge](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stonehenge) to the world's earliest [iron bridge](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Iron_Bridge). It has direct ownership over some historic sites and also liaises with private owners of sites that are managed under guardianship arrangements. It has major responsibilities in conservation, giving advice, registering and protecting the historic environment. It also maintains a public archive, the English Heritage Archive, formerly known as the [National Monuments Record](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/National_Monuments_Record_(England)) (NMR).

English Heritage (The Historic Buildings and Monuments Commission for England) is a non-departmental public body which manages the historic built environment of England. Today it is an executive agency of the [Department for Culture, Media and Sport](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Department_for_Culture,_Media_and_Sport) (DCMS). The latter was formed in 1997.[[3]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-2)

Over the centuries, what is now called 'heritage' has been the responsibility of a series of State Departments. There was the 'Kings Works' after the [Norman Conquest](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Norman_Conquest); the 'Office of Works' (1378-1832); The Office of Woods, Forests, Land Revenues and Works (1832–1851); and the [Ministry of Works](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ministry_of_Works_(United_Kingdom)) (1851–1962). Responsibility subsequently transferred to the[Ministry of Public Building and Works](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ministry_of_Public_Building_and_Works) (1962–1970) then to the [Department of the Environment (UK)](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Department_of_the_Environment_(UK)) (1970–1997) and now the DCMS.[[4]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-3) The state's legal responsibility for the historic environment goes back to the [Ancient Monuments Protection Act 1882](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ancient_Monuments_Protection_Act_1882).[[5]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-4) Central government subsequently developed several systems of heritage protection for different types of 'assets', introducing listing for buildings after WW2 and conservation areas in the 1960s. In 1983 Secretary of State for the Environment [Michael Heseltine](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Michael_Heseltine) gave national responsibility for the historic environment to a semi‑autonomous agency (or '[quango](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Quango)') to operate under ministerial guidelines and to government policy. The Historic Buildings and Monuments Commission (now known as English Heritage) was formed.[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-5)

Since then it has amalgamated with other bodies and archives to become the lead body for the heritage sector.

A [national register of historic parks and gardens](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/National_register_of_historic_parks_and_gardens), (e.g. [Rangers House](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rangers_House), Greenwich) was set up in 1984,[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-6) and a register for historic battlefields (e.g. the [battle of Tewkesbury](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Battle_of_Tewkesbury)) was created in March 1995.[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-7) ‘Registration’ is a material consideration in the planning process. In April 1999 English Heritage merged with the [Royal Commission on the Historical Monuments of England](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Royal_Commission_on_the_Historical_Monuments_of_England) (RCHME) and the [National Monuments Record](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/National_Monuments_Record_(England)) (NMR), bringing together resources for the identification and survey of England’s historic environment. By adoption this included responsibility for the national record of archaeological sites from the [Ordnance Survey](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ordnance_Survey); the National Library of Aerial Photographs, and two million RAF and Ordnance Survey aerial photographs. These, together with other nationally important external acquisitions, means that English Heritage is one of the largest publicly-accessible archives in the UK: 2.53 million records are available online, including more than 426,000 images. In 2010-2011 it recorded 4.3 million unique online user sessions[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-EHannualreport2010-11-8)and over 110,000 people visited NMR exhibitions held around the country in 2009/10 .[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-EHAnnualReport2009-10-9) In 2012 the section responsible for archive collections was renamed the English Heritage Archive.

As a result of the [National Heritage Act 2002](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/National_Heritage_Act_2002), English Heritage acquired administrative responsibility for historic wrecks and submerged landscapes within 12 miles of the English coast.[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-10) The administration of the [listed building](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building) system was transferred from DCMS to English Heritage in 2006. However, actual listing decisions still remain the responsibility of the Secretary of State for Culture, Media and Sport, who is required by the [Planning (Listed Buildings and Conservation Areas) Act 1990](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Planning_(Listed_Buildings_and_Conservation_Areas)_Act_1990) to approve a list of buildings of special architectural or historic interest.

Following the Public Bodies Reform[[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-11) (aka ‘bonfire of the quangos’)in 2010, English Heritage was confirmed as the government's statutory advisor on the historic environment, and the largest source of non-lottery grant funding for heritage assets.[[13]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-12) It was retained on grounds of “performing a technical function which should remain independent from Government”.

English Heritage is only one of several of government sponsored organisations with responsibility for the historic environment.[[14]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-13) This reflects the length of time that heritage has been legally protected, the number of government reorganisations, and the importance of heritage to the UK economy and society. Local government plays an important role in making conservation decisions locally and keeping local [Historic Environment Records](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Historic_Environment_Record) (HERs).

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=English_Heritage&action=edit&section=2)]Purpose and remit

English Heritage is the UK Government’s statutory adviser and a statutory consultee on all aspects of the historic environment and its heritage assets.[[15]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-14) This includes archaeology on land and under water, historic buildings sites and areas, designated landscapes and the historic elements of the wider landscape.[[16]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-Funding_of_the_Arts_and_Heritage-15) It monitors and reports on the state of England’s heritage and publishes the annual the [Heritage at Risk](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Heritage_at_Risk) survey which is one of the UK Government's [Official statistics](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Official_statistics). It is tasked to secure the preservation and enhancement of the man-made heritage of England for the benefit of future generations.[[16]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-Funding_of_the_Arts_and_Heritage-15)

Its remit involves:

* + Directly managing the national collection of sites, monuments, archive records and photographs taken into state care since the 1880s.
  + Giving grants national and local organisations for the conservation of historic buildings, monuments and landscapes. In 2010/11 it made grant offers worth £34.8 million to support heritage buildings.[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-EHannualreport2010-11-8)
  + Advising central UK government on which English heritage assets are nationally important and should be protected by designation (i.e. listing, scheduling etc.).[[17]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-16)[[18]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-17) In 2009-10 it advised on about 2,000 requests for listing, and processed 14,072 applications affecting Grade I and II\* listed buildings, 97% of which were dealt with within the agreed deadline.[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-EHAnnualReport2009-10-9) In 2010-11 the annual report states that it was consulted on 17,302 planning cases.[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-EHannualreport2010-11-8)
  + Administering and maintaining the register of England's [listed buildings](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building), [scheduled monuments](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Scheduled_monument), registered battlefields, [conservation areas](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Conservation_area) and protected parks and gardens.[[19]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-18) This is published as an online resource as '[The National Heritage List for England](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_National_Heritage_List_for_England)'.
  + Administering the [Blue Plaques](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Blue_Plaque) scheme in London since 1986.[[20]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-19)[[21]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-20)
  + Advising local authorities on managing changes to the most important parts of heritage.
  + Providing expertise through advice, training and guidance to improve the standards and skills of people working in heritage, practical conservation and access to resources. In 2009-2010 it trained around 2,500 professionals working in local authorities and the wider sector.[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-EHAnnualReport2009-10-9)
  + Consulting and collaborating with other heritage bodies, local and national planning organisations e.g. the preparation of Planning Policy statement for the Historic Environment (PPS5) [[22]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-pps5-21)
  + Commissioning and conducting archaeological research, including the publication of ‘Heritage Counts’ and ‘[Heritage at Risk](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Heritage_at_Risk)’ on behalf of the heritage sector which are the annual research surveys into the state of England's heritage.

It is not responsible for approving alterations to [listed buildings](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building). The management of listed buildings is the responsibility of local planning authorities and the [Department for Communities and Local Government](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Department_for_Communities_and_Local_Government).[[22]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-pps5-21)

A **listed building** in the [United Kingdom](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_Kingdom) is a building that has been placed on the **Statutory List of Buildings of Special Architectural or Historic Interest**. It is a widely used status, applied to around half a million buildings. (The term has also been used in the [Republic of Ireland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Republic_of_Ireland), where buildings are surveyed for the [National Inventory of Architectural Heritage](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=National_Inventory_of_Architectural_Heritage&action=edit&redlink=1) in accordance with the country's obligations under the [Granada Convention](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Convention_for_the_protection_of_the_architectural_heritage_of_Europe). However, the preferred term in Ireland is now "protected structure".[[1]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-inventory-0))

A listed building may not be demolished, extended or altered without special permission from the local planning authority (which typically consults the relevant central government agency, particularly for significant alterations to the more notable listed buildings). Exemption from secular listed building control is provided for some buildings in current use for worship but only in cases where the relevant religious organisation operates its own equivalent permissions procedure. Owners of listed buildings are, in some circumstances, compelled to repair and maintain them and can face criminal prosecution if they fail to do so or if they perform unauthorised alterations.

The listing procedure allows for buildings to be removed from the list if the listing is shown to be in error.[[2]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-1)

Although most structures appearing on the lists are buildings, other structures such as [bridges](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bridge), [monuments](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Monument), [sculptures](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sculpture), [war memorials](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/War_memorials), and even [milestones and mileposts](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Milestone) and the Beatles' Abbey Road pedestrian crossing[[3]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-2) are also listed. Ancient, military and uninhabited structures, such as [Stonehenge](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stonehenge), are sometimes instead classified as [Scheduled Ancient Monuments](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Scheduled_Ancient_Monuments)and protected by much older legislation whilst cultural landscapes such as parks and gardens are currently "listed" on a non-statutory basis. Slightly different systems operate in each area of the United Kingdom, though the basic principles of the listing remain the same.

Although a limited number of 'ancient monuments' were given protection under the [Ancient Monuments Protection Act 1882](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ancient_Monuments_Protection_Act_1882),[[4]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-3) there was reluctance to restrict the owners of occupied buildings in what they could do to their property. It was the damage to buildings caused by [German bombing](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Blitz) during [World War II](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/World_War_II) that prompted the first listing of buildings that were deemed to be of particular architectural merit.[[5]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-victorian-4) 300 members of the [Royal Institute of British Architects](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Royal_Institute_of_British_Architects) and the [Society for the Protection of Ancient Buildings](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Society_for_the_Protection_of_Ancient_Buildings) were dispatched to prepare the list under the supervision of the [Inspectorate of Ancient Monuments](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Inspectorate_of_Ancient_Monuments&action=edit&redlink=1), with funding from the Treasury.[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-independent-5) The listings were used as a means of determining whether a particular building should be rebuilt if it was damaged by bombing,[[5]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-victorian-4) with varying degrees of success.[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-independent-5)

The basis of the current more comprehensive listing process was developed from the wartime system and was enacted by a provision in the [Town and Country Planning Act 1947](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Town_and_Country_Planning_Act_1947)covering [England](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England) and [Wales](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wales), and the Town and Country Planning (Scotland) Act 1947 covering Scotland. Listing was first introduced into Northern Ireland under the Planning (Northern Ireland) Order 1972. The listing process has since developed slightly differently in each part of the UK.

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Listed_building&action=edit&section=2)]Heritage protection

In the UK, the process of protecting the built historic environment (i.e. getting a [heritage asset](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Heritage_asset) legally protected) is called ‘designation’. To complicate things, several different terms are used because the processes use separate legislation: buildings are ‘listed’; ancient monuments are ‘scheduled’, wrecks are ‘protected’, and battlefields, gardens and parks are ‘registered’. A heritage asset is a part of the historic environment that is valued because of its historic, archaeological, architectural or artistic interest.[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-6) Only some of these are judged to be important enough to have extra legal protection through designation. However, buildings that are not formally listed, but still judged as being of heritage interest are still regarded as being a [material consideration](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Material_consideration) in the planning process.[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-PPS5-7)

As a very rough guide, listed buildings generally have substantial remains that are visible above the ground whereas [ancient monuments](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ancient_monument) are (mostly) below the ground and/or unoccupied.[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-LBCA1990-8)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Listed_building&action=edit&section=3)]What can be listed

Almost anything can be listed – it does not have to be a building. Buildings and structures of special historic interest come in a wide variety of forms and types, ranging from telephone boxes and road signs, to castles. English Heritage has created twenty broad categories of structures, and published selection guides for each one to aid with assessing buildings and structures. These include historical overviews and describe the special considerations for listing each category.[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-9)[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-wilts-10) Neither Historic Scotland nor Cadw appear to have published comparable guidelines for particular categories (as of June 2011) although both organisations produce guidance for owners.

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Listed_building&action=edit&section=4)]Procedure for listing or delisting

In [England](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England), to have a building considered for listing or de-listing, the process is to submit an application form online to [English Heritage](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage). The applicant does not need to be the owner of the building in order to apply for it to be listed.[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-wilts-10) Full information including application form guidance notes are on the English Heritage website. English Heritage assesses buildings put forward for listing or de-listing and provides advice to the Secretary of State on the architectural and historic interest. The Secretary of State, who may seek additional advice from others, then decides whether or not to list or de-list the building.

In Wales, applications are made using a form obtained from the relevant local authority.[[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-11) There is no provision for consent to be granted in outline. When a local authority is disposed to grant listed building consent, it must first notify the National Assembly (i.e. [Cadw](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cadw)) of the application. If the planning authority decides to refuse consent, it may do so without any reference to Cadw.

In Scotland, applications are made using a form obtained from Historic Scotland. After consultation with the local planning authority, the owner, where possible, and an independent third party, [Historic Scotland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Historic_Scotland) will then make a recommendation on behalf of the Scottish Ministers.[[13]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-12)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Listed_building&action=edit&section=5)]England and Wales

*For lists of buildings, see*[*Listed buildings in England*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_buildings_in_England)*and*[*Listed buildings in Wales*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_buildings_in_Wales)*.*

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Listed_building&action=edit&section=6)]The legislation relevant to listing

In England and Wales the authority for listing is granted to the Secretary of State by the [Planning (Listed Buildings and Conservation Areas) Act 1990](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Planning_(Listed_Buildings_and_Conservation_Areas)_Act_1990). Listed buildings in danger of decay are listed on the English Heritage '[Heritage at Risk](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Heritage_at_Risk)' Register.

In 1980 there was public outcry at the sudden destruction of the [art deco](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Art_deco) [Firestone Factory](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Firestone_Factory&action=edit&redlink=1) ([Wallis, Gilbert and Partners](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wallis,_Gilbert_and_Partners), 1928–29), which was demolished over the August bank holiday weekend by its owners [Trafalgar House](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Trafalgar_House_(company)) who had been told that it was likely to be 'spot-listed' a few days later,[[14]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-Firestone_destruction-13) and the Government undertook to review arrangements for listing buildings.[[15]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-1980_revisions-14) After the Firestone demolition, the [Secretary of State for the Environment](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Secretary_of_State_for_the_Environment) [Michael Heseltine](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Michael_Heseltine) also initiated a complete re-survey of buildings to ensure there was nothing which merited preservation and had been missed off the lists.[[16]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-Re-survey-15)

In England, the [Department for Culture, Media and Sport](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Department_for_Culture,_Media_and_Sport) (DCMS) works with [English Heritage](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage) (an agency of the DCMS), and other government departments, e.g. [Department for Communities and Local Government](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Department_for_Communities_and_Local_Government) (DCLG) and the [Department for the Environment, Food and Rural Affairs](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Department_for_the_Environment,_Food_and_Rural_Affairs) (DEFRA) to deliver the government policy on the protection to historic buildings and other heritage assets. The decision about whether or not to list a building is made by the Secretary of State, although the process is administered in England by[English Heritage](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage).[[17]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-dcmsWhatDo-16) In Wales (where it is a devolved issue) it is administered by [Cadw](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cadw) on behalf of the [National Assembly for Wales](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/National_Assembly_for_Wales)[[18]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-17) and in [Scotland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Scotland) it is administered by[Historic Scotland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Historic_Scotland) on behalf of the Scottish Ministers.[[19]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-18)

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Listed_building&action=edit&section=7)]Heritage protection reform legislation in England

There have been several attempts to simplify the heritage planning process for listed buildings in England, which has still (at the time of writing in May 2011) to reach a conclusion.[[20]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-19)

The review process was started in 2000 by [Alan Howarth](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alan_Howarth), then minister at the [Department for Culture, Media and Sport](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Department_for_Culture,_Media_and_Sport) (DCMS). The outcome was the paper ‘The Power of Place’ in 2000[[21]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-20) followed by the subsequent policy document ‘The Historic Environment: A Force for Our Future’ published by the DCMS and the [Department of the Environment, Transport and the Regions](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Department_of_the_Environment,_Transport_and_the_Regions) (DTLR) in December 2001.[[22]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-21) The launch of the Government’s Heritage Protection Reform (HPR) report in July 2003 by the DCMS entitled: ‘Protecting our historic environment: Making the system work better,’[[23]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-22) asked questions about how the current designation systems could be improved. The HPR decision report ‘Review of Heritage Protection: The Way Forward’ green paper published in June 2004 by the DCMS committed the UK government and English Heritage to a process of reform including a review of the criteria used for listing buildings.

The Government also began a process of consultation on changes to Planning Policy Guidance 15 ([PPG 15](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/PPG_15)) relating to the principles of selection for listing buildings in England. After several years of consultation with heritage groups, charities, planning authorities and English Heritage, this eventually resulted in the publication of Planning Publication Statement 5 ‘Planning for the Historic Environment’ in March 2010 by the [DCLG](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/DCLG). This replaced PPG15 and sets out the government’s national policies on the conservation of the historic environment for the England.[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-PPS5-7) PPS5 is supported by a Practice Guide, endorsed by the DCLG, the DCMS, and English Heritage[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-PPS5-7) which describes how to apply the policies stated in PPS5.

The government’s White Paper ‘Heritage Protection for the 21st Century’ published on 8 March 2007 offered a commitment to sharing the understanding of the historic environment and more openness in the process of designation.[[24]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-23)

In 2008, a draft Heritage Protection Bill[[25]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-24) was subject to pre-legislative scrutiny before its passage through UK Parliament. In the event, the legislation was abandoned despite strong cross-party support, to make room in the parliamentary legislative programme for measures to deal with the credit crunch.[[26]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-25) though it may be revived in future. The proposal was that the existing registers of buildings, parks and gardens, archaeology and battlefields, maritime wrecks, and [World Heritage Sites](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/World_Heritage_Site) be merged into a single online register which will "explain what is special and why". English Heritage would become directly responsible for identifying historic assets in England and there would be wider consultation with the public and asset owners, and new rights of appeal. There would have been streamlined systems for granting consent for work on historic assets.[[27]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-26)[[*dead link*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:Link_rot)]

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Listed_building&action=edit&section=8)]Categories of listed building

There are three types of listed status for buildings in England and Wales:[[28]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-27)

* Grade I: buildings of exceptional interest,
* Grade II\*: particularly important buildings of more than special interest.
* Grade II: buildings that are of special interest, warranting every effort to preserve them.[[29]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-28)

There was formerly a non-statutory Grade III, which was abolished in 1970.[[30]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-29) Additionally, Grades A, B and C were used mainly for [Anglican](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Church_of_England) churches in use – these correspond approximately to Grades I, II\* and II. These grades were used mainly before 1977, although a few buildings are still listed using these grades.

Listed buildings account for about 2% of English building stock.[[31]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-HAR2010report-30) In March 2010, there were approximately 374,000 list entries[[17]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-dcmsWhatDo-16) of which 92% were Grade II, 5.5% were Grade II\*, and 2.5% were Grade I.[[32]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-31) Places of worship play an important role in the UK’s architectural heritage. England alone has 14,500 listed places of worship (4,000 Grade I, 4,500 Grade II\* and 6,000 Grade II). In fact, 45% of all Grade I listed buildings are places of worship.[[33]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-32)

There are estimated to be about 500,000 actual buildings listed, as listing entries can apply to more than one building.

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Listed_building&action=edit&section=9)]Statutory Criteria for listing

In order to be listed, a building must meet various criteria.[[34]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-listingprinciples-33) The criteria for listing include architectural interest, historic interest and close historical associations with significant people or events. Buildings which are not individually noteworthy may still be listed if they form part of a group that is – for example, all the buildings in a square. This is called ‘group value’. Sometimes large areas comprising many buildings may not justify listing but are given the looser protection of designation as a [conservation area](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Conservation_area).

The criteria include:

* **Age and rarity:** The older a building is, the more likely it is to be listed. All buildings erected before 1700 "which contain a significant proportion of their original fabric" will be listed. Most buildings built between 1700–1840 are listed. After 1840 more selection is exercised and “particularly careful selection” is applied after 1945. Buildings less than 30 years old are rarely listed unless they are of outstanding quality and under threat.
* **Aesthetic merits:** i.e. the appearance of a buildings. However, buildings that have little visual appeal may be listed on grounds of representing particular aspects of social or economic history.
* **Selectivity:** where a large number of buildings of a similar type survive, the policy is only to list those which are the most representative or significant examples.
* **National interest:** significant or distinctive regional buildings e.g. those that represent a nationally important but localised industry
* **State of repair:** this is **not** deemed to be a relevant consideration for listing. A building can be listed regardless of its state of repair.[[34]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-listingprinciples-33)

Additionally:

* Any buildings or structures constructed before 1 July 1948 which fall within the [curtilage](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Curtilage) of a listed building are treated as part of the listed building.[[35]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-34)
* The effect of a proposed development on the setting of a listed building is a material consideration in determining a planning application. Setting is defined as “the surroundings in which a heritage is experienced”.[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-PPS5-7)

Although the decision to list a building may be made on the basis of the architectural or historic interest of one small part of the building, the listing protection nevertheless applies to the whole building. Listing applies not just to the exterior fabric of the building itself, but also to the interior, fixtures, fittings, and objects within the curtilage of the building even if they are not fixed.[[36]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-1990Act-35)

De-listing is possible but rare in practice. One example is the 30 November 2001 de-listing of [North Corporation Primary School](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/North_Corporation_Primary_School), [Liverpool](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Liverpool).

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Listed_building&action=edit&section=10)]Emergency listing

In an emergency, the local planning authority can serve a temporary listed “building preservation notice”, if a building is in danger of demolition or alteration in such a way that might affect its historic character.[[36]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-1990Act-35) This remains in force for 6 months until the Secretary of State decides whether or not to formally list the building.

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Listed_building&action=edit&section=11)]Certificates of immunity

If planning permission is being sought or has been obtained in England, anyone can ask the Secretary of State to issue a [Certificate of Immunity](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Certificate_of_Immunity) (CoI) in respect of a particular building. CoIs give certainty to developers proposing works that will affect buildings that may be eligible for listing. To apply for a Certificate of Immunity, it is necessary to submit an application form. Guidance notes are available on English Heritage website.

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Listed_building&action=edit&section=12)]Altering a listed building

In England and Wales, the management of listed buildings is the responsibility of local planning authorities and the Department for Communities and Local Government (i.e. not DCMS which originally listed the building). There is a general principle that listed buildings are put to ‘appropriate and viable use’ and recognise that this may involve the re-use and modification of the building.[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-PPS5-7) However, listed buildings cannot be modified without first obtaining Listed Building Consent through the relevant local planning authority[[37]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-36)

Carrying out unauthorised works to a listed building is a criminal offence and owners can be prosecuted. A planning authority can also insist that all work undertaken without consent be reversed at the owner’s expense.

**England** [Listen](http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/6/67/En-us-England.ogg)[**i**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:En-us-England.ogg)[/](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:IPA_for_English)[ˈɪŋɡlənd](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:IPA_for_English" \l "Key)[/](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:IPA_for_English) is a country that is [part of](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Countries_of_the_United_Kingdom) the [United Kingdom](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_Kingdom).[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-7)[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-8)[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-9) It shares land borders with [Scotland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Scotland) to the north and[Wales](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wales) to the west; the [Irish Sea](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Irish_Sea) is to the north west, the [Celtic Sea](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Celtic_Sea) to the south west, while the [North Sea](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/North_Sea) to the east and the[English Channel](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Channel) to the south separate it from [continental Europe](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Continental_Europe). Most of England comprises the central and southern part of the island of [Great Britain](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Great_Britain) in the [North Atlantic](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/North_Atlantic). The country also includes [over 100 smaller islands](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_islands_of_England) such as the [Isles of Scilly](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isles_of_Scilly) and the[Isle of Wight](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight).

The area now called England was first inhabited by modern humans during the [Upper Palaeolithic](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Upper_Palaeolithic) period, but it takes its name from the [Angles](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Angles), one of the [Germanic](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Germanic_peoples) tribes who settled during the 5th and 6th centuries. England became a unified state in AD 927, and since the [Age of Discovery](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Age_of_Discovery), which began during the 15th century, has had a significant cultural and legal impact on the wider world.[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-10) The [English language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_language), the [Anglican Church](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anglican_Communion), and [English law](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_law)—the basis for the [common law](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Common_law) legal systems of many other countries around the world—developed in England, and the country's [parliamentary system](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Parliament_of_the_United_Kingdom) of government has been widely adopted by other nations.[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-11) The [Industrial Revolution](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Industrial_Revolution) began in 18th-century England, transforming its society into the world's first industrialised nation.[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-12) England's [Royal Society](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Royal_Society) laid the foundations of modern experimental science.[[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-13)

England's terrain mostly comprises low hills and plains, especially in central and southern England. However, there are uplands in the north (for example, the mountainous [Lake District](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lake_District), [Pennines](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pennines), and [Yorkshire Dales](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yorkshire_Dales)) and in the south west (for example, [Dartmoor](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dartmoor)and the [Cotswolds](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cotswolds)). The former capital of England was [Winchester](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Winchester) until replaced by [London](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/London) in 1066. Today London is the largest metropolitan area in the United Kingdom and the largest urban zone in the [European Union](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/European_Union) by most measures.[[nb 3]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-14) [England's population](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Demography_of_England) is about 53 million, around 84% of the population of the United Kingdom, and is largely concentrated in London, the[South East](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Southeast_England) and conurbations in the [Midlands](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Midlands), the [North West](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/North_West_England), the [North East](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/North_East_England) and [Yorkshire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yorkshire), which each developed as major industrial regions during the 19th century. Meadowlands and pastures are found beyond the major cities.

The [Kingdom of England](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kingdom_of_England)—which [after 1284](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Statute_of_Rhuddlan) included Wales—was a sovereign state until 1 May 1707, when the [Acts of Union](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Acts_of_Union_1707) put into effect the terms agreed in the [Treaty of Union](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Treaty_of_Union) the previous year, resulting in a political union with the [Kingdom of Scotland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kingdom_of_Scotland) to create the new [Kingdom of Great Britain](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kingdom_of_Great_Britain).[[13]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-15)[[14]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-16) In 1801, Great Britain was united with the [Kingdom of Ireland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kingdom_of_Ireland) through another [Act of Union](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Act_of_Union_1800) to become the [United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_Kingdom_of_Great_Britain_and_Ireland). In 1922, the [Irish Free State](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Irish_Free_State) was established as a separate dominion, but the [Royal and Parliamentary Titles Act 1927](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Royal_and_Parliamentary_Titles_Act_1927) reincorporated into the kingdom six Irish counties to officially create the current [United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_Kingdom).

The name "England" is derived from the [Old English](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Old_English) name *Englaland*, which means "land of the [Angles](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Angles)".[[15]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-17) The Angles were one of the [Germanic tribes](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Germanic_tribes) that settled in Great Britain during the [Early Middle Ages](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Early_Middle_Ages). The Angles came from the [Angeln](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Angeln) peninsula in the[Bay of Kiel](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bay_of_Kiel) area of the [Baltic Sea](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Baltic_Sea).[[16]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-18) According to the [*Oxford English Dictionary*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Oxford_English_Dictionary), the first known use of "England" to refer to the southern part of the island of Great Britain occurs in 897, and its modern spelling was first used in 1538.[[17]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-19)

The earliest attested mention of the name occurs in the 1st century work by [Tacitus](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tacitus), [*Germania*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Germania_(book)), in which the [Latin](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Latin) word *Anglii* is used.[[18]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-Fordham-20) The etymology of the tribal name itself is disputed by scholars; it has been suggested that it derives from the shape of the Angeln peninsula, an *angular* shape.[[19]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-21) How and why a term derived from the name of a tribe that was less significant than others, such as the [Saxons](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Saxons), came to be used for the entire country and its people is not known, but it seems this is related to the custom of calling the Germanic people in Britain *Angli Saxones* or English Saxons.[[20]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-22) It may be worth noting that in [Scottish Gaelic](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Scottish_Gaelic), another language which developed on the island of Great Britain, it was the dominant Saxon tribe who gave their name to the word for 'England' ("Sasunn").[[21]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-23)

An alternative name for England is [Albion](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Albion). The name *Albion* originally referred to the entire island of Great Britain. The earliest record of the name appears in the [Aristotelian](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Aristotle) [Corpus](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Corpus_Aristotelicum), specifically the 4th century BC *De Mundo*:[[22]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-massey-24) "Beyond the [Pillars of Hercules](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pillars_of_Hercules) is the ocean that flows round the earth. In it are two very large islands called Britannia; these are[Albion](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Albion) and [Ierne](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ireland)".[[22]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-massey-24) The word [*Albion*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Albion) (Ἀλβίων) or *insula Albionum* has two possible origins. It either derives from a cognate of the Latin *albus* meaning white, a reference to the[white cliffs of Dover](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/White_cliffs_of_Dover), the only part of Britain visible from the European Continent,[[23]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-25) or from the phrase in [*Massaliote Periplus*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Massaliote_Periplus), the "island of the *Albiones*".[[24]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-26) *Albion* is now applied to England in a more poetic capacity.[[25]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-27) Another romantic name for England is [Loegria](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lloegyr), related to the [Welsh](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Welsh_language) word for England, *Lloegr*, and made popular by its use in [Arthurian legend](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Arthurian_legend).

## History

The earliest known evidence of human presence in the area now known as England was that of [*Homo antecessor*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Homo_antecessor), dating to approximately 780,000 years ago. The oldest proto-human bones discovered in England date from 500,000 years ago.[[26]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-28) Modern humans are known to have first inhabited the area during the [Upper Paleolithic](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Upper_Paleolithic) period, though permanent settlements were only established within the last 6,000 years.[[27]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-29)[[28]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-30) After the last [ice age](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Last_glacial_period) only large mammals such as [mammoths](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mammoth), [bison](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bison) and [woolly rhinoceros](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Woolly_rhinoceros) remained. Roughly 11,000 years ago, when the ice sheets began to recede, humans repopulated the area; genetic research suggests they came from the northern part of the [Iberian Peninsula](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Iberian_Peninsula).[[29]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-31) The sea level was lower than now, and Britain was connected by land to both Ireland and [Eurasia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Eurasia).[[30]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-32) As the seas rose, it was separated from Ireland 10,000 years ago and from Eurasia two millennia later.

The [Beaker culture](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Beaker_culture) arrived around 2500 BC, introducing drinking and food vessels constructed from clay, as well as vessels used as reduction pots to smelt copper ores.[[31]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-33) It was during this time that major [Neolithic](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Neolithic) monuments such as [Stonehenge](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stonehenge) and [Avebury](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Avebury) were constructed. By heating together tin and copper, both of which were in abundance in the area, the Beaker culture people made [bronze](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bronze), and later iron from iron ores. The development of iron [smelting](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Smelting) allowed the construction of better [ploughs](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Plough), advancing agriculture (for instance, with [Celtic fields](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Celtic_field)), as well as the production of more effective weapons.[[32]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-34)

According to [John T. Koch](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_T._Koch) and others, England in the Late Bronze Age was part of a maritime trading-networked culture called the [Atlantic Bronze Age](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Atlantic_Bronze_Age) that included the whole of the British Isles and much of what we now regard as France together with the Iberian Peninsula. [Celtic languages](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Celtic_languages) developed in those areas; [Tartessian](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tartessian_language) may have been the earliest written Celtic language.[[33]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-Koch2009-35)[[34]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-36)[[35]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-37)

The [subdivisions of England](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Subdivisions_of_England) consist of up to four levels of [subnational division](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Administrative_division) controlled through a variety of types of administrative entities created for the purposes of [local government](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Local_government_in_England). The highest tier of local government were the nine [regions of England](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Regions_of_England): [North East](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/North_East_England), [North West](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/North_West_England), [Yorkshire and the Humber](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yorkshire_and_the_Humber), [East Midlands](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/East_Midlands), [West Midlands](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/West_Midlands_(region)), [East](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/East_of_England), [South East](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/South_East_England), [South West](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/South_West_England), and London. These were created in 1994 as[Government Offices](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Government_Office), used by the British Government to deliver a wide range of policies and programmes regionally, but there are no elected bodies at this level, except in London, and in 2011 the regional Government offices were abolished.[[108]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-112) The same boundaries remain in use for electing [Members of the European Parliament](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Members_of_the_European_Parliament) on a regional basis.

After [devolution](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Devolution) began to take place in other parts of the United Kingdom it was planned that referendums for the regions of England would take place for their own elected [regional assemblies](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Regional_Assemblies_in_England) as a counterweight. [London accepted](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Greater_London_Authority_referendum,_1998) in 1998: the [London Assembly](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/London_Assembly) was created two years later. However, when the proposal was rejected by the [northern England devolution referendums, 2004](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Northern_England_devolution_referendums,_2004) in the North East, further referendums were cancelled.[[88]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-refreject-92) The regional assemblies outside London were abolished in 2010, and their functions transferred to respective [Regional Development Agencies](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Regional_Development_Agency) and a new system of [local authority leaders' boards](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Local_authority_leaders'_board).[[109]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-113)

Below the regional level, all of England is divided into 48 [ceremonial counties](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ceremonial_counties_of_England).[[110]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-britannicagov-114) These are used primarily as a geographical frame of reference and have developed gradually since the [Middle Ages](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Middle_Ages), with some established as recently as 1974.[[111]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-maud-115) Each has a [Lord Lieutenant](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lord_Lieutenant) and [High Sheriff](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/High_Sheriff); these posts are used to represent the[British monarch](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/British_monarch) locally.[[110]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-britannicagov-114) Outside [Greater London](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Greater_London) and the [Isles of Scilly](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isles_of_Scilly), England is also divided into 83[metropolitan and non-metropolitan counties](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Metropolitan_and_non-metropolitan_counties_of_England); these correspond to areas used for the purposes of local government[[112]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-localgov-116) and may consist of a single district or be divided into several.

There are six [metropolitan counties](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Metropolitan_county) based on the most heavily urbanised areas, which do not have county councils.[[112]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-localgov-116) In these areas the principal authorities are the councils of the subdivisions, the [metropolitan boroughs](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Metropolitan_borough). Elsewhere, 27 [non-metropolitan "shire" counties](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Non-metropolitan_county) have a [county council](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/County_council) and are divided into districts, each with a district council. They are typically, though not always, found in more rural areas. The remaining non-metropolitan counties are of a single district and usually correspond to large towns or sparsely populated counties; they are known as [unitary authorities](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Unitary_authorities_of_England). Greater London has a different system for local government, with 32 [London boroughs](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/London_borough), plus the [City of London](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/City_of_London) covering a small area at the core, governed by the [City of London Corporation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/City_of_London_Corporation).[[113]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-117) At the most localised level, much of England is divided into [civil parishes](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Civil_parishes_in_England) with [councils](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Parish_councils_in_England); they do not exist in Greater London.[[114]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-118)

In geological terms, the [Pennines](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pennines), known as the "backbone of England", are the oldest range of mountains in the country, originating from the end of the [Paleozoic Era](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Paleozoic_Era) around 300 million years ago.[[121]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-125) Their geological composition includes, among others, [sandstone](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sandstone) and [limestone](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Limestone), and also coal. There are [karst](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Karst) landscapes in calcite areas such as parts of Yorkshire and [Derbyshire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Derbyshire). The Pennine landscape is high [moorland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Moorland) in upland areas, indented by fertile valleys of the region's rivers. They contain three [national parks](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/National_parks_in_England), the [Yorkshire Dales](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yorkshire_Dales), [Northumberland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Northumberland_National_Park), and the [Peak District](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Peak_District). The highest point in England, at 978 metres (3,209 ft), is [Scafell Pike](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Scafell_Pike) in Cumbria.[[120]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-metoffice_nw-124) Straddling the border between England and Scotland are the [Cheviot Hills](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cheviot_Hills).

The [English Lowlands](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Lowlands_beech_forests) are to the south of the Pennines, consisting of green rolling hills, including the [Cotswold Hills](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cotswold_Hills), [Chiltern Hills](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chiltern_Hills), [North](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/North_Downs)and [South Downs](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/South_Downs)—where they meet the sea they form white rock exposures such as the [cliffs of Dover](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cliffs_of_Dover). The granite Southwest Peninsula in the [West Country](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/West_Country) includes upland moorland, such as [Dartmoor](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dartmoor) and [Exmoor](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Exmoor), and enjoys a [mild climate](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Climate_of_south-west_England); both are national parks.[[122]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-126)

The **Isle of Wight** is a [county](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Counties_of_England) and the largest island in England, located in the [English Channel](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Channel), on average about 2–5 miles (3–7 km) off the south coast of the county of [Hampshire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hampshire), separated from the mainland by a strait called the [Solent](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Solent). The Island has many resorts which have been holiday destinations since [Victorian times](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Victorian_era).

The Island has a rich history, including a brief status as an independent kingdom in the 15th century. Until 1995, like Jersey and Guernsey, the Island had its own [Governor](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_Governors_of_the_Isle_of_Wight)—most notably [Lord Mountbatten](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Louis_Mountbatten,_1st_Earl_Mountbatten_of_Burma) from 1969 to 1974, after which he became [Lord Lieutenant](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lord_Lieutenant)until his assassination in 1979.

It was home to the poets [Swinburne](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Algernon_Charles_Swinburne) and [Tennyson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alfred_Lord_Tennyson), and to [Queen Victoria](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Queen_Victoria), who built her much-loved summer residence and final home[Osborne House](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Osborne_House) at [East Cowes](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/East_Cowes). The Island's maritime and industrial history encompasses boat building, sail making, the manufacture of [flying boats](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Flying_boat), the world's first [hovercraft](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hovercraft) and the testing and development of Britain's space rockets. It is home to the [Isle of Wight International Jazz Festival](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_International_Jazz_Festival), [Bestival](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bestival) and the recently revived [Isle of Wight Festival](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_Festival), which, in 1970, was the largest rock music event ever held.[[2]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-1) The Island has some exceptional wildlife and is one of the richest locations of [dinosaur](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dinosaur) [fossils](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fossil) in Europe.

Until 1890 the Isle of Wight was part of [Hampshire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hampshire). Since then it has been an independent [administrative county](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Administrative_counties_of_England), though up to 1974 it continued to share the [Lord Lieutenant of Hampshire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lord_Lieutenant_of_Hampshire). In 1974, it was reconstituted as a non-metropolitan and [ceremonial county](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ceremonial_counties_of_England), with its own [Lord Lieutenant](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lord_Lieutenant_of_the_Isle_of_Wight), and recognised as a [postal county](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Postal_counties_of_the_United_Kingdom). With a single Member of Parliament and 132,731 permanent residents in[2001](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_Kingdom_Census_2001), it is also the most populous [parliamentary constituency](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_Parliamentary_constituencies_in_the_United_Kingdom) in the United Kingdom. In 1832 the act popularly referred to as the Great Reform Act or [Reform Act of 1832](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Reform_Act_of_1832) established the principle of having a single MP for the Isle of Wight. Beginning in 2010,[[3]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-2) there is ongoing parliamentary debate to consider altering this.[[4]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-3)

It is easily accessible from [Southsea](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Southsea) by [hovercraft](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hovercraft). Several ferry services operate across the Solent: the route from Southampton to[Cowes](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cowes) is 10 miles (16 km), Portsmouth to [Ryde](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ryde) 3 miles (7 km), Portsmouth to Fishbourne 7 miles (11 km), and Lymington to

### Early history

The Isle of Wight is first mentioned in writing in [*Geography*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Geographia_(Ptolemy)) by [Claudius Ptolemaeus](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Claudius_Ptolemaeus).

The Roman historian [Suetonius](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Suetonius) mentions that the entire island was captured by the commander [Vespasian](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vespasian), who later became emperor.

At the end of the Roman Empire, the island of Vectis became a [Jutish](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Jutes) kingdom ruled by King [Stuf](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stuf) and his successors until AD 661 when it was invaded by [Wulfhere](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wulfhere_of_Mercia) of [Mercia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mercia) and forcibly converted to Christianity at sword point. When he left for Mercia the islanders reverted to paganism.

In AD 685 it was invaded by [Caedwalla](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Caedwalla_of_Wessex) of [Wessex](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wessex) and can be considered to have become part of Wessex. Following the accession of West Saxon kings as kings of all England, it then became part of England. The island became part of the [shire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Shire) of [Hampshire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hampshire) and was divided into [hundreds](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hundred_(country_subdivision)) as was the norm.

In 686, it became the last part of England to convert to Christianity.[[5]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-4)[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-5)[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-6)

The island suffered especially from [Viking](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Viking) predations. [Alfred the Great](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alfred_the_Great)'s navy defeated the Danes in 871 after they had "ravaged Devon and the Isle of Wight".

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=3)]Middle ages

The Isle of Wight is approximately diamond-shaped and covers an area of 380 km2. Slightly more than half of the island, mainly in the west, is designated as the [Isle of Wight Area of Outstanding Natural Beauty](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_AONB). The Island has 258 km2 of farmland, 52 km2 of developed areas, and 92 km of coastline. The landscape of the Island is remarkably diverse, leading to its oft-quoted description of "England in Miniature". West Wight is predominantly rural, with dramatic coastlines dominated by the chalk [downland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Downland)ridge, running across the whole island and ending in [The Needles](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Needles) stacks—perhaps the most photographed aspect of the Isle of Wight. The South Western quarter is commonly referred to as the [Back of the Wight](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Back_of_the_Wight) because it has a unique social and historical background. The highest point on the island is[St Boniface Down](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/St_Boniface_Down), at 241 m which is a [marilyn](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Marilyn_(hill)). The rest of the Island's landscape also has great diversity, with perhaps the most notable habitats being the soft cliffs and sea ledges, which are spectacular features as well as being very important for wildlife, and are internationally protected. The[River Medina](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/River_Medina) flows north into the [Solent](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Solent), whilst the other main river, the [River Yar](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Eastern_Yar_(river),_Isle_of_Wight) flows roughly north-east, emerging at[Bembridge](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bembridge) Harbour at the eastern end of the island. Confusingly, there is another entirely separate river at the western end also called the [River Yar](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Western_Yar_(river),_Isle_of_Wight) flowing the short distance from [Freshwater](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Freshwater,_Isle_of_Wight) Bay to a relatively large estuary at [Yarmouth](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yarmouth,_Isle_of_Wight). To distinguish them, they may be referred to as the *Eastern* and *Western* Yar.

The south coast of the island borders the [English Channel](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Channel). Without man's intervention the sea might well have split the island into three; at the west end where a bank of pebbles separates [Freshwater Bay](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Freshwater_Bay) from the marshy backwaters of the Western Yar east of Freshwater, and at the east end where a thin strip of land separates Sandown Bay from the marshy basin of the Eastern Yar, east of [Sandown](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sandown). Yarmouth itself was effectively an island, with water on all sides and only connected to the rest of the island by a regularly breached neck of land immediately east of the town.

It is one of the few places in England where the [red squirrel](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Red_squirrel) is flourishing, with a stable population ([Brownsea Island](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Brownsea_Island) is another). Unlike most of England, no [grey squirrels](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Eastern_grey_squirrel) are to be found on the island,[[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-11) nor are there any wild [deer](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Deer). Instead, rare and protected species such as the [dormouse](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dormouse) and many rare [bats](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bat) can be found. The [Glanville Fritillary](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Glanville_Fritillary) butterfly's distribution in the United Kingdom is largely restricted to the edges of the crumbling cliffs of the Isle of Wight.

A competition in 2002 named the [Pyramidal Orchid](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pyramidal_Orchid) as the Isle of Wight's [county flower](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/County_flower).[[13]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-12)

The island has one of the most important areas in Europe for [dinosaur](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dinosaur) fossils. The eroding cliffs often reveal previously hidden remains particularly along the region known as the[Back of the Wight](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Back_of_the_Wight).

The Isle of Wight is made up of a wide variety of different rock types ranging from Early [Cretaceous](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cretaceous) times (around 127 million years ago) to the middle of the [Palaeogene](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Palaeogene) (around 30 million years ago). The northern half of island is mainly made up of Tertiary clays, with the southern half formed of Cretaceous rocks (the [Chalk](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chalk) that forms the central east-west downs, as well as Upper and Lower [Greensands](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Greensand)and [Wealden](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wealden) strata).

All the rocks found on the island are [sedimentary](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sedimentary) – made up of mineral grains from previously existing rocks. These are consolidated to form the rocks that can be seen on the island today, such as [limestone](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Limestone), [mudstone](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mudstone) and [sandstone](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sandstone). Rocks on the island are very rich in fossils and many of these can be seen exposed on the beaches as the cliffs erode.

Cretaceous rocks on the island, usually red, show that the climate was previously hot and dry. This provided suitable living conditions for[dinosaurs](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dinosaur). Dinosaur bones and footprints can be seen in and on the rocks exposed around the island's beaches, especially at [Yaverland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yaverland)and [Compton Bay](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Compton_Bay). As a result, the isle has been nicknamed *Dinosaur Island*.

Along the northern coast of the island there is a rich source of [fossilised](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fossil) shellfish, [crocodiles](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Crocodiles), turtles and mammal bones. The youngest of these date back to around 30 million years ago.

About ten thousand years ago, sea levels began to rise and the great ice sheets of the last Ice Age melted. As sea level rose higher, the Isle of Wight became separated from the mainland. This is thought to have occurred about 7,000 years ago.

The Isle of Wight is a [ceremonial](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ceremonial_counties_of_England) and [non-metropolitan](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Metropolitan_and_non-metropolitan_county) county. Since the abolition of its two [borough](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Borough) councils in 1995 and the restructuring of the county council as the [Isle of Wight Council](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_Council), it has been a [unitary](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Unitary_authority) county. It also has a single Member of Parliament, and is by far the most populous [constituency](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_(UK_Parliament_constituency)) in the United Kingdom (more than 50% above the average of English constituencies).

As a constituency of the [House of Commons](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/British_House_of_Commons), it is traditionally a battleground between the [Conservatives](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Conservative_Party_(UK)) and the [Liberal Democrats](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Liberal_Democrats). The current Member Of Parliament [Andrew Turner](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Andrew_Turner_(politician)) is a Conservative, and his predecessor Dr [Peter Brand](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Peter_Brand) was a Liberal Democrat.

The [Isle of Wight Council](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_Council) election of 2009 was a victory for the Conservative Party, which took 24 of the council's 40 seats.[[15]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-14)

There has been a minor regionalist movement, in the form of the [Vectis National Party](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vectis_National_Party) and Isle of Wight Party, but they attracted little support in elections.

* [Newport](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Newport,_Isle_of_Wight), located in the centre of the island, is the county town of the Isle of Wight and is the island's main shopping area. Recent developments include a new bus station with retail complex and a new retail park on the outskirts. Located next to the [River Medina](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/River_Medina), Newport Quay was a busy port until the mid 19th century, but has now been mainly converted into art galleries, apartments and other meeting places.
* [Ryde](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ryde), the island's largest town with a population of around 30,000, is located in the north east of the island. It is a [Victorian](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Victorian_architecture) town with an 800 metre long [pier](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ryde_Pier) and 6 km of beaches, attracting many tourists each year. Every year there is a Ryde Carnival in two parts, spread over more than one day: one in the daytime, and one at night with many coloured lights. Ryde is also home to the ice hockey club Isle of Wight Raiders, who play in the English Premier League.
* [Cowes](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cowes) is the location of [Cowes Week](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cowes_Week) every year and an international sailing centre. It is also the home of the record-setting sailor Dame [Ellen MacArthur](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ellen_MacArthur).
* [East Cowes](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/East_Cowes) is famous for [Osborne House](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Osborne_House), [Norris Castle](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Norris_Castle) and for being the home from 1929 to 1964 of [Saunders-Roe](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Saunders-Roe), the historic aircraft, flying boat and hovercraft company.
* [Sandown](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sandown) is another seaside resort, attracting many tourists each year. It is also home to the [Isle of Wight Zoo](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_Zoo) and [Dinosaur Isle](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dinosaur_Isle) geological museum, and one of the island's tw

### Language and dialect

The accent of the Isle of Wight is similar to the traditional [dialect](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dialect) of Hampshire, featuring the dropping of some [consonants](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Consonant) and an emphasis on longer [vowels](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vowel). It is similar to the [West Country dialects](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/West_Country_dialects) heard in SW England, but less removed in sound[[*clarification needed*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:Please_clarify)]from the [Estuary English](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Estuary_English) of the SE. As with many other traditional southern English regional dialects and accents, a strong island accent is not now commonly heard, and, as speakers tend to be older, this decline is likely to continue.

The island also has its own local and regional words. Some words, including *grockle* (visitor, tourist – hence *grockle-can*, tour coach) and *nipper/nips* (a younger male person), are still commonly used and are shared with neighbouring areas of the mainland. A few are unique to the island, for example *overner* (a mainlander who has settled on the island) and*caulkhead* (someone born on the island and born from long-established island stock). Other words are more obscure and now used mainly for comic emphasis, such as *mallishag*(meaning "[caterpillar](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Caterpillar)") and *nammit* ("no meat", from the lunch of bread and cheese farm workers ate). Some other words are *gurt* meaning "great"(as in size rather than quality - "Look at en, wi' es gurt 'at flappin' abate." *Look at him, with his big hat flapping around*), and *gallybagger* ("scarecrow").[[16]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-15)

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=15)]Identity

There has been and still is some confusion between the identities of the Isle of Wight as a separate county and, as it once was, a part of the nearby county of [Hampshire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hampshire). At least one mainstream newspaper article as recently as 2008 refers to the "Isle of Wight in Hampshire".[[17]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-16) Prior to 1890, the Isle of Wight was normally regarded and was administered as a part of Hampshire. With the formation of the [Isle of Wight County Council](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_County_Council) in 1890, the distinct identity became officially established: see also [*Politics of the Isle of Wight*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Politics_of_the_Isle_of_Wight). In January 2009, the new [Flag of the Isle of Wight](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Flag_of_the_Isle_of_Wight), the first general flag for the county, was accepted by the [Flag Institute](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Flag_Institute).[[18]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-17) Denizens of the Isle of Wight are sometimes referred to as 'Vectensians'or "caulkheads".

[Cowes](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cowes) is a centre for sailing, playing host to several racing [regattas](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Regatta). [Cowes Week](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cowes_Week) is the longest-running regular regatta in the world, with over 1,000 yachts and 8,500 competitors taking part in over 50 classes of yacht racing.[[19]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-18) In 1851 the first [America's Cup](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/America's_Cup) race took place around the island. Other major sailing events hosted in Cowes include the [Fastnet race](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fastnet_race), the [Round the Island Race](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Round_the_Island_Race),[[20]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-19) the[Admiral's Cup](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Admiral's_Cup), and the [Commodore's Cup](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Commodore's_Cup).[[21]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-20)

#### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=19)]Marathon

The Isle of Wight Marathon is the United Kingdom's oldest continuously held marathon, having been run every year since 1957.[[22]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-21) The course starts in Ryde, passing through Newport, Shanklin and Sandown, before finishing back in Ryde. It is an undulating course with a total climb of 459 metres.

#### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=20)]Speedway

The island is home to the [Isle of Wight Islanders](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_Islanders) [speedway](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Motorcycle_speedway) team, who compete in the sport's third division, the [National League](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Speedway_National_League). The club was founded in 1996, with a first-night attendance of 1,740.

#### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=21)]Ice Hockey

The island is also home to the [Wightlink Raiders](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wightlink_Raiders), an ice hockey team based at Ryde Arena. They compete in the 1st Tier of the [English National Ice Hockey League](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_National_Ice_Hockey_League), the 3rd Division in the country. There is also an amateur team the [Vectis Tigers](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vectis_Tigers) of the 2nd Tier [English National Ice Hockey League](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_National_Ice_Hockey_League), and four youth teams including the [Isle of Wight Wildcats](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_Wildcats), all based at Ryde Arena.

#### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=22)]Hockey

The Isle of Wight Hockey Club run three senior teams and a junior side, with the 1st XI competing in Hampshire's top division, just one below the regional leagues. The island also has a ladies team—the Vectis Ladies—which is a separate organisation from the IW Hockey Club. Ventnor Middle School on the Isle of Wight runs a successful hockey set-up, producing a number of players who have since gone on to play at high standards.

#### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=23)]Football

The now-disbanded [Ryde Sports F.C.](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ryde_Sports_F.C.) founded in 1888 and became one of the eight founder members of the [Hampshire League](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hampshire_League) in 1896. There are several other non-league clubs such as [Newport (IW) F.C.](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Newport_(IW)_F.C.) There is an [Isle of Wight Saturday Football League](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_Saturday_Football_League) with three divisions, and a [rugby union](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rugby_union) club,[[23]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-22) plus various other sporting teams.[[24]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-23) [Beach football](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Beach_football)is particularly prevalent on the island and has several of the nation's premier clubs with almost all of the England Beach Soccer team made up from players from the island. Many of the stadiums are used when the island hosts the [Island Games](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Island_Games) as it has done twice.

#### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=24)]Cricket

The largest industry on the Isle of Wight is tourism, but the island has a strong agricultural heritage, including sheep and dairy farming and the growing of arable crops. Traditional agricultural commodities are more difficult to market off the island because of transport costs, but island farmers have managed successfully to exploit some specialist markets. The high price of these products overcomes the transport costs. One of the most successful agricultural sectors at present is the growing of crops under cover, particularly salad crops, including tomatoes and cucumbers. The Isle of Wight has a longer growing season than much of the United Kingdom and this also favours such crops. Garlic has been successfully grown in [Newchurch](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Newchurch,_Isle_of_Wight) for many years, and is even exported to France. This has led to the establishment of an annual [Garlic Festival](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_Garlic_Festival) at Newchurch, which is one of the largest events of the island's annual calendar. The favourable climate has led to the success of[vineyards](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vineyard), including one of the oldest in the British Isles, at [Adgestone](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Adgestone) near [Sandown](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sandown).[[36]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-35) [Lavender](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lavender) is also grown for its oil.[[37]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-36) The largest sector of agriculture has been dairying, but due to low milk prices, and strict UK legislation for UK milk producers, the dairy industry has declined. There were nearly one-hundred and fifty dairy producers of various sizes in the mid-eighties, but this has now dwindled down to just twenty-four. Due to modern farming practices, the Island has noted increased levels of pesticide poisoning in local farmers and other local residents living near crops and vineyards.[[38]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-37)

The making of sailcloth, boats and other connected maritime industry has long been associated with the island, although this has somewhat diminished in recent years. [Cowes](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cowes) is still home to various small marine-related companies such as [boat-builders](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Boat_building).

Although they have reduced the extent of the plants and workforce, including the sale of the main site, [GKN](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/GKN_plc) operates what was once the [British Hovercraft Corporation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/British_Hovercraft_Corporation) a subsidiary of, and known latterly, when manufacturing focus changed, as [Westland Aircraft](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Westland_Aircraft). Prior to its purchase by Westland, it was the independent company known as [Saunders-Roe](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Saunders-Roe). It remains one of the most notable historic firms, having produced many of the [flying boats](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Flying_boats), and the world's first [hovercraft](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hovercraft).

The island's major manufacturing activity today is in [composite materials](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Composite_material), used by boat-builders and the [wind turbine](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wind_turbine) manufacturer [Vestas](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vestas), which has a wind turbine blade factory and testing facilities in [Newport](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Newport,_Isle_of_Wight) and [East Cowes](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/East_Cowes).

[Bembridge Airfield](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bembridge_Airport) is the home of [Britten-Norman](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Britten-Norman), manufacturers of the [Islander](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Britten-Norman_Islander) and [Trislander](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Britten-Norman_Trislander) aircraft. This is shortly to become the site of the European assembly line for [Cirrus](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cirrus_Design)light aircraft. The Norman Aeroplane Company is a smaller aircraft manufacturing company operating in [Sandown](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sandown). There are have been three other aircraft manufacturers that built planes on the island.[[39]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-38)

In 2005, Northern Petroleum began exploratory drilling for [oil](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Petroleum), with its Sandhills-2 borehole at [Porchfield](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Porchfield) but ceased operations in October that year, after failing to find significant reserves.

#### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=29)]Breweries

There are three breweries on the island. Goddards Brewery in [Ryde](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ryde) opened in 1993[[40]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-39). David Yates, who was head brewer of Burts and Island Brewery, started brewing as Yates Brewery at the Inn at [St Lawrence](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/St_Lawrence,_Isle_of_Wight) in 2000[[41]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-40). The Island Brewery, located in Shalfleet, was formed in 1993 by Mick Kennel and Dave Coleman.

Ventnor Brewery, which closed in 2009, was the last incarnation of Burt's Brewery, which had been brewing on the island since the 1840s in [Ventnor](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ventnor)[[42]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-41). Until the 1960s most pubs were owned by Mews Brewery sited in Newport near the old railway station, but it closed and the pubs taken over by Strongs and then by [Whitbread](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Whitbread). By some accounts Mews beer was apt to be rather cloudy and dark. They pioneered the use of cans in the 19th century for export to British India. The old brewery was derelict for many years but was then severely damaged in a spectacular fire.

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=30)]Services

#### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=31)]Tourism and heritage

See also: [*List of tourist attractions in the Isle of Wight*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_tourist_attractions_in_the_Isle_of_Wight)

The heritage of the island is a major asset, which has for many years kept its economy going. Holidays focused on natural heritage, including both wildlife and geology, are becoming a growing alternative to the traditional British [seaside](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Seaside_resort) holiday, which went into decline in the second half of the 20th century, due to the increased affordability of air travel to alternative destinations.

The Isle of Wight has a total of 787 km of roadway. Major roads run between the main island towns, with smaller roads connecting villages. It is one of the few counties in the UK not to have a motorway, although there is a dual carriageway from Coppins Bridge in Newport towards the north of Newport near the island's hospital and prison.

A comprehensive bus network operated by [Southern Vectis](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Southern_Vectis) links most island settlements, with Newport as the central hub.

The island's location 8 km off the mainland means that longer-distance transport is by boat. Car ferry and passenger services are run by[Wightlink](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wightlink) and [Red Funnel](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Red_Funnel) as well as a hovercraft operated by [Hovertravel](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hovertravel). Fixed links, in the forms of tunnels or bridges, have been proposed.

The island formerly had [its own railway network](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Railways_on_the_Isle_of_Wight) of over 88 km, but only one line remains in regular use. The [Island Line](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Island_Line,_Isle_of_Wight) is part of the United Kingdom's [National Rail](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/National_Rail) network, running a little under 14 kilometres from Ryde to Shanklin. The line was opened by the [Isle of Wight Railway](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_Railway) in 1864, and from 1996 to 2007 was run by the smallest train operating company on the network, [Island Line Trains](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Island_Line_Trains). It is notable for utilising ex-London Underground rolling stock. Branching off the Island Line at Smallbrook Junction is the heritage [Isle of Wight Steam Railway](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_Steam_Railway), which runs for 5.5 miles to the outskirts of Wootton.

There are currently two airfields for general aviation, [Isle of Wight Airport](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_Airport) at Sandown and [Bembridge Airport](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bembridge_Airport).

The island has over 322 km of cycleways, much of which can be enjoyed by families off road. Major Trails are

* The Sunshine Trail, which incorporates Sandown, Shanklin, Godshill, and Wroxall in a 19 km circular route
* The Troll Trail' between Cowes and Sandown (21 km, 90% off road)
* The Round the Island Cycle Route, which circumnavigates the island on a reported 100 kilometre ride

A full list of routes are available here: [Isle Cycle](http://www.islecycle.co.uk/) The site is constantly updated to add new routes.

#### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=33)]Communications

All the island telephone exchanges are broadband-enabled, although some areas, such as [Arreton](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Arreton), have no broadband access. Some urban areas such as [Cowes](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cowes) and Newport are also covered by cable lines.

#### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=34)]Media

The Isle of Wight's main local newspaper is the [*Isle of Wight County Press*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_County_Press), which costs 75p. It discusses local issues and is published each Friday, or the previous working day if the Friday is a public holiday.

The island has one local commercial radio station and also falls within the coverage area of a number of local stations on the near mainland. [Isle of Wight Radio](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_Radio) has broadcast in the [medium-wave](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Medium-wave) band since 1990 and on 102 and 107 MHz [FM](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/FM_broadcasting) since 1998, as well as [streaming on the internet](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Internet_radio).

The island's not-for-profit community radio station opened in 2007, Angel Radio began broadcasting on 91.5 MHz from studios in Cowes and a transmitter near Newport.[[46]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-45) On 1 February 2009, [Wight FM](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wight_FM) began broadcasting as an internet radio station. It closed down 6 months later. This was replaced in February 2010 by Internet station Vectis Radio.

On-line news sources for the Isle of Wight include Ventnor Blog[[47]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-46) and The Isle of Wight Chronicle.[[48]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-47) The Chronicle was originally a best selling island paper in the 1950s.

The island has had community television stations in the past, first TV12 and then [Solent TV](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Solent_TV) from 2002 until its closure on 24 May 2007. In Early 2012 the Isle of Wight saw the launch of a new online community TV Station going under the name of Isle of Wight TV (iWight.TV) The news service is provided in-house by former members of the Isle of Wight Chronicle who stopped publishing news in 2011.

The Isle of Wight is part of the BBC South region and the ITV Meridian region.

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=35)]Prisons

The geography of the island, and its location near the densely populated south of England, led to it hosting three prisons: [Albany](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Albany_(HM_Prison)), [Camp Hill](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Camp_Hill_(HM_Prison)) and [Parkhurst](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Parkhurst_(HM_Prison)), all located outside Newport near the main road to Cowes. Albany and Parkhurst were among the few Category A prisons in the UK until they were downgraded in the 1990s. The downgrading of Parkhurst was precipitated by a major escape: three prisoners (two murderers and a blackmailer) made their way out of the prison on 3 January 1995 for four days of freedom before being recaptured. Parkhurst especially enjoyed notoriety as one of the toughest jails in the United Kingdom and housed many notable inmates, including the [Yorkshire Ripper](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yorkshire_Ripper) [Peter Sutcliffe](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Peter_Sutcliffe), New Zealand drug lord [Terry Clark](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Terrance_John_Clark) and the [Kray twins](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kray_twins).

Camp Hill is located to the west of, and adjacent to, Albany and Parkhurst, on the very edge of Parkhurst Forest, having been converted first to a [borstal](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Borstal) and later to a Category C prison. It was built on the site of an army camp (both Albany and Parkhurst were barracks); there is a small estate of tree-lined roads with well-proportioned officers' quarters (of varying grandeur according to rank, but now privately owned) to the south and east.

The management of all three prisons was merged into a single administration, under the name of [HMP Isle of Wight](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_(HM_Prison)) in April 2009.

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=36)]Education

Main article: [*Education on the Isle of Wight*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Education_on_the_Isle_of_Wight)

There are sixty-nine [Local Education Authority](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Local_Education_Authority)-maintained schools on the Isle of Wight, and two [independent schools](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Independent_school_(UK)). As a rural community, many of these schools are small, with average numbers of pupils lower than in many urban areas. There are currently primary schools, middle schools and high schools. However, education reforms have led to plans for closures (for full details on these see [Education reforms on the Isle of Wight](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Education_reforms_on_the_Isle_of_Wight)). There is also the [Isle of Wight College](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_College), which is located on the outskirts of Newport.

From September 2010, there is a transition period from the "3-tier system" of primary, middle and high schools. Some schools have now closed their doors, such as Chale CE Primary School. Other schools have become "federated", such as Brading CE Primary School and St Helens Primary School. Christ the King College started as a "middle school" but is being converted into a High School so that eventually it will have a Sixth Form.

From September 2011, there will be 5 new schools, with an age range of 11 to 18 years, which will replace the existing High schools.

When the transition is complete, there will be fewer schools on the Isle of Wight.

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=37)]Notable residents

In most camps, the adult supervisors are called **counselors**, but another name may be "cabin leader". In many camps, counselors are assigned to smaller groups of campers, called "bunks", "huts", "cabins", or "units", who participate in activities as a group. Counselors often share living accommodations with their bunk or other counselors. Most counselors are in their late teens or early twenties, as [high school](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/High_school) or [college](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/College) students on their summer break are frequently recruited.

At some camps, all campers stay overnight, and at some camps, so called [day camps](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Day_camp), the campers go home each night. Some other camps allow both day and overnight campers. In the USA, residential camps that have overnight facilities are sometimes called "sleepaway camps". Summer camp is often the first time that children spend an extended period of time away from home.

The practice of running residential holidays for children away from their own home seems to have originated in Appenzell in the Alps in 1876, when Pastor Bion set up holiday camps in which children made tree-houses, sang songs, did drama, made kites and had adventure games.

Post-war France used Pastor Bion’s model to take children who had grown up during the war years, away from cities, and their scheme ‘colonies de vacances’ became state controlled, part of their state education system for all children.

The American camps seem to have developed from a very different cultural root.

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Summer_camp&action=edit&section=2)]Summer camp around the world

Summer camps are largely non-existent in Australia, because the Australian summer break (known as the Christmas holidays) only lasts between six to eight weeks, and occurs over Christmas and the New Year, shorter than in North America. Most children participate in School-camps, Girl Guide/scout camps, or school holiday camps with some religious groups (Such as the Salvation Army and Seventh-Day Adventists) holding week-long Summer Camps. Girl Guides and Scouts offer 'jamborees' which are camps over 1 to 2 weeks. Multiple-week camps are next to unheard of,

Many of Australia's youth music organisations hold annual rehearsal camps in summer including the Australian Youth Orchestra's National Music Camp and Gondwana Choirs Gondwana National Choral School.

Other than the Seventh-Day Adventist Summer Camps, most holiday camps are referred to as "Adventure Camps", because they largely do not occur over summer.

Many groups hold holiday day-camps for Primary aged children, and often run week-long adventure camps during the Spring, Autumn and Winter breaks.

Australian Defence Force Cadets often and almost exclusively run their extended camps and courses over school holiday periods, the vast majority of which provide all food and lodging for Cadets over the course of the camp. However, these camps often last only one or two weeks and thus do not fill up the majority of the summer holiday break. This allows the Cadets (who are aged 12-18 years and therefore the majority attend school) to attend the camps whilst still completing normal schooling.

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Summer_camp&action=edit&section=4)]Canada

In [Canada](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Canada), summer camps are very popular. About 70% of Canadian camps tend to be affiliated with organizations, while the rest are private.

There are also many summer camps for ESL students.

Summer camp fairs are held throughout Canada, usually during the winter months. Parents and children can meet camp directors and collect information about summer camps. Admission to these fairs is typically free, and the camps on display vary in their cost from completely subsidized fees to quite expensive.

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Summer_camp&action=edit&section=5)]Chile

It is time to make a huge docx file. Just to see how well okapi processes it. Ward Cunningham and co-author [Bo Leuf](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bo_Leuf), in their book [*The Wiki Way: Quick Collaboration on the Web*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Wiki_Way), described the essence of the Wiki concept as follows:

* A wiki invites all users to edit any page or to create new pages within the wiki Web site, using only a [plain-vanilla](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vanilla_software) Web browser without any extra [add-ons](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Browser_extension).
* Wiki promotes meaningful topic associations between different pages by making page link creation almost intuitively easy and showing whether an intended target page exists or not.
* A wiki is not a carefully crafted site for casual visitors. Instead, it seeks to involve the visitor in an ongoing process of creation and collaboration that constantly changes the Web site landscape.

A wiki enables communities to write documents collaboratively, using a simple markup language and a web browser. A single page in a wiki website is referred to as a "wiki page", while the entire collection of pages, which are usually well interconnected by [hyperlinks](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hyperlink), is "the wiki". A wiki is essentially a database for creating, browsing, and searching through information. A wiki allows for non-linear, evolving, complex and networked text, argument and interaction.[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Legal-5)

A defining characteristic of wiki technology is the ease with which pages can be created and updated. Generally, there is no review before modifications are accepted. Many wikis are open to alteration by the general public without requiring them to register [user](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/User_(computing)) accounts. Many edits can be made in real-time and appear almost instantly online. This can facilitate abuse of the system. Private wiki servers require [user authentication](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Authentication) to edit pages, and sometimes even to read them.

[Maged N. Kamel Boulos](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Maged_N._Kamel_Boulos), Cito Maramba and [Steve Wheeler](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Steve_Wheeler) write that it is the "openness of wikis that gives rise to the concept of 'Darwikinism', which is a concept that describes the '[socially Darwinian](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Socially_Darwinian) process' that wiki pages are subject to. Basically, because of the openness of wikis and the rapidity with which wiki pages can be edited, the pages undergo a [natural selection](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Natural_selection) process like that which nature subjects to living organisms. 'Unfit' sentences and sections are ruthlessly culled, edited and replaced if they are not considered 'fit', which hopefully results in the evolution of a higher quality and more relevant page. Whilst such openness may invite 'vandalism' and the posting of untrue information, this same openness also makes it possible to rapidly correct or restore a 'quality' wiki page."[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-BMC-6)

Editing wiki pages

There are many different ways in which wikis have users edit the content. Ordinarily, the structure and formatting of wiki pages are specified with a simplified markup language, sometimes known as [wikitext](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikitext) (for example, starting a line of text with an [asterisk](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Asterisk) often sets up a [bulleted list](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bullet_(typography))). The style and syntax of wikitexts can vary greatly among wiki implementations, some of which also allow [HTML](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/HTML) tags. Designers of wikis often take this approach because HTML, with its many cryptic tags, is not very legible, making it hard to edit. Wikis therefore favour plain-text editing, with fewer and simpler conventions than HTML, for indicating style and structure. Although limiting access to HTML and [Cascading Style Sheets](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cascading_Style_Sheets) (CSS) of wikis limits user ability to alter the structure and formatting of wiki content, there are some benefits. Limited access to CSS promotes consistency in the look and feel, and having [JavaScript](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/JavaScript) disabled prevents a user from implementing code that may limit access for other users.

Increasingly, wikis are making [WYSIWYG](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/WYSIWYG) editing available to users, usually by means of [JavaScript](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/JavaScript) or an [ActiveX](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/ActiveX) control that translates graphically entered formatting instructions into the corresponding [HTML tags](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/HTML_element) or wikitext. In those implementations, the markup of a newly edited, marked-up version of the page is generated and submitted to the server[transparently](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Transparency_(human-computer_interaction)), shielding the user from this technical detail. However, WYSIWYG controls do not always provide all of the features available in wikitext, and some users prefer not to use a WYSIWYG editor. Hence, many of these sites offer some means to edit the wikitext directly.

Most wikis keep a record of changes made to wiki pages; often, every version of the page is stored. This means that authors can revert to an older version of the page, should it be necessary because a mistake has been made or the page has been vandalized. Many implementations, like [MediaWiki](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/MediaWiki), allow users to supply an *edit summary* when they edit a page; this is a short piece of text summarising the changes. It is not inserted into the article, but is stored along with that revision of the page, allowing users to explain what has been done and why; this is similar to a log message when making changes to a [revision-control](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Revision_control) system.

### Navigation

Within the text of most pages there are usually a large number of [hypertext](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hypertext) links to other pages. This form of non-linear navigation is more "native" to wiki than structured/formalized navigation schemes. That said, users can also create any number of index or table-of-contents pages, with hierarchical categorization or whatever form of organization they like. These may be challenging to maintain by hand, as multiple authors create and delete pages in an ad hoc manner. Wikis generally provide one or more ways to categorize or tag pages to support the maintenance of such index pages.

Most wikis have a backlink feature, which displays all pages that link to a given page.

It is typical in a wiki to create links to pages that do not yet exist, as a way to invite others to share what they know about a subject new to the wiki.

### Linking and creating pages

Links are created using a specific syntax, the so-called "link pattern" (also see [CURIE](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/CURIE)). Originally, most wikis used [CamelCase](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/CamelCase) to name pages and create links. These are produced by capitalizing words in a phrase and removing the spaces between them (the word "CamelCase" is itself an example). While CamelCase makes linking very easy, it also leads to links which are written in a form that deviates from the standard spelling. To link to a page with a single-word title, one must abnormally capitalize one of the letters in the word (e.g. "WiKi" instead of "Wiki"). CamelCase-based wikis are instantly recognizable because they have many links with names such as "TableOfContents" and "BeginnerQuestions." It is possible for a wiki to render the visible anchor for such links "pretty" by reinserting spaces, and possibly also reverting to lower case. However, this reprocessing of the link to improve the readability of the anchor is limited by the loss of capitalization information caused by CamelCase reversal. For example, "RichardWagner" should be rendered as "Richard Wagner," whereas "PopularMusic" should be rendered as "popular music". There is no easy way to determine which [capital letters](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Capital_letter) should remain capitalized. As a result, many wikis now have "free linking" using brackets, and some disable CamelCase by default.

### Searching

Most wikis offer at least a title [search](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Search_algorithm), and sometimes a [full-text search](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Full_text_search). The scalability of the search depends on whether the wiki engine uses a database. Some wikis, such as[PmWiki](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/PmWiki), use [flat files](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Flat_file).[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Augar-7) MediaWiki's first versions used flat files, but it was rewritten by [Lee Daniel Crocker](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lee_Daniel_Crocker) in the early 2000s to be a database application. Indexed database access is necessary for high speed searches on large wikis. Alternatively, external [search engines](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Web_search_engine) such as [Google Search](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Google_Search) can sometimes be used on wikis with limited searching functions in order to obtain more precise results. However, a search engine's indexes can be very out of date (days, weeks or months) for many websites.

## History

[WikiWikiWeb](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/WikiWikiWeb) was the first wiki.[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-ebersbach10-8) Ward Cunningham started developing WikiWikiWeb in Portland, Oregon, in 1994, and installed it on the [Internet domain](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Domain_name) [c2.com](http://c2.com/) on March 25, 1995. It was named by Cunningham, who remembered a [Honolulu International Airport](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Honolulu_International_Airport)counter employee telling him to take the "[Wiki Wiki Shuttle](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki_Wiki_Shuttle)" bus that runs between the airport's terminals. According to Cunningham, "I chose wiki-wiki as an alliterative substitute for 'quick' and thereby avoided naming this stuff quick-web."[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-cunningham-9)[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-history-10)

Cunningham was in part inspired by Apple's [HyperCard](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/HyperCard). Apple had designed a system allowing users to create virtual "card stacks" supporting links among the various cards. Cunningham developed [Vannevar Bush's](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vannevar_Bush) ideas by allowing users to "comment on and change one another's text."[[2]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Britannica-1)[[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-hypercard-11)

In the early 2000s, wikis were increasingly adopted in enterprise as collaborative software. Common uses included project communication, intranets, and documentation, initially for technical users. Today some [companies use wikis](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Corporate_wiki) as their only collaborative software and as a replacement for static intranets, and some schools and universities use wikis to enhance [group learning](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Group_learning). There may be greater use of wikis behind [firewalls](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Firewall_(computing)) than on the public Internet.

On March 15, 2007, *wiki* entered the online [*Oxford English Dictionary*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Oxford_English_Dictionary).[[13]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-OED1-12)

## Implementations

Wiki software is a type of [collaborative software](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Collaborative_software) that runs a wiki system, allowing web pages to be created and edited using a common web browser. It is usually implemented as an [application server](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Application_server)[[*citation needed*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:Citation_needed)] that runs on one or more [web servers](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Web_server). The content is stored in a [file system](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File_system), and changes to the content are stored in a [relational database management system](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Relational_database_management_system). A commonly implemented software package is [MediaWiki](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/MediaWiki), which runs this encyclopedia. See the [List of wiki software](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_wiki_software) for further information. Alternatively,[personal wikis](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Personal_wiki) run as a standalone application on a single computer. [WikidPad](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/WikidPad) is an example. Or even single local HTML file with JavaScript inside – like [TiddlyWiki](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/TiddlyWiki).

Wikis can also be created on a "[wiki farm](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki_farm)", where the server side software is implemented by the wiki farm owner. [PBwiki](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/PBwiki), [Socialtext](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Socialtext), [Wetpaint](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wetpaint), and [Wikia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikia) are popular examples of such services. Some wiki farms can also make private, password-protected wikis. Note that free wiki farms generally contain advertising on every page. For more information, see[Comparison of wiki farms](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Comparison_of_wiki_farms).

## Trust and security

Wikis are generally designed with the philosophy of making it easy to correct mistakes, rather than making it difficult to make them. Thus, while wikis are very open, they provide a means to verify the validity of recent additions to the body of pages. The most prominent, on almost every wiki, is the "Recent Changes" page—a specific list numbering recent edits, or a list of edits made within a given time frame.[[14]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-13) Some wikis can filter the list to remove minor edits and edits made by automatic importing scripts ("[bots](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Internet_bot)").[[15]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-14)

From the change log, other functions are accessible in most wikis: the [revision history](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Changelog) shows previous page versions and the [diff](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Diff) feature highlights the changes between two revisions. Using the revision history, an editor can view and restore a previous version of the article. The diff feature can be used to decide whether or not this is necessary. A regular wiki user can view the diff of an edit listed on the "Recent Changes" page and, if it is an unacceptable edit, consult the history, restoring a previous revision; this process is more or less streamlined, depending on the wiki software used.[[16]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-15)

In case unacceptable edits are missed on the "recent changes" page, some wiki engines provide additional content control. It can be monitored to ensure that a page, or a set of pages, keeps its quality. A person willing to maintain pages will be warned of modifications to the pages, allowing him or her to verify the validity of new editions quickly.[[17]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-16) A watchlist is a common implementation of this.

Some wikis also implement "patrolled revisions," in which editors with the requisite credentials can mark some edits as not vandalism. A "flagged revisions" system can prevent edits from going live until they have been reviewed.[[18]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-17)

### Trustworthiness

Critics of publicly editable wiki systems argue that these systems could be easily tampered with, while proponents argue that the community of users can catch malicious content and correct it.[[2]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Britannica-1) Lars Aronsson, a data systems specialist, summarizes the controversy as follows:

Most people, when they first learn about the wiki concept, assume that a Web site that can be edited by anybody would soon be rendered useless by destructive input. It sounds like offering free spray cans next to a grey concrete wall. The only likely outcome would be ugly graffiti and simple tagging, and many artistic efforts would not be long lived. Still, it seems to work very well.[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-ebersbach10-8)

High editorial standards in medicine have led to the idea of expert-moderated wikis.[[19]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-18) Some wikis allow one to link to specific versions of articles, which has been useful to the scientific community, in that expert peer reviewers could analyse articles, improve them and provide links to the trusted version of that article.[[20]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-19)

Noveck points out that "participants are accredited by members of the wiki community, who have a vested interest in preserving the quality of the work product, on the basis of their ongoing participation." On controversial topics that have been subject to disruptive editing, a wiki may restrict editing to registered users.[[21]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Noveck-20)

### Trustworthiness

Critics of publicly editable wiki systems argue that these systems could be easily tampered with, while proponents argue that the community of users can catch malicious content and correct it.[[2]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Britannica-1) Lars Aronsson, a data systems specialist, summarizes the controversy as follows:

Most people, when they first learn about the wiki concept, assume that a Web site that can be edited by anybody would soon be rendered useless by destructive input. It sounds like offering free spray cans next to a grey concrete wall. The only likely outcome would be ugly graffiti and simple tagging, and many artistic efforts would not be long lived. Still, it seems to work very well.[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-ebersbach10-8)

High editorial standards in medicine have led to the idea of expert-moderated wikis.[[19]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-18) Some wikis allow one to link to specific versions of articles, which has been useful to the scientific community, in that expert peer reviewers could analyse articles, improve them and provide links to the trusted version of that article.[[20]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-19)

Noveck points out that "participants are accredited by members of the wiki community, who have a vested interest in preserving the quality of the work product, on the basis of their ongoing participation." On controversial topics that have been subject to disruptive editing, a wiki may restrict editing to registered users.[[21]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Noveck-20)

### Security

The open philosophy of most wikis, allowing anyone to edit content, does not ensure that every editor is well-meaning. [Virtual vandalism](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Virtual_vandalism&action=edit&redlink=1) can be a major problem. In larger wiki sites, such as those run by the [Wikimedia Foundation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikimedia_Foundation), [vandalism](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vandalism) can go unnoticed for a period of time. Wikis, because of their open access, are susceptible to intentional disruption, known as "[trolling](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet))". Wikis tend to take a [*soft-security*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Soft_security)[[22]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-soft_security-21) approach to the problem of vandalism; making damage easy to undo rather than attempting to prevent damage. Larger wikis often employ sophisticated methods, such as bots that automatically identify and revert vandalism and JavaScript enhancements that show characters that have been added in each edit. In this way vandalism can be limited to just "minor vandalism" or "sneaky vandalism", where the characters added/eliminated are so few that bots do not identify them and users do not pay much attention to them.[[*citation needed*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:Citation_needed)]

The amount of vandalism a wiki receives depends on how open the wiki is. For instance, some wikis allow unregistered users, identified by their [IP addresses](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/IP_address), to edit content, whilst others limit this function to just registered users. Most wikis allow anonymous editing without an account,[[23]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-22) but give registered users additional editing functions; on most wikis, becoming a registered user is a short and simple process. Some wikis require an additional waiting period before gaining access to certain tools. For example, on the [English Wikipedia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Wikipedia), registered users can rename pages only if their account is at least four days old. Other wikis such as the [Portuguese Wikipedia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Portuguese_Wikipedia) use an editing requirement instead of a time requirement, granting extra tools after the user has made a certain number of edits to prove their trustworthiness and usefulness as an editor. Basically, "closed up" wikis are more secure and reliable but grow slowly, whilst more open wikis grow at a steady rate but result in being an easy target for vandalism. A clear example of this would be [that of Wikipedia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vandalism_of_Wikipedia) and [Citizendium](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Citizendium). The first is extremely open, allowing anyone with a computer and internet access to edit it, making it grow rapidly, whilst the latter requires the users' real name and a biography of themselves, affecting the growth of the wiki but creating an almost "vandalism-free" ambiance.

Edit wars can also occur as users repetitively revert a page to the version they favor. Some wiki software allows an administrator to stop such edit wars by locking a page from further editing until a decision has been made on what version of the page would be most appropriate.[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Legal-5) For example, an article named Dolf was deemed not [notable](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Notability) and after[debate](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Debate) between several users a new article on a more general topic was created called [Dart Golf](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dart_Golf).[[*clarification needed*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:Please_clarify)]

Some wikis are in a better position than others to control behavior due to governance structures existing outside the wiki. For instance, a college teacher can create incentives for students to behave themselves on a class wiki they administer, by limiting editing to logged-in users and pointing out that all contributions can be traced back to the contributors. Bad behavior can then be dealt with in accordance with university policies.[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Augar-7)

#### Potential malware vector

[Malware](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Malware) can also be problem, as users can add links to sites hosting malicious code. For example, a German Wikipedia article about the [Blaster Worm](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Blaster_Worm) was edited to include a hyperlink to a malicious website. Users of vulnerable Microsoft Windows systems who followed the link would be infected.[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Legal-5) A countermeasure is the use of software that prevents users from saving an edit that contains a link to a site listed on a [blacklist](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Blacklist) of malware sites.[[24]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-23)

Many wiki [communities](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Communities) are private, particularly within [enterprises](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Enterprise_software). They are often used as [internal documentation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Internal_documentation) for in-house systems and applications. Some companies use wikis to allow customers to help produce software documentation.[[25]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-24) A study of corporate wiki users found that they could be divided into "synthesizers" and "adders" of content. Synthesizers' frequency of contribution was affected more by their impact on other wiki users, while adders' contribution frequency was affected more by being able to accomplish their immediate work.[[26]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-25) In 2005, the Gartner Group, noting the increasing popularity of wikis, estimated that they would become mainstream collaboration tools in at least 50% of companies by 2009.[[27]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-26) Wikis can be used for [project management](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Project_management).[[28]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-27)[[29]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-28)[[30]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-29)

Wikis have also been used in the academic community for sharing and dissemination of information across institutional and international boundaries.[[31]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-30) In those settings, they have been found useful for collaboration on [grant writing](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Grant_writing), [strategic planning](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Strategic_planning), departmental documentation, and committee work.[[32]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-31) In the mid-2000s, the increasing trend amongst industries toward collaboration was placing a heavier impetus upon educators to make students proficient in collaborative work, inspiring even greater interest in wikis being used in the classroom.[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Legal-5)

Wikis have found some use within the legal profession, and within government. Examples include the [Central Intelligence Agency](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Central_Intelligence_Agency)'s [Intellipedia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Intellipedia), designed to share and collect[intelligence](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Intelligence_assessment), dKospedia, which was used by the [American Civil Liberties Union](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/American_Civil_Liberties_Union) to assist with review of documents pertaining to internment of detainees in [Guantánamo Bay](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Guantánamo_Bay)[[*citation needed*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:Citation_needed)]; and the wiki of the [United States Court of Appeals for the Seventh Circuit](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Court_of_Appeals_for_the_Seventh_Circuit), used to post court rules and allow practitioners to comment and ask questions. The[United States Patent and Trademark Office](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Patent_and_Trademark_Office) uses a wiki to allow the public to collaborate on finding [prior art](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Prior_art) relevant to examination of pending patent applications. [Queens](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Queens), New York has used a wiki to allow citizens to collaborate on the design and planning of a local park. [Cornell Law School](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cornell_Law_School) founded a wiki-based legal dictionary called Wex, whose growth has been hampered by restrictions on who can edit.[[21]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Noveck-20)

There also exist WikiNodes which are pages on wikis that describe related wikis. They are usually organized as neighbors and delegates. A *neighbor* wiki is simply a wiki that may discuss similar content or may otherwise be of interest. A *delegate* wiki is a wiki that agrees to have certain content delegated to that wiki.[[*citation needed*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:Citation_needed)]

One way of finding a wiki on a specific subject is to follow the wiki-node network from wiki to wiki; another is to take a Wiki "bus tour", for example: [Wikipedia's Tour Bus Stop](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:TourBusStop).[Domain names](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Domain_Name_System) containing "wiki" are growing in popularity to support specific niches.[[*citation needed*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:Citation_needed)]

The English Wikipedia has the largest user base among wikis on the [World Wide Web](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/World_Wide_Web)[[33]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-32) and ranks in the top 10 among all Web sites in terms of traffic.[[34]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-33) Other large wikis include the WikiWikiWeb, [Memory Alpha](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Memory_Alpha), [Wikitravel](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikitravel), World66[[*citation needed*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:Citation_needed)] and [Susning.nu](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Susning.nu), a Swedish-language knowledge base.

Medical and health-related wiki examples include [Ganfyd](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ganfyd), an online collaborative medical reference that is edited by medical professionals and invited non-medical experts.[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-BMC-6)

The four basic types of users who participate in wikis are reader, author, wiki administrator and system administrator. The system administrator is responsible for installation and maintenance of the wiki engine and the container web server. The wiki administrator maintains wiki content and is provided additional functions pertaining to pages (e.g. page protection and deletion), and can adjust users' access rights by, for instance, blocking them from editing.[[35]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-34)

### Growth factors

A study of several hundred wikis showed that a relatively high number of administrators for a given content size is likely to reduce growth[[36]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-35); that access controls restricting editing to registered users tends to reduce growth; that a lack of such access controls tends to fuel new user registration; and that higher administration ratios (i.e. admins/user) have no significant effect on content or population growth.[[37]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-36)

## Rules

Wikis typically have a set of rules governing user behavior. Wikipedia, for instance, has an intricate set of policies and guidelines summed up in its five pillars: Wikipedia is an encyclopedia; Wikipedia has a neutral point of view; Wikipedia is free content; Wikipedians should interact in a respectful and civil manner; and Wikipedia does not have firm rules. Many wikis have adopted a set of commandments. For instance, [Conservapedia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Conservapedia) commands, among other things, that its editors use "[B.C.](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Before_Christ)" rather than "[B.C.E.](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/B.C.E.)" when referring to years prior to the common era and refrain from "unproductive activity."[[42]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-41) One teacher instituted a commandment for a class wiki, "[Wiki unto others as you would have them wiki unto you](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Golden_Rule)."[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Augar-7)

## Legal environment

Joint authorship of articles, in which different users participate in correcting, editing, and compiling the finished product, can also cause editors to become [tenants in common](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tenants_in_common) of the copyright, making it impossible to republish without the permission of all co-owners, some of whose identities may be unknown due to pseudonymous or anonymous editing.[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Legal-5)However, where persons contribute to a collective work such as an encyclopedia, there is no joint ownership if the contributions are separate and distinguishable.[[43]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-42) Despite most wikis' tracking of individual contributions, the action of contributing to a wiki page is still arguably one of jointly correcting, editing, or compiling which would give rise to joint ownership.

Some copyright issues can be alleviated through the use of an [open content](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Open_content) license. Version 2 of the [GNU Free Documentation License](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/GNU_Free_Documentation_License) includes a specific provision for wiki relicensing; [Creative Commons](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Creative_Commons) licenses are also popular. When no license is specified, an implied license to read and add content to a wiki may be deemed to exist on the grounds of business necessity and the inherent nature of a wiki, although the legal basis for such an implied license may not exist in all circumstances.

Wikis and their users can be held liable for certain activities that occur on the wiki. If a wiki owner displays indifference and forgoes controls (such as banning copyright infringers) that he could have exercised to stop copyright infringement, he may be deemed to have authorized infringement, especially if the wiki is primarily used to infringe copyrights or obtains direct financial benefit, such as advertising revenue, from infringing activities.[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Legal-5) In the United States, wikis may benefit from Section 230 of the [Communications Decency Act](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Communications_Decency_Act), which protects sites that engage in "[Good Samaritan](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Good_Samaritan)" policing of harmful material, with no requirement on the quality or quantity of such self-policing.[[44]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-43) However, it has also been argued that a wiki's enforcement of certain rules, such as anti-bias, verifiability, reliable sourcing, and no-original-research policies, could pose legal risks.[[45]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-44) When [defamation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Defamation)occurs on a wiki, theoretically all users of the wiki can be held liable, because any of them had the ability to remove or amend the defamatory material from the "publication." It remains to be seen whether wikis will be regarded as more akin to an [internet service provider](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Internet_service_provider), which is generally not held liable due to its lack of control over publications' contents, than a publisher.[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-Legal-5)

It has been recommended that trademark owners monitor what information is presented about their trademarks on wikis, since courts may use such content as evidence pertaining to public perceptions. Joshua Jarvis notes, "Once misinformation is identified, the trade mark owner can simply edit the entry."[[46]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wiki" \l "cite_note-45)

## Etymology

It has been asserted that the verb to *troll* originates from [Old French](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Old_French) *troller*, a hunting term. A verb "trôler" is found in modern French-English dictionaries, where the main meaning given is "to lead, or drag, somebody about". In modern English usage, the verb to [*troll*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Trolling_(fishing)) describes a fishing technique of slowly dragging a lure or baited hook from a moving boat.[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-merriam-webster-6). A similar but distinct verb, "to trawl," describes the act of dragging a fishing net (not a line). Whereas trolling with a fishing line is recreational, trawling with a net is generally a commercial activity.

The noun *troll* comes from the [Old Norse](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Old_Norse) word for a [mythological monster](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll).[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-Online_Etymology_Dictionary-7). The word evokes the trolls of [Scandinavian folklore](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Scandinavian_folklore) and children's tales, where they are often creatures bent on mischief and wickedness. The contemporary use of the term is alleged to have appeared on the Internet in the late 1980s,[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-nyt-8) but the earliest known example is from 1992.[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-oed-9) Early non-Internet related use of *trolling* for actions deliberately performed to provoke a reaction can be found in the military; by 1972 the term *trolling for*[*MiGs*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mikoyan) was documented in use by [US Navy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/US_Navy) pilots in [Vietnam](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vietnam).[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-10)

### Early history

The most likely derivation of the word troll can be found in the phrase "trolling for newbies", popularized in the early 1990s in the [Usenet](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Usenet) group, *alt.folklore.urban* (AFU).[[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-Porter-11)[[13]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-GoogleUsenet-12) This use is lifted from [Polari](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Polari), which means walking about looking partners, especially [trade](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Trade_(gay_slang)). Commonly, what is meant is a relatively gentle inside joke by veteran users, presenting questions or topics that had been so overdone that only a new user would respond to them earnestly. For example, a veteran of the group might make a post on the [common misconception](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_common_misconceptions) that [glass flows over time](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Glass" \l "Behavior_of_antique_glass). Long-time readers would both recognize the poster's name and know that the topic had been discussed a lot, but new subscribers to the group would not realize, and would thus respond. These types of trolls served as a practice to identify group insiders. This definition of trolling, considerably narrower than the modern understanding of the term, was considered a positive contribution.[[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-Porter-11)[[14]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-SDope-13) One of the most notorious AFU trollers, David Mikkelson,[[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-Porter-11) went on to create the urban folklore website [Snopes.com](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Snopes.com).

By the late 1990s, *alt.folklore.urban* had such heavy traffic and participation that trolling of this sort was frowned upon. Others expanded the term to include the practice of playing a seriously misinformed or deluded user, even in [newsgroups](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Newsgroup) where one was not a regular; these were often attempts at humor rather than provocation. In such contexts, the noun*troll* usually referred to an act of trolling, rather than to the author.

### In other languages

In [Icelandic](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Icelandic_language), *[þurs](http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/en:þurs" \l "Icelandic)* (a [thurs](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thurs)) or *[tröll](http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/en:tröll" \l "Icelandic)* (a [troll](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll)) may refer to trolls, the verbs *þursa* (to troll) or *þursast* (to be trolling, to troll about) may be used.

In [Chinese](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chinese_language), trolling is referred to as *bái mù* ([Chinese](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chinese_language): [白目](http://zh.wikipedia.org/wiki/白目); literally "white eye"), which can be straightforwardly explained as "eyes without pupils", in the sense that whilst the [pupil](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pupil)of the eye is used for vision, the white section of the eye cannot see, and trolling involves blindly talking nonsense over the internet, having total disregard to sensitivities or being oblivious to the situation at hand, akin to having eyes without pupils. An alternative term is *bái làn* ([Chinese](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chinese_language): 白爛; literally "white rot"), which describes a post completely nonsensical and full of folly made to upset others, and derives from a Taiwanese slang term for the [male genitalia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Male_genitalia), where genitalia that is pale white in colour represents that someone is young, and thus foolish. Both terms originate from [Taiwan](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Taiwan), and are also used in [Hong Kong](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hong_Kong) and [mainland China](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mainland_China). Another term, *xiǎo bái* ([Chinese](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chinese_language): 小白; literally "little white") is a derogatory term that refers to both *bái mù* and *bái làn* that is used on anonymous posting internet forums.

In [Japanese](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Japanese_language), *[tsuri](http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/en:tsuri" \l "Japanese)* ([釣り](http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/en:釣り" \l "Japanese)[**?**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Help:Installing_Japanese_character_sets)) means "fishing" and refers to intentionally misleading posts whose only purpose is to get the readers to react, i.e. get trolled. *[arashi](http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/en:arashi" \l "Japanese)* ([荒らし](http://en.wiktionary.org/wiki/en:荒らし" \l "Japanese)[**?**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Help:Installing_Japanese_character_sets)) means "laying waste" and can also be used to refer to simple [spamming](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spam_(electronic)).

In [Korean](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Korean_language), *nak-si* (낚시) means "fishing", and is used to refer to Internet trolling attempts, as well as purposefully misleading post titles. A person who recognizes the troll after having responded (or, in case of a post title nak-si, having read the actual post) would often refer to himself as a caught fish.[[*citation needed*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:Citation_needed)]

In [Portuguese](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Portuguese_language), more commonly in its [Brazilian](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Brazilian_Portuguese) variant, [troll](http://pt.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll) (produced [[ˈtɾɔw]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:IPA_for_Portuguese_and_Galician), in Portuguese [spelling pronunciation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spelling_pronunciation)) is the usual term to denote internet trolls (examples of common derivate terms are *trollismo* or *trollagem*, "trolling", and the verb *trollar*, "to troll", which entered popular use), but an older expression, used by those which want to avoid [anglicisms](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anglicism)or [slangs](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Slang), is [*complexo do pombo enxadrista*](http://pt.wikipedia.org/wiki/Complexo_do_pombo_enxadrista) to denote trolling behavior, and *pombos enxadristas* (literally, "chessplayer pigeons") or simply *pombos* are the terms used to name the trolls. The terms are explained by an [adage](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Adage) or popular saying: "Arguing with *[fulano](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Placeholder_names_in_different_languages" \l "Portuguese)* ([John Doe](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Doe) is its nearest equivalent) is the same as playing [chess](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chess) with a [pigeon](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pigeon): the pigeon defecates on the table, drop the pieces and simply [fly](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Flight), claiming victory."

In [Thai](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thai_language), the term "krean" (เกรียน) has been adopted to address Internet trolls. The term literally refers to a closely cropped hairstyle worn by most school boys in Thailand, thus equating Internet trolls to school boys. The term "tob krean" (ตบเกรียน), or "slapping a cropped head", refers to the act of posting intellectual replies to refute and cause the messages of Internet trolls to be perceived as unintelligent.[[*citation needed*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:Citation_needed)]

## Trolling, identity, and anonymity

Early incidences of trolling were considered to be the same as [flaming](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Flaming_(Internet)), but this has changed with modern usage by the news media to refer to the creation of any content that targets another person. The Internet dictionary NetLingo suggests there are four grades of trolling: playtime trolling, tactical trolling, strategic trolling, and domination trolling.[[15]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-14) The relationship between trolling and flaming was observed in open-access forums in California, on a series of modem-linked computers in the 1970s, like *CommuniTree* which when accessed by high school teenagers became a ground for trashing and abuse.[[16]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-guar-15) Some psychologists have suggested that flaming would be caused by [deindividuation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Deindividuation) or decreased self-evaluation: [the anonymity of online postings would lead to disinhibition](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Online_disinhibition_effect) amongst individuals[[17]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-16) Others have suggested that although flaming and trolling is often unpleasant, it may be a form of normative behavior that expresses the [social identity](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Social_identity) of a certain user group [[18]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-17)[[19]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-18) According to Tom Postmes, a professor of social and organisational psychology at the universities of Exeter and Groningen, Netherlands, and the author of *Individuality and the Group*, who has studied online behavior for 20 years, "Trolls aspire to violence, to the level of trouble they can cause in an environment. They want it to kick off. They want to promote antipathetic emotions of disgust and outrage, which morbidly gives them a sense of pleasure."[[16]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-guar-15)

In academic [literature](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Literature), the practice of trolling was first documented by [Judith Donath](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Judith_Donath) (1999). Donath's paper outlines the ambiguity of identity in a disembodied "[virtual community](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Virtual_community)" such as [Usenet](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Usenet):

In the physical world there is an inherent unity to the self, for the body provides a compelling and convenient definition of identity. The norm is: one body, one identity ... The virtual world is different. It is composed of information rather than matter.[[20]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-mit-19)

Donath provides a concise overview of [identity deception](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Identity_deception) games which trade on the confusion between physical and [epistemic community](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Epistemic_community):

Trolling is a game about identity deception, albeit one that is played without the consent of most of the players. The troll attempts to pass as a legitimate participant, sharing the group's common interests and concerns; the newsgroups members, if they are cognizant of trolls and other identity deceptions, attempt to both distinguish real from trolling postings, and upon judging a poster a troll, make the offending poster leave the group. Their success at the former depends on how well they – and the troll – understand identity cues; their success at the latter depends on whether the troll's enjoyment is sufficiently diminished or outweighed by the costs imposed by the group. Trolls can be costly in several ways. A troll can disrupt the discussion on a newsgroup, disseminate bad advice, and damage the feeling of trust in the newsgroup community. Furthermore, in a group that has become sensitized to trolling – where the rate of deception is high – many honestly naïve questions may be quickly rejected as trollings. This can be quite off-putting to the new user who upon venturing a first posting is immediately bombarded with angry accusations. Even if the accusation is unfounded, being branded a troll is quite damaging to one's online reputation.[[20]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-mit-19)

Susan Herring and colleagues in "Searching for Safety Online: Managing 'Trolling' in a Feminist Forum" point out the difficulty inherent in monitoring trolling and maintaining freedom of speech in online communities: "harassment often arises in spaces known for their freedom, lack of censure, and experimental nature".[[21]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-IUinformatics-20) Free speech may lead to tolerance of trolling behavior, complicating the members' efforts to maintain an open, yet supportive discussion area, especially for sensitive topics such as race, gender, and sexuality.[[21]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-IUinformatics-20)

In an effort to reduce uncivil behavior by increasing accountability, many we

## Troll sites

While many webmasters and forum administrators consider trolls a scourge on their sites, some websites welcome them. For example, a [*New York Times*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/New_York_Times) article discussed troll activity at [4chan](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/4chan) and at [Encyclopedia Dramatica](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Encyclopedia_Dramatica), which it described as "an online compendium of troll humor and troll lore".[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-nyt-8) This site and others are often used as a base to troll against sites that their members can not normally post on. These trolls feed off the reactions of their victims because "their agenda is to take delight in causing trouble".[[28]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-foxsp-27)

## Media coverage and controversy

Mainstream media outlets have focused their attention on the willingness of some Internet trolls to go to extreme lengths in their attempts at eliciting reactions.

### United States

On March 31, 2010, the [*Today Show*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Today_(NBC_program)) ran a segment detailing the deaths of three separate adolescent girls and trolls' subsequent reactions to their deaths. Shortly after the suicide of high school student Alexis Pilkington, anonymous posters began trolling for reactions across various message boards, referring to Pilkington as a "suicidal slut", and posting graphic images on her [Facebook](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Facebook) memorial page. The segment also included an expose of [a 2006 accident](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Nikki_Catsouras_photographs_controversy), in which an eighteen-year old fatally crashed her father's car into a highway pylon; trolls emailed her grieving family the leaked pictures of her mutilated corpse.[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-Trolling:TheTodayShowExplorestheDarkSideoftheInternet-5)

### Australia

In February 2010, the Australian government became involved after trolls defaced the Facebook tribute pages of murdered children Trinity Bates and Elliott Fletcher. Australian communications minister [Stephen Conroy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stephen_Conroy) decried the attacks, committed mainly by 4chan users, as evidence of the need for greater Internet regulation, stating, "This argument that the Internet is some mystical creation that no laws should apply to, that is a recipe for anarchy and the wild west."[[29]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-28) Conroy has been noted in the past for his advocacy of Internet censorship. In the wake of these events, Facebook responded by strongly urging administrators to be aware of ways to ban users and remove inappropriate content from Facebook pages.[[30]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-29)

### United Kingdom

In the United Kingdom, contributions made to the Internet are covered by the [Communications Act 2003](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Communications_Act_2003). Sending messages which are "grossly offensive or of an indecent, obscene or menacing character" is an offense whether they are received by the intended recipient or not.[[31]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-30) As of September 2011, two persons have been imprisoned in the UK for trolling.[[32][32]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-Tom_de_Castella_and_Virginia_Brown-31) Several high profile cases of trolling have been reported in the United Kingdom, with there being wide disparity between the action taken against assailants. In the case of teenager, Natasha MacBryde, who died a tragic death, the troll of her testimonial page, Sean Duffy, was sentenced to 18 weeks in prison and banned from using social networking sites for five years. [[33]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-32) This compared with Jamie Counsel being sentenced to four years for trying to incite riots [[34]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-33) and those who trolled the testimonial page of Georgia Varley facing no prosecution due to misunderstandings of the legal system in the wake of the term trolling being popularized [[35]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-34)

## Usage

Application of the term *troll* is [subjective](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Subjectivity). Some readers may characterize a post as *trolling*, while others may regard the same post as a legitimate contribution to the discussion, even if controversial. Like any [pejorative](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pejorative) term, it can be used as an [*ad hominem*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ad_hominem) attack, suggesting a negative motivation.

Regardless of the circumstances, controversial posts may attract a particularly strong response from those unfamiliar with the robust dialogue found in some online, rather than physical, communities. Experienced participants in online forums know that the most effective way to discourage a troll is usually to ignore it, because responding tends to encourage trolls to continue disruptive posts – hence the often-seen warning: "Please do not feed the trolls".

## Examples

As reported on April 8, 1999, investors became victims of trolling via an online financial discussion regarding PairGain, a telephone equipment company based in California. Trolls operating in the stock’s [Yahoo Finance](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yahoo) chat room posted a fabricated [Bloomberg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bloomberg_Television) News article stating that an Israeli telecom company could potentially acquire PairGain. As a result, PairGain’s stock jumped by 31%. However, the stock promptly crashed after the reports were identified as false.[[36]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-Bond-35)

So-called Gold Membership trolling originated in 2007 on [4chan](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/4chan) boards, users posting fake images claiming to offer upgraded 4chan account privileges; without a "Gold" account, one could not view certain content. This turned out to be a hoax designed to fool board members, especially newcomers. It was copied and became an [Internet meme](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Internet_meme). In some cases, this type of troll has been used as a scam, most notably on Facebook, where fake Facebook Gold Account upgrade ads have proliferated in order to link users to dubious websites and other content.[[37]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-36)

The case of [*Zeran v. America Online, Inc.*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Zeran_v._America_Online,_Inc.) resulted primarily from trolling. Six days after the [Oklahoma City bombing](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Oklahoma_City_bombing), anonymous users posted advertisements for shirts celebrating the bombing on AOL message boards, claiming that the shirts could be obtained by contacting Mr. Kenneth Zeran. The posts listed Zeran's address and home phone number. Zeran was subsequently harassed.[[36]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-Bond-35)

[Anti-Scientology](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Criticism_of_Scientology) protests by [Anonymous](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anonymous_(group)), commonly known as [Project Chanology](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Project_Chanology), are sometimes labeled as "trolling" by media such as [*Wired*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wired_magazine),[[38]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-37) and the participants sometimes explicitly self-identify as "trolls".

On February 3, 2007 the [Gay Nigger Association of America](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gay_Nigger_Association_of_America) (GNAA), an Internet trolling group, successfully managed to convince CNN reporter [Paula Zahn](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Paula_Zahn) that "one in three Americans" believe that the [September 11, 2001 terror attacks](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/September_11_attacks) were [carried out by Israeli agents](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/9/11_conspiracy_theories" \l "Israel). [[39]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-CNN3-38) CNN subsequently ran a story, erroneously reporting this, as well as including screenshots of the GNAA-owned website "jewsdidwtc.com". The story involved a round-table discussion regarding antisemitism and an interview with the father of a Jewish 9/11 victim. [[40]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-CNN2-39) The GNAA-owned website said that "over 4,000" Jews were absent from work at the World Trade Center on 9/11.[[40]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-CNN2-39) A *concern troll* is a [false flag](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/False_flag) pseudonym created by a user whose actual [point of view](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Perspective_(cognitive)) is opposed to the one that the user claims to hold. The concern troll posts in Web forums devoted to its declared point of view and attempts to sway the group's actions or opinions while claiming to [share their goals](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ingroup_bias), but with professed "concerns". The goal is to sow [fear, uncertainty and doubt](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fear,_uncertainty_and_doubt) within the group.[[23]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-timemag-22)

An example of this occurred in 2006 when Tad Furtado, a staffer for then-Congressman [Charles Bass](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles_Bass) ([R](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Republican_Party_(United_States))-[NH](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/New_Hampshire)), was caught posing as a "concerned" supporter of Bass's opponent,[Democrat](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic_Party_(United_States)) [Paul Hodes](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Paul_Hodes), on several liberal [New Hampshire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/New_Hampshire) blogs, using the pseudonyms "IndieNH" or "IndyNH". "IndyNH" expressed concern that Democrats might just be wasting their time or money on Hodes, because Bass was unbeatable.[[24]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-ConcordMonitor-23)[[25]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-WMUR-24) Hodes eventually won the election.

Although the term "concern troll" originated in discussions of online behavior, it now sees increasing use to describe similar behaviors that take place offline. For example, James Wolcott of *Vanity Fair* accused a conservative [*New York Daily News*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/New_York_Daily_News) columnist of "concern troll" behavior in his efforts to downplay the [Mark Foley scandal](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mark_Foley_scandal). Wolcott links what he calls concern trolls to what [Saul Alinsky](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Saul_Alinsky) calls "Do-Nothings", giving a long quote from Alinsky on the Do-Nothings' method and effects:

These Do-Nothings profess a commitment to social change for ideals of justice, equality, and opportunity, and then abstain from and discourage all effective action for change. They are known by their brand, 'I agree with your ends but not your means.'[[26]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-vanfair-25)

[*The Hill*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Hill_(newspaper)) published an op-ed piece by [Markos Moulitsas](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Markos_Moulitsas) of the liberal blog [Daily Kos](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Daily_Kos) titled "Dems: Ignore 'Concern Trolls'". The concern trolls in question were not Internet participants; they were Republicans offering public advice and warnings to the Democrats. The author defines "concern trolling" as "offering a poisoned apple in the form of advice to political opponents that, if taken, would harm the recipient".[[27]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-thehill-26)

## Media coverage and controversy

Mainstream media outlets have focused their attention on the willingness of some Internet trolls to go to extreme lengths in their attempts at eliciting reactions.

### United States

On March 31, 2010, the [*Today Show*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Today_(NBC_program)) ran a segment detailing the deaths of three separate adolescent girls and trolls' subsequent reactions to their deaths. Shortly after the suicide of high school student Alexis Pilkington, anonymous posters began trolling for reactions across various message boards, referring to Pilkington as a "suicidal slut", and posting graphic images on her [Facebook](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Facebook) memorial page. The segment also included an expose of [a 2006 accident](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Nikki_Catsouras_photographs_controversy), in which an eighteen-year old fatally crashed her father's car into a highway pylon; trolls emailed her grieving family the leaked pictures of her mutilated corpse.[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-Trolling:TheTodayShowExplorestheDarkSideoftheInternet-5)

### Australia

In February 2010, the Australian government became involved after trolls defaced the Facebook tribute pages of murdered children Trinity Bates and Elliott Fletcher. Australian communications minister [Stephen Conroy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stephen_Conroy) decried the attacks, committed mainly by 4chan users, as evidence of the need for greater Internet regulation, stating, "This argument that the Internet is some mystical creation that no laws should apply to, that is a recipe for anarchy and the wild west."[[29]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-28) Conroy has been noted in the past for his advocacy of Internet censorship. In the wake of these events, Facebook responded by strongly urging administrators to be aware of ways to ban users and remove inappropriate content from Facebook pages.[[30]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-29)

### United Kingdom

In the United Kingdom, contributions made to the Internet are covered by the [Communications Act 2003](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Communications_Act_2003). Sending messages which are "grossly offensive or of an indecent, obscene or menacing character" is an offense whether they are received by the intended recipient or not.[[31]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-30) As of September 2011, two persons have been imprisoned in the UK for trolling.[[32][32]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-Tom_de_Castella_and_Virginia_Brown-31) Several high profile cases of trolling have been reported in the United Kingdom, with there being wide disparity between the action taken against assailants. In the case of teenager, Natasha MacBryde, who died a tragic death, the troll of her testimonial page, Sean Duffy, was sentenced to 18 weeks in prison and banned from using social networking sites for five years. [[33]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-32) This compared with Jamie Counsel being sentenced to four years for trying to incite riots [[34]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-33) and those who trolled the testimonial page of Georgia Varley facing no prosecution due to misunderstandings of the legal system in the wake of the term trolling being popularized [[35]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-34)

## Usage

Application of the term *troll* is [subjective](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Subjectivity). Some readers may characterize a post as *trolling*, while others may regard the same post as a legitimate contribution to the discussion, even if controversial. Like any [pejorative](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pejorative) term, it can be used as an [*ad hominem*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ad_hominem) attack, suggesting a negative motivation.

Regardless of the circumstances, controversial posts may attract a particularly strong response from those unfamiliar with the robust dialogue found in some online, rather than physical, communities. Experienced participants in online forums know that the most effective way to discourage a troll is usually to ignore it, because responding tends to encourage trolls to continue disruptive posts – hence the often-seen warning: "Please do not feed the trolls".

## Examples

As reported on April 8, 1999, investors became victims of trolling via an online financial discussion regarding PairGain, a telephone equipment company based in California. Trolls operating in the stock’s [Yahoo Finance](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yahoo) chat room posted a fabricated [Bloomberg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bloomberg_Television) News article stating that an Israeli telecom company could potentially acquire PairGain. As a result, PairGain’s stock jumped by 31%. However, the stock promptly crashed after the reports were identified as false.[[36]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-Bond-35)

So-called Gold Membership trolling originated in 2007 on [4chan](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/4chan) boards, users posting fake images claiming to offer upgraded 4chan account privileges; without a "Gold" account, one could not view certain content. This turned out to be a hoax designed to fool board members, especially newcomers. It was copied and became an [Internet meme](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Internet_meme). In some cases, this type of troll has been used as a scam, most notably on Facebook, where fake Facebook Gold Account upgrade ads have proliferated in order to link users to dubious websites and other content.[[37]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-36)

The case of [*Zeran v. America Online, Inc.*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Zeran_v._America_Online,_Inc.) resulted primarily from trolling. Six days after the [Oklahoma City bombing](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Oklahoma_City_bombing), anonymous users posted advertisements for shirts celebrating the bombing on AOL message boards, claiming that the shirts could be obtained by contacting Mr. Kenneth Zeran. The posts listed Zeran's address and home phone number. Zeran was subsequently harassed.[[36]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-Bond-35)

[Anti-Scientology](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Criticism_of_Scientology) protests by [Anonymous](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anonymous_(group)), commonly known as [Project Chanology](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Project_Chanology), are sometimes labeled as "trolling" by media such as [*Wired*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wired_magazine),[[38]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-37) and the participants sometimes explicitly self-identify as "trolls".

On February 3, 2007 the [Gay Nigger Association of America](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gay_Nigger_Association_of_America) (GNAA), an Internet trolling group, successfully managed to convince CNN reporter [Paula Zahn](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Paula_Zahn) that "one in three Americans" believe that the [September 11, 2001 terror attacks](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/September_11_attacks) were [carried out by Israeli agents](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/9/11_conspiracy_theories" \l "Israel). [[39]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-CNN3-38) CNN subsequently ran a story, erroneously reporting this, as well as including screenshots of the GNAA-owned website "jewsdidwtc.com". The story involved a round-table discussion regarding antisemitism and an interview with the father of a Jewish 9/11 victim. [[40]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-CNN2-39) The GNAA-owned website said that "over 4,000" Jews were absent from work at the World Trade Center on 9/11.[[40]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)" \l "cite_note-CNN2-39)

## See also

The term "cyberbullying" is attributed to anti-bullying activist [Bill Belsey](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bill_Belsey).[[1]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-Cyberbullying.org-0)

### Legal definition

Cyberbullying is defined in legal glossaries as

* actions that use information and communication technologies to support deliberate, repeated, and hostile behavior by an individual or group, that is intended to harm another or others.
* use of communication technologies for the intention of harming another person
* use of internet service and mobile technologies such as web pages and discussion groups as well as instant messaging or [SMS](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/SMS) text messaging with the intention of harming another person.

Examples of what constitutes cyberbullying include communications that seek to intimidate, control, manipulate, put down, falsely discredit, or humiliate the recipient. The actions are deliberate, repeated, and hostile behavior intended to harm another. Cyberbullying has been defined by [The National Crime Prevention Council](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_National_Crime_Prevention_Council): “when the Internet, cell phones or other devices are used to send or post text or images intended to hurt or embarrass another person.[[2]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-1)[[3]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-2)

A cyberbully may be a person whom the target knows or an online stranger. A cyberbully may be anonymous and may solicit involvement of other people online who do not even know the target.

### Cyberbullying vs. cyberstalking

Further information: [*Cyberstalking*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyberstalking)

The practice of cyberbullying is not limited children and, while the behavior is identified by the same definition when practiced by adults, the distinction in age groups sometimes refers to the abuse as [cyberstalking](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyberstalking) or [cyberharassment](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyberharassment) when perpetrated by adults toward adults. Common tactics used by cyberstalkers are performed in public forums, social media or online information sites and are intended to threaten a victim's earnings, employment, reputation, or safety. Behaviors may include encouraging others to harass the victim and trying to affect a victim's online participation. Many cyberstalkers try to damage the reputation of their victim and turn other people against them.

Cyberstalking may include false accusations, monitoring, making threats, identity theft, damage to data or equipment, the solicitation of minors for sex, or gathering information in order to harass. A repeated pattern of such actions and [harassment](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Harassment) against a target by an adult constitutes cyberstalking.[[4]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-3) There are consequences of law in offline stalking and online stalking, and cyber-stalkers can be put in jail.[[5]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-4) Cyberstalking is a form of cyberbullying.

### Methods used

Manuals to educate the public, teachers and parents summarize, "Cyberbullying is being cruel to others by sending or posting harmful material using a cell phone or the internet." Research, legislation and education in the field are ongoing. Basic definitions and guidelines to help recognize and cope with what is regarded as abuse of electronic communications have been identified.

* Cyberbullying involves repeated behavior with intent to harm and repeated nature
* Cyberbullying is perpetrated through [Harassment](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Harassment), [Cyberstalking](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyberstalking), Denigration (sending or posting cruel rumors and falsehoods to damage reputation and friendships),[Impersonation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Impersonation), Exclusion (intentionally and cruelly excluding someone from an online group)[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-5)

Cyberbullying can be as simple as continuing to send e-mail or text harassing someone who has said they want no further contact with the sender. It may also include public actions such as repeated [threats](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Threat), sexual remarks, pejorative labels (i.e., [hate speech](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hate_speech)) or defamatory false accusations), ganging up on a victim by making the person the subject of ridicule in online forums, hacking into or vandalizing sites about a person, and posting false statements as fact aimed a discrediting or humiliating a targeted person. Cyberbullying could be limited to posting rumors about a person on the internet with the intention of bringing about hatred in others' minds or convincing others to dislike or participate in online denigration of a target. It may go to the extent of personally identifying victims of crime and publishing materials severely defaming or humiliating them.[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-6)

Cyberbullies may disclose victims' personal data (e.g. real name, home address, or workplace/schools) at websites or forums or may use [impersonation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Impersonation), creating fake accounts, comments or sites posing as their target for the purpose of publishing material in their name that defames, discredits or ridicules them.

Some cyberbullies may also send threatening and harassing emails, instant messages or texts to the victims. Others post rumors or gossip and instigate others to dislike and gang up on the target.

### Growing awareness

The term "cyberbullying" was first coined and defined by Canadian educator and anti-bullying activist [Bill Belsey](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bill_Belsey), as "the use of information and communication technologies to support deliberate, repeated, and hostile behavior by an individual or group, that is intended to harm others."[[1]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-Cyberbullying.org-0)

Cyberbullying has subsequently been defined as "when the Internet, cell phones or other devices are used to send or post text or images intended to hurt or embarrass another person".[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-7) Other researchers use similar language to describe the phenomenon.[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-8)[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin-9)

## Law enforcement: cyberbullying, cyberstalking and electronic harassment

A majority of states have laws that explicitly include electronic forms of communication within stalking or harassment laws.[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-10)[[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-11)

Most law enforcement agencies have cyber-crime units and often Internet stalking is treated with more seriousness than reports of physical stalking.[[13]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-12) Help and resources can be searched by State or area.

### Schools

The safety of schools is increasingly becoming a focus of state legislative action. There was an increase in cyberbullying enacted legislation between 2006-2010.[[14]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-13)

In 2012, a group of teens in New Haven, Connecticut developed an app to help fight bullying. Called "Back Off Bully" (BOB), the web app is an anonymous resource for computer, smart phone or iPad. When someone witnesses or is the victim of bullying, they can immediately report the incident. The app asks questions about time, location and how the bullying is happening. As well as providing positive action and empowerment over an incident, the reported information helps by going to a data base where administrators study it. Common threads are spotted so others can intervene and break the bully's pattern.[[15]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-14) BOB, the brainchild of fourteen teens in a design class, is being considered as standard operating procedure at schools across the state.

### Protection for victims of any age

There are laws that only address online harassment of children or focus on child predators as well as laws that protect adult cyberstalking victims, or victims of any age. Currently, there are 45 cyberstalking (and related) laws on the books.

While some sites specialize in laws that protect victims age 18 and under, Working to Halt Online Abuse is a help resource containing a list of current and pending cyberstalking-related United States federal and state laws.[[16]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-15) It also lists those states that do not have laws yet and related laws from other countries. The Global Cyber Law Database (GCLD) aims to become the most comprehensive and authoritative source of cyber laws for all countries.[[17]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-16)

## Behavior

### Children and adolescents

Kids report being mean to each other online beginning as young as 2nd grade. According to research, boys initiate mean online activity earlier than girls do. However, by middle school, girls are more likely to engage in cyberbullying than boys do.[[18]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-17) Whether the bully is male or female, his or her purpose is to intentionally embarrass others, harass, intimidate, or make threats online to one another. This bullying occurs via email, text messaging, posts to blogs, and web sites.

The National Crime Prevention Association lists tactics often used by teen cyberbullies.[[19]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-18)

* Pretend they are other people online to trick others
* Spread lies and rumors about victims
* Trick people into revealing personal information
* Send or forward mean text messages
* Post pictures of victims without their consent

Studies in the psychosocial effects of cyberspace have begun to monitor the impacts cyberbullying may have on the victims, and the consequences it may lead to. Consequences of cyberbullying are multi-faceted, and affect online and offline behavior. Research on adolescents reported that changes in the victims' behavior as a result of cyberbullying could be positive. Victims "created a cognitive pattern of bullies, which consequently helped them to recognize aggressive people."[[20]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-19) However, the Journal of Psychosocial Research on Cyberspace abstract reports critical impacts in almost all of the respondents’, taking the form of lower self-esteem, loneliness, disillusionment, and distrust of people. The more extreme impacts were self-harm. Children have killed each other and committed suicide after having been involved in a cyberbullying incident.[[21]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-20)

The most current research in the field defines cyberbullying as "an aggressive, intentional act or behaviour that is carried out by a group or an individual repeatedly and over time against a victim who cannot easily defend him or herself" (Smith & Slonje, 2007, p. 249). [[22]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-21) Though the use of sexual remarks and threats are sometimes present in cyberbullying, it is not the same as sexual harassment, typically occurs among peers, and does not necessarily involve [sexual predators](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sexual_predators).

### Adults

Stalking online has criminal consequences just as physical stalking. A target's understanding of why cyberstalking is happening is helpful to remedy and take protective action to restore remedy. Cyberstalking is an extension of physical stalking.[[23]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-22) Among factors that motivate stalkers are: [envy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Envy), pathological obsession (professional or sexual), unemployment or failure with own job or life; intention to intimidate and cause others to feel inferior; the stalker is [delusional](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Delusional) and believes he/she "knows" the target; the stalker wants to instill fear in a person to justify his/her status; belief they can get away with it (anonymity).[[24]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-23)[[25]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-24) UK National Workplace Bullying Advice Line theorizes that bullies harass victims in order to make up for inadequacies in their own lives.[[26]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-25)

The US federal cyberstalking law is designed to prosecute people for using electronic means to repeatedly harass or threaten someone online. There are resources dedicated to assisting adult victims deal with cyberbullies legally and effectively. One of the steps recommended is to record everything and contact police.[[27]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-26) [[28]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-27)

## Research

In the summer of 2008, researchers Sameer Hinduja ([Florida Atlantic University](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Florida_Atlantic_University)) and Justin Patchin ([University of Wisconsin-Eau Claire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Wisconsin-Eau_Claire)) published a book on cyber-bullying that summarized the current state of cyber-bullying research. (*Bullying Beyond the Schoolyard: Preventing and Responding to Cyberbullying*).[[29]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin3-28) Their research documents that cyber-bullying instances have been increasing over the last several years. They also report findings from the most recent study of cyber-bullying among middle-school students. Using a random sample of approximately 2000 middle-school students from a large school district in the southern United States, about 10% of respondents had been cyber-bullied in the previous 30 days while over 17% reported being cyber-bullied at least once in their lifetime.[[29]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin3-28) While these rates are slightly lower than some of the findings from their previous research, Hinduja and Patchin point out that the earlier studies were predominantly conducted among older adolescents and Internet samples. That is, older youth use the Internet more frequently and are more likely to experience cyber-bullying than younger children.[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin-9)[[30]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin1-29)[[31]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin2-30)  
In addition to the current research, Sourander et al. (2010) conducted a population-based cross-sectional study that took place in Finland. The authors of this study took the self-reports of 2215 Finish adolescents between the ages of 13 to 16 years old about cyberbullying and cybervictimization during the past 6 months. It was found that, amongst the total sample, 4.8% were cybervictims only, 7.4% were cyberbullies only, and 5.4% were cyberbully-victims. Cybervictim-only status was associated with a variety of factors, including emotional and peer problems, sleeping difficulties, and feeling unsafe in school. Cyberbully-only status was associated with factors such as hyperactivity and low prosocial behavior, as well as conduct problems. Cyberbully-victim status was associated with all of the risk factors that were associated with both cybervictim-only status and cyberbully-only status. The authors of this study were able to conclude that cyberbullying as well as cybervictimization is associated not only with psychiatric issues, but psychosomatic issues. Many adolescents in the study reported headaches or difficulty sleeping. The authors believe that their results indicate a greater need for new ideas on how to prevent cyberbullying and what to do when it occurs. It is clearly a world-wide problem that needs to be taken seriously.[[32]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-31)

### Surveys and statistics

* 58% have not told their parents or an adult about something mean or hurtful that happened to them online.

A 2006 survey by Harris Interactive[[36]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-35) reported:

* 43% of U.S. teens having experienced some form of cyber-bullying in the past year.

Similarly, a Canadian study found:

* 23% of middle-schoolers surveyed had been bullied by e-mail
* 35% in chat rooms
* 41% by text messages on their cell phones
* Fully 41% did not know the identity of the perpetrators.

The Youth Internet Safety Survey-2, conducted by the Crimes Against Children Research Center at the [University of New Hampshire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_New_Hampshire) in 2005, found that 9% of the young people in the survey had experienced some form of harassment.[[37]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-ccrc-36) The survey was a nationally representative telephone survey of 1,500 youth 10–17 years old. One third reported feeling distressed by the incident, with distress being more likely for younger respondents and those who were the victims of aggressive harassment (including being telephoned, sent gifts, or visited at home by the harasser).[[38]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-ybarra-37) Compared to youth not harassed online, victims are more likely to have social problems. On the other hand, youth who harass others are more likely to have problems with rule breaking and aggression.[[39]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-ybarra2-38) Significant overlap is seen — youth who are harassed are significantly more likely to also harass others.

Hinduja and Patchin completed a study in the summer of 2005 of approximately 1,500 Internet-using adolescents and found that over one-third of youth reported being victimized online, and over 16% of respondents admitted to cyber-bullying others. While most of the instances of cyber-bullying involved relatively minor behavior (41% were disrespected, 19% were called names), over 12% were physically threatened and about 5% were scared for their safety. Notably, fewer than 15% of victims told an adult about the incident.[[30]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin1-29)

Additional research by Hinduja and Patchin[[31]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin2-30) found that youth who report being victims of cyber-bullying also experience stress or strain that is related to offline problem behaviors such as running away from home, cheating on a school test, skipping school, or using alcohol or marijuana. The authors acknowledge that both of these studies provide only preliminary information about the nature and consequences of online bullying, due to the methodological challenges associated with an online survey.

According to a 2005 survey by the [National Children's Home](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/NCH) charity and [Tesco Mobile](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tesco_Mobile)[[40]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-survey-39) of 770 youth between the ages of 11 and 19, 20% of respondents revealed that they had been bullied via electronic means. Almost three-quarters (73%) stated that they knew the bully, while 26% stated that the offender was a stranger. 10% of responders indicated that another person has taken a picture and/or video of them via a [cellular phone camera](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Camera_phone), consequently making them feel uncomfortable, embarrassed, or threatened. Many youths are not comfortable telling an authority figure about their cyber-bullying [victimization](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Victimization) for fear their access to technology will be taken from them; while 24% and 14% told a parent or teacher respectively, 28% did not tell anyone while 41% told a friend.[[40]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-survey-39)

A survey by the Crimes Against Children Research Center at the [University of New Hampshire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_New_Hampshire) in 2000 found that 6% of the young people in the survey had experienced some form of harassment including threats and negative rumours and 2% had suffered distressing harassment.[[37]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-ccrc-36)

Reporting on the results from a meta analysis from European Union countries, Hasebrink et al. (2009)[[41]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-Hasebrink-40) estimated (via median results) that approximately 18% of European young people had been "bullied/harassed/stalked" via the internet and mobile phones. Cyber-harassment rates for young people across the EU member states ranged from 10% to 52%.

The nation-wide Australian Covert Bullying Prevalence Survey (Cross et al., 2009)[[42]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-ACBPS-41) assessed cyber-bullying experiences among 7,418 students. Rates of cyber-bullying increased with age, with 4.9% of students in Year 4 reporting cyberbullying compared to 7.9% in year nine. Cross et al., (2009) reported that rates of bullying and harassing others were lower, but also increased with age. Only 1.2% of Year 4 students reported cyber-bullying others compared to 5.6% of Year 9 students.

## Comparison to traditional bullying

Certain characteristics inherent in online technologies increase the likelihood that they will be exploited for deviant purposes.[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin-9) Unlike physical bullying, electronic bullies can remain virtually anonymous using temporary email accounts, pseudonyms in chat rooms, instant messaging programs, cell-phone text messaging, and other Internet venues to mask their identity; this perhaps frees them from normative and social constraints on their behavior.

Additionally, electronic forums often lack supervision. While chat hosts regularly observe the dialog in some chat rooms in an effort to police conversations and evict offensive individuals, personal messages sent between users (such as electronic mail or text messages) are viewable only by the sender and the recipient, thereby outside the regulatory reach of such authorities. In addition, when teenagers know more about computers and cellular phones than their parents or guardians, they are therefore able to operate the technologies without concern that a parent will discover their experience with bullying (whether as a victim or offender).

Another factor is the inseparability of a cellular phone from its owner, making that person a perpetual target for victimization. Users often need to keep their phone turned on for legitimate purposes, which provides the opportunity for those with malicious intentions to engage in persistent unwelcome behavior such as harassing telephone calls or threatening and insulting statements via the cellular phone’s text messaging capabilities. Cyberbullying thus penetrates the walls of a home, traditionally a place where victims could seek refuge from other forms of bullying. Compounding this infiltration into the home life of the cyberbully victim is the unique way in which the internet can "create simultaneous sensations of exposure (the whole world is watching) and alienation (no one understands)."[[43]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-42) For youth who experience shame or self-hatred, this effect is dangerous because it can lead to extreme self isolation.

Moreover, bullies can gang up on their victims on electronic pages more efficiently than they do in traditional bullying, since there is no limit to the number of people who can join in, following a bullying statement.[[44]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-konsiderit-43)

One possible advantage for victims of cyberbullying over traditional bullying is that they may sometimes be able to avoid it simply by avoiding the site/chat room in question. Email addresses and phone numbers can be changed; in addition, most e-mail accounts now offer services that will automatically filter out messages from certain senders before they even reach the inbox, and phones offer similar caller ID functions.

However, this does not protect against all forms of cyberbullying; publishing of defamatory material about a person on the internet is extremely difficult to prevent and once it is posted, millions of people can potentially download it before it is removed. Some perpetrators may post victims' photos, or victims' edited photos like defaming captions or pasting victims' faces on nude bodies. Examples of famous forums for disclosing personal data or photos to "punish" the "enemies" include the [Hong Kong Golden Forum](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hong_Kong_Golden_Forum), [Live Journal](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Live_Journal), and more recently [JuicyCampus](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/JuicyCampus). Despite policies that describe cyberbullying as a violation of the terms of service, many social networking Web sites have been used to that end.[[45]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-44)

## Legislation against cyberbullying

Main article: [*Cyberstalking legislation*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyberstalking_legislation)

### United States

Legislation geared at penalizing cyberbullying has been introduced in a number of U.S. states including New York, Missouri, Rhode Island and Maryland. At least seven states passed laws against digital harassment in 2007. Dardenne Prairie of Springfield, Missouri, passed a city ordinance making online harassment a misdemeanor. The city of St. Charles, Missouri has passed a similar ordinance. Missouri is among other states where lawmakers are pursuing state legislation, with a task forces expected to have “cyberbullying” laws drafted and implemented.[[46]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-45) In June, 2008, Rep. Linda Sanchez (D-Calif.) and Rep. Kenny Hulshof (R-Mo.) proposed a federal law that would criminalize acts of cyberbullying.[[47]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-46)

Lawmakers are seeking to address cyberbullying with new legislation because there's currently no specific law on the books that deals with it. A fairly new federal cyberstalking law might address such acts, according to [Parry Aftab](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Parry_Aftab), but no one has been prosecuted under it yet. The proposed federal law would make it illegal to use electronic means to "coerce, intimidate, harass or cause other substantial emotional distress."

In August 2008, the California state legislature passed one of the first laws in the country to deal directly with cyberbullying. The legislation, [Assembly Bill 86 2008](http://info.sen.ca.gov/pub/07-08/bill/asm/ab_0051-0100/ab_86_cfa_20080115_125502_asm_comm.html), gives school administrators the authority to discipline students for bullying others offline or online.[[48]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-47) This law took effect, January 1, 2009.[[49]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-48)

A recent ruling first seen in the UK determined that it is possible for an [Internet Service Provider](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Internet_Service_Provider) (ISP) to be liable for the content of sites which it hosts, setting a precedent that any ISP should treat a notice of complaint seriously and investigate it immediately.[[50]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-49)

[18 U.S.C.](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Title_18_of_the_United_States_Code) [§ 875(c)](http://www.law.cornell.edu/uscode/18/875.html" \l "c) criminalizes the making of threats via Internet.

## Harmful effects

Research had demonstrated a number of serious consequences of cyberbullying victimization.[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin-9)[[29]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin3-28)[[30]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin1-29)[[31]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin2-30) For example, victims have lower self-esteem, increased suicidal ideation, and a variety of emotional responses, retaliating, being scared, frustrated, angry, and depressed.[[29]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin3-28)

One of the most damaging effects is that a victim begins to avoid friends and activities, often the very intention of the cyber-bully.

Cyberbullying campaigns are sometimes so damaging that victims have committed suicide. There are at least four examples in the United States where cyber-bullying has been linked to the suicide of a teenager.[[29]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-patchin3-28) The [suicide of Megan Meier](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Suicide_of_Megan_Meier) is a recent example that led to the conviction of the adult perpetrator of the attacks.

### Intimidation, emotional damage, suicide

According to the Cyberbullying Research Center, "there have been several high‐profile cases involving teenagers taking their own lives in part because of being harassed and mistreated over the Internet, a phenomenon we have termed cyberbullicide – suicide indirectly or directly influenced by experiences with online aggression."[[51]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-50)

The reluctance youth have in telling an authority figure about instances of cyberbullying has led to fatal outcomes. At least three children between the ages of 12 and 13 have committed suicide due to depression brought on by cyberbullying, according to reports by USA Today and the Baltimore Examiner. These would include the [suicide of Ryan Halligan](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Suicide_of_Ryan_Halligan) and the [suicide of Megan Meier](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Suicide_of_Megan_Meier), the latter of which resulted in [United States v. Lori Drew](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_v._Lori_Drew).

### Lost revenue, threatened earnings, defamation

Studies are being conducted by large companies to gauge loss of revenue through malicious false postings. Cyberstalkers seek to damage their victim's earnings, employment, reputation, or safety. A 2008 High Court ruling determined that, generally speaking, [slander](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Defamation) is when a defamatory statement has been made orally without justification. Libelous statements are those that are recorded with some degree of permanence. This would include statements made by email or on online bulletin boards.[[52]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-51)

## Adults and the workplace

Cyberbullying is not limited to personal attacks or children. Cyberharassment, referred to as cyberstalking when involving adults, takes place in the workplace or on company web sites, blogs or product reviews.

A survey of 1,072 workers by the Dignity and Work Partnership found that one in five had been bullied at work by e-mail and research has revealed 1 in 10 UK employees believes cyberbullying is a problem in their workplace.[[53]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-52)

Cyberbullying can occur in product reviews along with other consumer-generated data are being more closely monitored and flagged for content that is deemed malicious and biased as these sites have become tools to cyberbully by way of malicious requests for deletion of articles, [vandalism](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vandalism), abuse of administrative positions, and ganging up on products to post "false" reviews and vote products down.

Cyberstalkers use posts, forums, journals and other online means to present a victim in a false and unflattering light. The question of liability for harassment and character assassination is particularly salient to legislative protection since the original authors of the offending material are, more often than not, not only anonymous, but untraceable. Nevertheless, abuse should be consistently brought to company staffers' attention.

### Recognition of adult and workplace cyberbullying tactics

Common tactics used by cyberstalkers is to vandalize a search engine or encyclopedia, to threaten a victim's earnings, employment, reputation, or safety. Various companies provide cases of cyber-stalking (involving adults) follow the pattern of repeated actions against a target. While motives vary, whether romantic, a business conflict of interest, or personal dislike, the target is commonly someone whose life the stalker sees or senses elements lacking in his or her own life. Web-based products or services leveraged against cyberstalkers in the harassment or defamation of their victims.

The source of the defamation seems to come from four types of online information purveyors: Weblogs, industry forums or boards, and commercial Web sites. Studies reveal that while some motives are personal dislike, there is often direct economic motivation by the cyberstalker, including conflict of interest, and investigations reveal the responsible party is an affiliate or supplier of a competitor, or the competitor itself.

## Awareness campaigns

### Spain

There are multiple non-profit organizations that fight cyberbullying and cyberstalking. They advise victims, provide awareness campaigns, and report offenses to the police. These NGOs include the *Protégeles*, *PantallasAmigas*, [*Foundation Alia2*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Foundation_Alia2), the non-profit initiative *Actúa Contra el Ciberacoso*, the National Communications Technology Institute (INTECO), the Agency of Internet quality, the *Agencia Española de Protección de Datos*, the *Oficina de Seguridad del Internauta*, the Spanish Internet users' Association, the Internauts' Association, and the Spanish Association of Mothers and Parents Internauts. The Government of [Castile and León](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Castile_and_León) has also created a *Plan de Prevención del Ciberacoso y Promoción de la Navegación Segura en Centro Escolares*, and the Government of the [Canary Islands](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Canary_Islands) has created a portal on the phenomenon called *Viveinternet*.

### United Kingdom

Cyberbullying was the subject of a forum at the [British House of Commons](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/British_House_of_Commons) chaired by [Tim Loughton](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tim_Loughton) and [Louise Burfitt-Dons](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Louise_Burfitt-Dons) of [Act Against Bullying](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Act_Against_Bullying).[[54]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-53)

### United States

In March 2007, the Advertising Council in the United States, in partnership with the National Crime Prevention Council, U.S. Department of Justice, and Crime Prevention Coalition of America, joined to announce the launch of a new [public service advertising](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Public_service_advertising) campaign designed to educate preteens and teens about how they can play a role in ending cyber-bullying.

A Pew Internet and American Life survey found that 33% of teens were subject to some sort of cyber-bullying.[[55]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-54)

January 20, 2008 – the [Boy Scouts of America](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Boy_Scouts_of_America)'s 2008 edition of [*The Boy Scout Handbook*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Boy_Scout_Handbook) addresses how to deal with online bullying. A new [First Class](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ranks_in_the_Boy_Scouts_of_America" \l "First_Class) rank requirements adds: "Describe the three things you should avoid doing related to use of the Internet. Describe a cyberbully and how you should respond to one." [[56]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-55) [[57]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-56)

January 31, 2008 – [KTTV](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/KTTV) Fox 11 News based in Los Angeles put out a report about organized cyber-bullying on sites like [Stickam](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stickam) by people who call themselves "[/b/rothas](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anonymous_(group))".[[58]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-57)The site had put out report on July 26, 2007, about a subject that partly featured cyberbullying titled "hackers on steroids".[[59]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-58)

June 2, 2008 – Parents, teens, teachers, and Internet executives came together at Wired Safety's International Stop Cyberbullying Conference, a two-day gathering in White Plains, New York and New York City. Executives from Facebook, [Verizon](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Verizon), MySpace, [Microsoft](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Microsoft), and many others talked with hundreds about how to better protect themselves, personal reputations, kids and businesses online from harassment. Sponsors of the conference included [McAfee](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/McAfee), [AOL](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/AOL), [Disney](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Walt_Disney_Company), [Procter & Gamble](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Procter_%26_Gamble), [Girl Scouts of the USA](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Girl_Scouts_of_the_USA), WiredTrust, Children’s Safety Research and Innovation Centre, KidZui.com and others. This conference was being delivered in conjunction and with the support of Pace University. Topics addressed included cyberbullying and the law, with discussions about laws governing cyberbullying and how to distinguish between rudeness and criminal harassment. Additional forums addressed parents’ legal responsibilities, the need for more laws, how to handle violent postings of videos be handled, as well as the differentiation between free speech and hate speech. Cyberharassment vs. cyberbullying was a forefront topic, where age makes a difference and abusive internet behavior by adults with repeated clear intent to harm, ridicule or damage a person or business was classified as [stalking](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stalking) harassment vs. bullying by teens and young adults.[[60]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-59)

## Community support

A number of businesses and organizations are in coalition to provide awareness, protection and recourse for the escalating problem. Some aim to inform and provide measures to avoid as well as effectively terminate cyber-bullying and cyber-harassment. Anti-bullying charity [Act Against Bullying](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Act_Against_Bullying) launched the CyberKind campaign in August 2009 to promote positive internet usage.

Firms have developed tools to help parents combat cyberbullying. In 2008, the company Vanden unveiled a tool that allows children to instantly notify selected adults when they are bullied or harassed online. CyberBully Alert also documents the threatening message by saving a screen shot of the child's computer when the child triggers an alert. CyberPatrol and LookBothWays are two firms that keep up with internet trends.[[61]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-60)

In 2007, YouTube introduced the first Anti-Bullying Channel for youth, (BeatBullying) engaging the assistance of celebrities to tackle the problem.[[62]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-61)

Mossley Hollins High School in Manchester has recently taken the national lead in developing resources and material in the UK for schools and services to use. Will Aitken, coordinator of ICT, recently organized the countries first cyber-bullying awareness day for students and parents.[[63]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-62)

In March 2010, a 17 year old girl named Alexis Skye Pilkington was found dead in her room by her parents. Her parents claimed that after repeated cyber-bullying she was driven to suicide. Shortly after her death, attacks resumed. Members of an online website forum, referred to as "eBaums World", "Baums", and "EB", began [trolling](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Troll_(Internet)) teens' memorial pages on the social networking site Facebook. Comments included expressions of pleasure over the death, with pictures of what seemed to be a banana as their profile pictures. Family and friends of the deceased teen responded by creating Facebook groups denouncing cyber-bullying and trolling, with logos of bananas behind a red circle with a diagonal line through it.[[64]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyber-bullying" \l "cite_note-63)

## In media and pop culture

* [*Adina's Deck*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Adina's_Deck)— a film about three 8th-graders who help their friend who's been cyberbullied.
* *Let's Fight It Together*— a film produced by [Childnet International](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Childnet) to be used in schools to support discussion and awareness-raising around cyberbullying.
* [*Odd Girl Out*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Odd_Girl_Out)— a film about a girl who is bullied at school and online.
* *At a Distance*— a short film produced by [NetSafe](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Netsafe) for the 8-12-year-old audience. It highlights forms and effects of cyberbullying and the importance of bystanders.
* [*Cyberbully*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cyberbully_(film))— a TV movie broadcast July 17, 2011 on [ABC Family](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/ABC_Family). Similar to *Odd Girl Out*, it too depicts a girl who is bullied at school and online.

French and German social science research on rumor locates the modern scholarly definition of it to the pioneering work of the German [William Stern](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Louis_William_Stern) in 1902.[[5]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-4) Stern experimented on rumor involving a "chain of subjects" who passed a story from "mouth to ear" without the right to repeat or explain it. He found that the story was shortened and changed by the time it reached the end of the chain. His student was another pioneer in the field, [Gordon Allport](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gordon_Allport).

The experiment is similar to the children's game [Chinese Whispers](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chinese_Whispers).

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Rumor&action=edit&section=2)]Psychology of Rumor: Three Types (1944)

"A Psychology of Rumor" was published by Robert Knapp in 1944, in which he reports on his analysis of over one thousand rumors during World War II that were printed in the Boston Herald's "Rumor Clinic" Column. He defines rumor as

a proposition for belief of topical reference disseminated without official verification. So formidably defined, rumor is but a special case of informal social communications, including myth, legend, and current humor. From myth and legend it is distinguished by its emphasis on the topical. Where humor is designed to provoke laughter, rumor begs for belief.

[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-5)

Knapp identified three basic characteristics that apply to rumor: 1. they're transmitted by word of mouth; 2. they provide "information" about a "person, happening, or condition"; and 3. they express and gratify "the emotional needs of the community." Crucial to this definition and its characteristics is the emphasis on transmission (word of mouth, which then was heard and reported in the newspaper); on content ("topical" means that it can somehow be distinguished from trivial and private subjects—its domain is public issues); and on reception ("emotional needs of the community" suggests that though it is received by an individual from an individual, it is not comprehended in individual but community or social terms).

Based on his study of the newspaper column, Knapp divided those rumors into three types:

1. Pipe dream rumors: reflect public desires and wished-for outcomes.(e.g. Japan's oil reserves were low and thus World War II would soon end.)
2. Bogie or fear rumors reflect feared outcomes.(e.g. An enemy surprise attack is imminent).
3. Wedge-driving rumors intend to undermine group loyalty or interpersonal relations (e.g. American Catholics were seeking to avoid the draft; German-Americans, Italian-Americans, Japanese-Americans were not loyal to the American side).

Knapp also found that negative rumors were more likely to be disseminated than positive rumors. These types also differentiate between positive (pipe dream)and negative (bogie and wedge-driving) rumors.

In 2004, Prashant Bordia and Nicholas DiFonzo published their *Problem Solving in Social Interactions on the Internet: Rumor As Social Cognition* and found that rumor transmission is probably reflective of a "collective explanation process." (35).[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-internet-7) This conclusion was based on an analysis of archived message board discussions in which the statements were coded and analyzed. It was found that 29.4% (the majority) of statements within these discussions could be coded as “sensemaking” statements, which involved, “[...]attempts at solving a problem.” (42)[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-internet-7)

It was noted that the rest of the discussion was constructed around these statements, further reinforcing the idea of collective problem solving. The researchers also found that each rumor went through a four-stage pattern of development in which a rumor was introduced for discussion, information was volunteered and discussed, and finally a resolution was drawn or interest was lost (48).[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-internet-7)

For the study, archived discussions concerning rumors on the internet and other computer networks such as BITnet were retrieved. As a rule, each discussion had a minimum of five statements posted over a period of at least two days. The statements were then coded as being one of the following: *prudent*, *apprehensive*, *authenticating*, *interrogatory*,*providing information*, *belief*, *disbelief*, *sensemaking*, *digressive*, or *uncodable*. Each rumor discussion was then analyzed based on this coding system. A similar coding system based on statistical analysis was applied to each discussion as a whole, and the aforementioned four-stage pattern of rumor discussion emerged.

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Rumor&action=edit&section=5)]Rumor as Political Communication Strategy (2006)

"[Propaganda](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Propaganda) is neutrally defined as a systematic form of purposeful persuasion that attempts to influence the emotions, attitudes, opinions, and actions of specified target audiences for ideological, political or commercial purposes through the controlled transmission of one-sided messages (which may or may not be factual) via mass and direct media channels. A propaganda organization employs propagandists who engage in propagandism—the applied creation and distribution of such forms of persuasion."

Richard Alan Nelson, *A Chronology and Glossary of Propaganda in the United States*, 1996

In the past, much research on rumor came from psychological approaches (as the discussion of Allport and DiFonzio demonstrates above). The focus was especially on how statements of questionable veracity (absolutely false to the ears of some listeners) circulated orally from person to person. Scholarly attention to political rumors is at least as old as Aristotle's *Rhetoric*; however, not until recently has any sustained attention and conceptual development been directed at political uses of rumor, outside of its role in war situations. Almost no work had been done until recently on how different forms of media and particular cultural-historical conditions may facilitate a rumor's diffusion.[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-8)

The internet's recent appearance as a new media technology has shown ever new possibilities for the fast diffusion of rumor, as the debunking sites such as snopes.com, urbanlegend.com, and factcheck.org demonstrate. Nor had previous research taken into consideration the particular form or style of deliberately chosen rumors for political purposes in particular circumstances (even though significant attention to the power of rumor for mass-media-diffused war propaganda has been in vogue since World War I; see Lasswell 1927).[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-9) In the early part of the 21st century, some legal scholars have attended to political uses of rumor, though their conceptualization of it remains social psychological and their solutions to it as public problem are from a legal scholarly perspective, largely having to do with libel and privacy laws and the damage to personal reputations.[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-10)

Working within political communication studies, in 2006, Jayson Harsin[[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-11)

- [[13]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-12) introduced the concept of the "rumor bomb" as a response to the widespread empirical phenomenon of rumoresque communication in contemporary relations between media and politics, especially within the complex convergence of multiple forms of media, from cell phones and internet, to radio, TV, and print. Harsin starts with the widespread definition of rumor as a claim whose truthfulness is in doubt and which often has no clear source even if its ideological or partisan origins and intents are clear. He then treats it as a particular rhetorical strategy in current contexts of media and politics in many societies. For Harsin a "rumor bomb" extends the definition of rumor into a political communication concept with the following features:

1. A crisis of verification. - A crisis of verification is perhaps the most salient and politically dangerous aspect of rumor. Berenson (1952) defines rumor as a kind of persuasive message involving a proposition that lacks 'secure standards of evidence' (Pendleton 1998).[[14]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-13)
2. A context of public uncertainty or anxiety about a political group, figure, or cause, which the rumor bomb overcomes or transfers onto an opponent.
3. A clearly partisan even if an anonymous source (e.g. "an unnamed advisor to the president"), which seeks to profit politically from the rumor bomb’s diffusion.
4. A rapid diffusion via highly developed electronically mediated societies where news travels fast.

In addition, Harsin locates the "rumor bomb" within other communication genres, such as disinformation (intentional false information) and propaganda,as rumor has been viewed by others. However, he distinguishes it from these concepts as well, since disinformation is often too associated with government, and propaganda is a widely varying concept used to describe attempts to control opinion without regard for ethics and accuracy of statement. Similarly, "[spin](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spin_(public_relations))" is a generic term for strategic political communication that attempts to frame or re-frame an event or a statement in a way that is politically profitable for one side and detrimental to another, though at its core it may simply be a red herring (Bennett 2003, p. 130).[[15]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-14)

In addition, a "smear campaign" is a term that loosely means a coordinated effort to attack a person's character. Unlike a "smear campaign," rumor bombs need not be about discrediting a person (as is the case for example in claims about Iraq and 9/11 or weapons of mass destruction moved to Syria). Spin refers too specifically to an event and its re-framing. Rumor bombs may seek to produce events themselves.

A rumor bomb can be seen as having some characteristics of these general concepts, but rumor bombs happen in very particular cultural and historical conditions. They are not about mouth-to-ear interpersonal rumors as much rumor research has been interested in. They begin in a rapport between deliberate "disinformers" and *media*, whether TV news,talk shows, newspapers, radio, or internet. They then circulate across these media, perhaps but not necessarily resulting in interpersonal mouth-to-ear rumor diffusion.[[16]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-15)[[17]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-16)

Harsin wants to distinguish the rumor bomb from other more general concepts of rumor by *emphasizing changes in politics, media technology, and culture*. According to Harsin, rumor in politics has always existed, but recent changes have created an environment ripe for a new kind of political rumor: a new media "convergence culture" where information produced on the internet can influence the production of media content in other forms;new media technologies and business values that emphasize speed and circulation that combine with entertainment values in news, political marketing, and public craving of tabloid news that mirrors other entertainment genres.[[18]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-17)[[19]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-18)

Rumors of affairs, of "weapons of mass destruction" and their alleged removal to other countries[[20]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-19)"John Kerry is French,"[[21]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-20) Obama is a Muslim, John McCain had an illegitimate black child[[22]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-21) Obama's healthcare plan would legalize "[death panels](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Death_panels)," Shirley Sherrod is a racist--all of these involve statements whose veracity is in question or are simply false. Others are statements whose ambiguous nature makes them potentially appealing to different audiences who may interpret them in particular ways and circulate them. Harsin builds on rumor research that has emphasized social cognition and diffusion of propaganda. He extends Prashant and Difonzio's work in particular, since they attempt to distinguish rumor from [gossip](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gossip), in that rumor is supposedly about public issues and gossip is about private, trivial things. The emergence of infotainment and tabloidization in especially American and British news has broken that distinction, since politics is now just as much about bringing the private into the public view, as was clear with the Clinton-Lewinsky scandal.

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Rumor&action=edit&section=6)]Rumor in Strategic Communication (2010)

Similar to their appearance and function in political communication, wherein rumors can be deployed for specific deleterious effect (rumor bomb) or can otherwise plague a candidate for office, rumors also play an important role in [strategic communication](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Strategic_communication). Strategic communication is the process of crafting messages in support of specific organizational goals, and is usually concerned with governments, militaries and Non-Governmental Organizations ([NGOs](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/NGO)). Adroit strategic communication requires an understanding of stories, trends and memes circulating within a culture.

Rumors can be viewed as stories that seem rational but that are steeped into speculation, in connection with a certain narrative landscape (the vast array of cultural expression circulating within a community or region)[[23]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-22) . In their book, [Narrative Landmines: Rumors, Islamist Extremism and the Struggle for Strategic Influence](http://rutgerspress.rutgers.edu/acatalog/narrative_landmines.html), co-authors Daniel Bernardi, Pauline Hope Cheong, Chris Lundry and Scott W. Ruston coin the term [narrative IED](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Narrative_IED&action=edit&redlink=1) to help explain the function and danger of rumors in a strategic communication context. Rumors, as narrative IEDs, are low-cost, low-tech communication weapons that can be used by anyone to disrupt the efforts of communication, civil affairs or outreach campaigns such as those undertaken by governments in crisis response situations or militaries in insurgencies. As Bernardi notes, “"Like their explosive cousins, rumors can be created and planted by nearly anybody, require limited resources to utilize, can be deadly for those in its direct path, and can instill fear”[[24]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rumor" \l "cite_note-23) .

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Rumor&action=edit&section=7)]See also

Allport was born in [Montezuma](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Montezuma,_Indiana), [Indiana](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Indiana), the youngest of four sons of John Edwards and Nellie Edith (Wise) Allport. His early education was in the public schools of Cleveland, Ohio, where his family moved when he was six years old. His father was a country doctor with his clinic and hospital in the family home. Because of inadequate hospital facilities at the time, Allport's father actually turned their home into a makeshift hospital, with patients as well as nurses residing there. [Gordon Allport](http://shrike.depaul.edu/~kmerz/early_life1.htm) and his brothers grew up surrounded by their father's patients, nurses, and medical equipment, and he and his brothers often assisted their father in the clinic. Allport reported that "Tending office, washing bottles, and dealing with patients were important aspects of my early training" (p. 172).[[2]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gordon_Allport" \l "cite_note-HJelle.2C_L.A._1992-1)

Allport's mother was a former school teacher, who forcefully promoted her values of intellectual development and religion. One of Allport's biographers states, "he grew up not only with the Protestant religion, but also the [Protestant work ethic](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Protestant_work_ethic), which dominated his home life." [Gordon Allport](http://shrike.depaul.edu/~kmerz/early_life1.htm)'s father, who was Scottish, shared this outlook, and operated by his own philosophy that "If every person worked as hard as he could and took only the minimum financial return required by his families needs, then there would be just enough wealth to go around."[[2]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gordon_Allport" \l "cite_note-HJelle.2C_L.A._1992-1)

Biographers describe Allport as a shy and studious boy who lived a fairly isolated childhood; the young Allport was the subject of high school mockery due to a birth defect that left him with only eight toes. As a teenager, Allport developed and ran his own printing business while serving as editor of his high school newspaper. In 1915, he graduated second in his class at [Glenville High School](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Glenville_High_School) at the age of eighteen. He earned a scholarship that allowed him to attend Harvard University, where one of his older brothers, [Floyd Henry Allport](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Floyd_Henry_Allport), was working on his Ph.D. in Psychology.[[3]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gordon_Allport" \l "cite_note-2)

Moving to Harvard was a difficult transition for Allport because the moral values and climate were so different from those of his home. However he earned his A.B. degree in 1919 in Philosophy and Economics (not psychology). His interest in the convergence of [social psychology](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Social_psychology) and [personality psychology](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Personality_psychology) was evident in his use of his spare time at Harvard in social service: conducting a boy's club in Boston, visiting for the Family Society, serving as a volunteer probation officer, registering homes for war workers, and aiding foreign students.[[4]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gordon_Allport" \l "cite_note-Pettigrew.2C_T.F._1999-3)

Next he traveled to [Robert College](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Robert_College) in Istanbul, Turkey, where he taught economics and philosophy for a year, before returning to Harvard to pursue his Ph.D. in psychology on fellowship in 1920 (in addition to German, Allport remained partially fluent in modern Greek throughout his life). His first publication, *Personality Traits: Their Classification and Measurement* in 1921, was co-authored with his older brother, [Floyd Henry Allport](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Floyd_Henry_Allport), who became an important social psychologist. Allport earned his Master's degree in 1921, studying under [Herbert S. Langfeld](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Herbert_S._Langfeld&action=edit&redlink=1), and then his Ph.D. in 1922, along the way taking a class with [Hugo Münsterberg](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hugo_Münsterberg) before his death in 1916.[[5]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gordon_Allport" \l "cite_note-4)

Harvard then awarded Allport a coveted Sheldon Traveling Fellowship--"a second intellectual dawn," as he later described it. He spent the first Sheldon year studying with the new[Gestalt](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gestalt_psychology) School—which fascinated him—in [Berlin](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Berlin) and Hamburg, Germany; and then the second year at [Cambridge University](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cambridge_University).[[4]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gordon_Allport" \l "cite_note-Pettigrew.2C_T.F._1999-3)

Then Allport returned to Harvard as an instructor in psychology from 1924 to 1926. He began teaching his course "Personality: Its Psychological and Social Aspects" in 1924; it was probably the first course in personality psychology ever taught in the U.S. During this time, Allport married Ada Lufkin Gould, who was a clinical psychologist, and they had one child, a boy, who later became a pediatrician.[[4]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gordon_Allport" \l "cite_note-Pettigrew.2C_T.F._1999-3) After going to teach introductory courses on social psychology and personality at Dartmouth College for four years, Allport returned to Harvard and remained there for the rest of his career.

Gordon W. Allport was a longtime and influential member of the faculty at [Harvard University](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Harvard_University) from 1930 to 1967. In 1931, he served on the faculty committee that established Harvard's Sociology Department. In the late 1940s, he fashioned an introductory course for the new Social Relations Department into a rigorous and popular undergraduate class. At that time, he was also editor of the *Journal of Abnormal and Social Psychology*. Allport was also a Director of the Commission for the United Nations Educational Scientific, and Cultural Organization. He was elected a Fellow of the [American Academy of Arts and Sciences](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/American_Academy_of_Arts_and_Sciences) in 1933.[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gordon_Allport" \l "cite_note-AAAS-5)

Allport was elected President of the American Psychological Association in 1939. In 1943, he was elected President of the Eastern Psychological Association. In 1944, he served as President of the Society for the Psychological Study of Social Issues. In 1950, Allport published his third book titled *The Individual and His Religion*. His fourth book, *The Nature of Prejudice*, was published in 1954, and benefited from his insights from working with refugees during World War II. His fifth book, published in 1955, was titled *Becoming: Basic Considerations for Psychology of Personality*. This book became one of his most widely known publications. In 1963, Allport was awarded the Gold Medal Award from the American Psychological Foundation. In the following year, he received the APA's Distinguished Scientific Contribution Award. Gordon Allport died on October 9, 1967 in Cambridge, Massachusetts of lung cancer. He was seventy years old.[[1]](http://shrike.depaul.edu/~kmerz/later_life.htm)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Gordon_Allport&action=edit&section=2)]Visit with Freud

Allport told the story in his autobiographical essay in *Pattern and Growth in Personality*[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gordon_Allport" \l "cite_note-6) of his visit as a young, recent college graduate to the already famous Dr. [Sigmund Freud](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sigmund_Freud)in [Vienna](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vienna). To break the ice upon meeting Freud, Allport recounted how he had met a boy on the train on the way to Vienna who was afraid of getting dirty. He refused to sit down near anyone dirty, despite his mother's reassurances. Allport suggested that perhaps the boy had learned this dirt phobia from his mother, a very neat and apparently rather domineering type. After studying Allport for a minute, Freud asked, "And was that little boy you?"

Allport experienced Freud's attempt to reduce this small bit of observed interaction to some unconscious episode from his own remote childhood as dismissive of his current motivations, intentions, and experience. It served as a reminder that [psychoanalysis](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Psychoanalysis) tends to dig too deeply into both the past and the unconscious, overlooking in the process the reputedly more important conscious and immediate aspects of experience. While Allport never denied that unconscious and historical variables have a role to play in human psychology (particularly in the immature and disordered) his own work would always emphasize conscious motivations and current context. Allport believed that situation is not dependent on its history.

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Gordon_Allport&action=edit&section=3)]Allport's trait theory

Main article: [*Trait theory*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Trait_theory)

Allport is known as a "trait" psychologist. One of his early projects was to go through the dictionary and locate every term that he thought could describe a person. From this, he developed a list of 4500 trait like words. He organized these into three levels of traits. This is similar to Goldberg's [fundamental lexical hypothesis](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lexical_hypothesis), or the hypothesis that over time, humans develop widely used, generic terms for individual differences in their daily interactions.

Allport's three trait levels are:

1. **Cardinal trait** - This is the trait that dominates and shapes a person's behavior. These are the ruling passions/obsessions, such as a need for money, fame etc.

2. **Central trait** - This is a general characteristic found in some degree in every person. These are the basic building blocks that shape most of our behavior although they are not as overwhelming as cardinal traits. An example of a central trait would be honesty.

3. **Secondary trait** - These are characteristics seen only in certain circumstances (such as particular likes or dislikes that a very close friend may know). They must be included to provide a complete picture of human complexity.

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Gordon_Allport&action=edit&section=4)]Genotypes and phenotypes

Allport hypothesized the idea of internal and external forces that influence an individual’s behavior. He called these forces Genotypes and Phenotypes. **Genotypes** are internal forces relates to how a person retains information and uses it to interact with the external world. **Phenotypes** are external forces, these relate to the way an individual accepts his surroundings and how others influence their behavior. These forces generate the ways in which we behave and are the groundwork for the creation of individual traits.

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Gordon_Allport&action=edit&section=5)]Functional autonomy of motives

Allport was one of the first researchers to draw a distinction between [Motive](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Motivation) and Drive. He suggested that a drive formed as a reaction to a motive may outgrow the motive as a reason. The drive then is autonomous and distinct from the motive, whether it is instinct or any other. Allport gives the example of a man who seeks to perfect his task or craft. His reasons may be a sense of inferiority engrained in his childhood but his diligence in his work and the motive it acquires later on is a need to excel in his chosen profession. In the words of Allport, the theory "avoids the absurdity of regarding the energy of life now, in the present, as somehow consisting of early archaic forms (instincts, prepotent reflexes, or the never-changing Id). Learning brings new systems of interests into existence just as it does new abilities and skills. At each stage of development these interests are always contemporary; whatever drives, drives now."[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gordon_Allport" \l "cite_note-7) We also can see functional autonomy (the notion that motives can become independent of their origins) in the drive associated with making money to buy goods and services when it becomes an end in itself. Many obsessive and compulsive acts and thoughts might be manifestations of functional autonomy.

John Adams was the eldest of three sons,[[3]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-2) was born on October 30, 1735 (October 19, 1735 Old Style, [Julian calendar](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Julian_calendar)), in what is now [Quincy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Quincy,_Massachusetts), Massachusetts (then called the "north precinct" of [Braintree](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Braintree,_Massachusetts), Massachusetts), to [John Adams, Sr.](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams,_Sr.), and [Susanna Boylston](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Susanna_Boylston) Adams.[[4]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-3) While he did not speak much of his mother later in life, he commonly praised his father and was very close to him as a child. [Adams' birthplace](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams_Birthplace) is now part of [Adams National Historical Park](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Adams_National_Historical_Park). His father (1691–1761), was a fifth-generation descendant of Henry Adams, who emigrated from [Somerset](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Somerset)[[5]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-4) in England to [Massachusetts Bay Colony](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Massachusetts_Bay_Colony) in about 1638. The elder Adams was a farmer, a [Congregationalist](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Congregationalist) (that is, [Puritan](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Puritan)) [deacon](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Deacon), a lieutenant in the militia and a [selectman](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Board_of_selectmen), or town councilman, who supervised schools and roads; Susanna Boylston Adams was a descendant of the Boylstons of [Brookline](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Brookline,_Massachusetts).[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-5)

Adams was born to a modest family, but he felt acutely the responsibility of living up to his family heritage: the founding generation of Puritans, who came to the American wilderness in the 1630s and established colonial presence in America. The Puritans of the great migration "believed they lived in the Bible. England under the [Stuarts](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/House_of_Stuart) was Egypt; they were Israel fleeing ... to establish a refuge for godliness, a city upon a hill."[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-brookhiser-6) By the time of John Adams' birth in 1735, Puritan tenets such as predestination were no longer as widely accepted, and many of their stricter practices had mellowed with time, but John Adams "considered them bearers of freedom, a cause that still had a holy urgency." It was a value system he believed in, and a heroic model he wished to live up to.[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-brookhiser-6)

Young Adams went to [Harvard College](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Harvard_College) at age sixteen in 1751.[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-7) His father expected him to become a minister, but Adams had doubts. After graduating in 1755 with an [A.B.](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bachelors_of_Arts), he taught school for a few years in [Worcester](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Worcester,_Massachusetts), allowing himself time to think about his career choice. After much reflection, he decided to become a lawyer, writing his father that he found among lawyers “noble and gallant achievements" but among the clergy, the "pretended sanctity of some absolute dunces." He later became a Unitarian, and dropped belief in predestination, eternal damnation, and most other Calvinist beliefs of his Puritan ancestors. Adams then studied law in the office of John Putnam, a prominent lawyer in Worcester.

In 1758, after earning an [A.M.](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Master_of_Arts_(postgraduate)) from Harvard,[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-8) Adams was admitted to the bar. From an early age, he developed the habit of writing descriptions of events and impressions of men which are scattered through his diary. He put the skill to good use as a lawyer, often recording cases he observed so that he could study and reflect upon them. His report of the 1761 argument of [James Otis](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Otis,_Jr.) in the superior court of Massachusetts as to the legality of [Writs of Assistance](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Writ_of_Assistance) is a good example. Otis's argument inspired Adams with zeal for the cause of the American colonies.[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-9)

On October 25, 1764, five days before his 29th birthday, Adams married [Abigail Smith](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Abigail_Adams) (1744–1818), his third cousin[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-10) and the daughter of a [Congregational](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Congregational_church) minister, Rev. William Smith, at [Weymouth, Massachusetts](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Weymouth,_Massachusetts). Their children were [Abigail](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Abigail_Adams_Smith) (1765–1813); future president [John Quincy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Quincy_Adams) (1767–1848); Susanna (1768–1770); [Charles](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles_Adams_(1770–1800)) (1770–1800); [Thomas Boylston](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Boylston_Adams) (1772–1832); and Elizabeth (1777).[[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-11)

Adams was not a popular leader like his second cousin, [Samuel Adams](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Samuel_Adams). Instead, his influence emerged through his work as a constitutional lawyer and his intense analysis of historical examples,[[13]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-12) together with his thorough knowledge of the law and his dedication to the principles of [republicanism](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Republicanism). Adams often found his inborn contentiousness to be a constraint in his political career.

## Career before the Revolution

### Opponent of Stamp Act 1765

Adams first rose to prominence as an opponent of the [Stamp Act 1765](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stamp_Act_1765), which was imposed by the British Parliament without consulting the American legislatures. Americans protested vehemently that it violated their traditional rights as Englishmen. Popular resistance, he later observed, was sparked by an oft-reprinted sermon of the Boston minister,[Jonathan Mayhew](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Jonathan_Mayhew), interpreting [Romans 13](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Epistle_to_the_Romans) to elucidate the principle of just insurrection.[[14]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-13)

In 1765, Adams drafted the instructions which were sent by the inhabitants of [Braintree](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Braintree,_Massachusetts) to its representatives in the Massachusetts legislature, and which served as a model for other towns to draw up instructions to their representatives. In August 1765, he anonymously contributed four notable articles to the [Boston Gazette](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Boston_Gazette) (republished in *The London Chronicle* in 1768 as *True Sentiments of America*, also known as *A Dissertation on the Canon and Feudal Law*). In the letter he suggested that there was a connection between the Protestant ideas that Adams' Puritan ancestors brought to New England and the ideas behind their resistance to the Stamp Act. In the former he explained that the opposition of the colonies to the [Stamp Act](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stamp_Act) was because the Stamp Act deprived the American colonists of two basic rights guaranteed to all Englishmen, and which all free men deserved: rights to be taxed only by consent and to be tried only by a jury of one's peers.

The "[Braintree Instructions](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Braintree_Instructions)" were a succinct and forthright defense of colonial rights and liberties, while the Dissertation was an essay in political education.

In December 1765, he delivered a speech before the governor and council in which he pronounced the Stamp Act invalid on the ground that Massachusetts, being without representation in Parliament, had not assented to it.[[15]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-14)

### Boston Massacre

In 1770, a street confrontation resulted in [British soldiers](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/29th_Regiment_of_Foot) killing five civilians in what became known as the [Boston Massacre](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Boston_Massacre).[[16]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-15) The soldiers involved were arrested on criminal charges. Not surprisingly, they had trouble finding legal counsel to represent them. Finally, they asked Adams to defend. He accepted, though he feared it would hurt his reputation. In their defense, Adams made his now famous quote regarding making decisions based on the evidence: "Facts are stubborn things; and whatever may be our wishes, our inclinations, or the dictates of our passion, they cannot alter the state of facts and evidence."[[17]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-16) Six of the soldiers were acquitted. Two who had fired directly into the crowd were charged with murder but were convicted only of manslaughter. Adams was paid eighteen guineas by the British soldiers, or about the cost of a pair of shoes.[[18]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-17)

Despite his previous misgivings, Adams was elected to the [Massachusetts General Court](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Massachusetts_General_Court) (the colonial legislature) in June 1770, while still in preparation for the trial.[[19]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-18)

### Dispute concerning Parliament's authority

In 1772, Massachusetts Governor [Thomas Hutchinson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Hutchinson_(governor)) announced that he and his judges would no longer need their salaries paid by the Massachusetts legislature, because the Crown would henceforth assume payment drawn from customs revenues. Boston radicals protested and asked Adams to explain their objections. In "Two Replies of the Massachusetts House of Representatives to Governor Hutchinson" Adams argued that the colonists had never been under the sovereignty of Parliament. Their original charter was with the person of the king and their allegiance was only to him. If a workable line could not be drawn between parliamentary sovereignty and the total independence of the colonies, he continued, the colonies would have no other choice but to choose independence.

|  |  |
| --- | --- |
| http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/thumb/4/4c/Wikisource-logo.svg/38px-Wikisource-logo.svg.png | [Wikisource](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikisource) has original text related to this article:  [**Novanglus Essays**](http://en.wikisource.org/wiki/Novanglus_Essays) |

In *Novanglus; or, A History of the Dispute with America, From Its Origin, in 1754, to the Present Time* Adams attacked some essays by[Daniel Leonard](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Daniel_Leonard) that defended Hutchinson's arguments for the absolute authority of Parliament over the colonies. In *Novanglus* Adams gave a point-by-point refutation of Leonard's essays, and then provided one of the most extensive and learned arguments made by the colonists against British imperial policy.

It was a systematic attempt by Adams to describe the origins, nature, and jurisdiction of the unwritten British constitution. Adams used his wide knowledge of English and colonial legal history to argue that the provincial legislatures were fully sovereign over their own internal affairs, and that the colonies were connected to Great Britain only through the King.

## Continental Congress

[](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Declaration_independence.jpg)

[http://bits.wikimedia.org/static-1.20wmf9/skins/common/images/magnify-clip.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Declaration_independence.jpg)

[Trumbull's](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Trumbull) [*Declaration of Independence*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Trumbull's_Declaration_of_Independence) depicts committee presenting draft Declaration of Independence to Congress. Adams at center has hand on hip.

Massachusetts sent Adams to the first and second [Continental Congresses](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Continental_Congress) in 1774 and from 1775 to 1777.[[20]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-19) In June 1775, with a view of promoting union among the colonies, he nominated [George Washington](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Washington) of Virginia as commander-in-chief of the [army](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Continental_Army) then assembled around Boston. His influence in Congress was great, and almost from the beginning, he sought permanent separation from Britain.

Over the next decade, Americans from every state gathered and deliberated on new governing documents. As radical as it was to write constitutions (prior tradition suggested that a society's form of government need not be codified, nor its organic law written down in a single document), what was equally radical was the revolutionary nature of American political thought as the summer of 1776 dawned.[[21]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-20)

### Thoughts on Government

Several representatives turned to Adams for advice about framing new governments. To relieve Adams of the burden of repeatedly writing out his thoughts, [Richard Henry Lee](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Richard_Henry_Lee) published one version as the pamphlet "[*Thoughts on Government*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thoughts_on_Government)" (April 1776),[[22]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-21) which was subsequently influential in the writing of state constitutions.[[23]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-22) Using the conceptual framework of [Republicanism in the United States](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Republicanism_in_the_United_States), the patriots believed it was the corrupt and nefarious aristocrats, in the [British Parliament](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Parliament_of_Britain), and their minions stationed in America, who were guilty of the British assault on American liberty.[[24]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-23)

Adams advised that the form of government should be chosen to attain the desired ends, which are the happiness and virtue of the greatest number of people. With this goal in mind, he wrote in "*Thoughts on Government*",

There is no good government but what is republican. That the only valuable part of the [British constitution](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Constitution_of_the_United_Kingdom) is so; because the very definition of a republic is an empire of laws, and not of men.

The treatise also defended [bicameralism](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bicameralism), for "*a single assembly is liable to all the vices, follies, and frailties of an individual*."[[25]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-24) He also suggested that there should be a[separation of powers](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Separation_of_powers) between the [executive](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Executive_(government)), the [judicial](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Judicial), and the [legislative](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Legislative) branches, and further recommended that if a continental government were to be formed then it "*should sacredly be confined*" to certain [enumerated powers](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Enumerated_powers). "*Thoughts on Government*" was enormously influential and was referenced as an authority in every state-constitution writing hall.

### Declaration of Independence

On May 10, 1776 Adams seconded [Richard Henry Lee](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Richard_Henry_Lee)'s resolution calling on the colonies to adopt new (presumably independent) governments.[[26]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-25) Adams then drafted a preamble to this resolution which elaborated on it, and which congress approved on May 15. The full document was, as Adams put it, "independence itself"[[27]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-26) and set the stage for the formal passage of the [Declaration of Independence](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Declaration_of_Independence). Once the combined document passed in May, independence became inevitable, though it still had to be declared formally. On June 7, 1776, Adams seconded the [resolution of independence](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Resolution_of_independence) introduced by [Richard Henry Lee](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Richard_Henry_Lee) which stated, "These colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent states," and championed the resolution until it was adopted by Congress on July 2, 1776.[[28]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-27)

[](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:StatenIslandConference_By_Chappel.jpg)

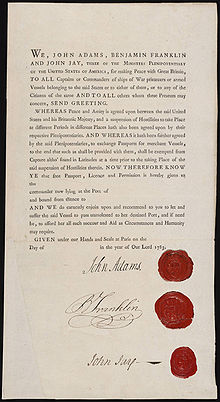
[http://bits.wikimedia.org/static-1.20wmf9/skins/common/images/magnify-clip.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:StatenIslandConference_By_Chappel.jpg)

Adams at left in [Chappel's](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alonzo_Chappel)depiction of [Staten Island Peace Conference](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Staten_Island_Peace_Conference)

He was appointed to a [committee](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Committee_of_Five) with [Thomas Jefferson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Jefferson), [Benjamin Franklin](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Benjamin_Franklin), [Robert R. Livingston](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Robert_Livingston_(1746-1813)) and [Roger Sherman](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Roger_Sherman), to draft the Declaration of Independence, which was to be ready when congress voted on independence. Because the committee left no minutes, there is some uncertainty about how the drafting process proceeded—accounts written many years later by Jefferson and Adams, although frequently cited, are contradictory and not entirely reliable.[[29]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-28) What is certain is that the committee, after discussing the general outline that the document should follow, decided that Jefferson would write the first draft.[[30]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-29) The committee in general, and Jefferson in particular, thought Adams should write the document, but Adams persuaded the committee to choose Jefferson and promised to consult with Jefferson personally.[[31]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-30) Although the first draft was written primarily by Jefferson, Adams continued to occupy the foremost place in the debate on its adoption. After editing the document further, congress approved it on July 4. Many years later, Jefferson hailed Adams as "the pillar of [the Declaration's] support on the floor of Congress, its ablest advocate and defender against the multifarious assaults it encountered."[[32]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-31)

After the defeat of the [Continental Army](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Continental_Army) at the [Battle of Long Island](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Battle_of_Long_Island) on August 27, 1776, Admiral [Lord Richard Howe](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Richard_Howe,_1st_Earl_Howe) requested the Second Continental Congress send representatives in an attempt to negotiate peace. A delegation including Adams and [Benjamin Franklin](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Benjamin_Franklin) [met with Howe](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Staten_Island_Peace_Conference)on [Staten Island](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Staten_Island) on September 11.[[33]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-32) Both Howe's authority and that of the delegation were limited, and they were unable to find common ground.[[34]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-33) When Lord Howe unhappily stated he could only view the American delegates as British subjects, Adams replied, "Your lordship may consider me in what light you please, [...] except that of a British subject."[[35]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-34) Lord Howe then addressed the other delegates, stating, "Mr. Adams appears to be a decided character." Adams learned many years later that his name was on a list of people specifically excluded from Howe's pardon-granting authority.[[36]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-35) In 1777, Adams began serving as the head of the [Board of War and Ordnance](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Board_of_War_and_Ordnance), as well as serving on many other important committees.

## In Europe

[](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Passport_John_Adams_Benjamin_Franklin_John_Jay_Ministers_Plenipotentiary_1783.jpg)

[http://bits.wikimedia.org/static-1.20wmf9/skins/common/images/magnify-clip.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Passport_John_Adams_Benjamin_Franklin_John_Jay_Ministers_Plenipotentiary_1783.jpg)

[Passport](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Passport) for [ministers plenipotentiary](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Plenipotentiary)John Adams, [Benjamin Franklin](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Benjamin_Franklin), and [John Jay](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Jay) for safe passage to negotiate treaties, 1783

[](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Erkenning_onafhankelijkheid_Verenigde_Staten_foto2.JPG)

[http://bits.wikimedia.org/static-1.20wmf9/skins/common/images/magnify-clip.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Erkenning_onafhankelijkheid_Verenigde_Staten_foto2.JPG)

A medallion produced in Amsterdam for John Adams in 1782 by [Johann Georg Holtzhey](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Johann_Georg_Holtzhey) to celebrate recognition of the United States as an independent nation by The Netherlands, from the coin collection of the [Teylers Museum](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Teylers_Museum)

Congress twice dispatched Adams to represent the fledgling union in Europe, first in 1777, and again in 1779. Accompanied, on both occasions, by his eldest son, [John Quincy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Quincy_Adams) (who was ten years old at the time of the first voyage), Adams sailed for France aboard the[Continental Navy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Continental_Navy) [frigate](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Frigate) [*Boston*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/USS_Boston_(1777)) on February 15, 1778. The trip through winter storms was treacherous, with lightning injuring 19 sailors and killing one. Adams' ship was then pursued by but successfully evaded several British frigates in the mid-Atlantic. Toward the coast of Spain, Adams himself took up arms to help capture a heavily armed British merchantman ship, the *Martha*. Later, a cannon malfunction killed one and injured five more of Adams' crew before the ship finally arrived in France.[[37]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-36)

Adams was in some regards an unlikely choice inasmuch as he did not speak French, the international language of diplomacy at the time.[[38]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-37) His first stay in Europe, between April 1, 1778, and June 17, 1779, was largely unproductive, and he returned to his home in Braintree in early August 1779.

Between September 1 and October 30, 1779, he drafted the [Massachusetts Constitution](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Massachusetts_Constitution) together with [Samuel Adams](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Samuel_Adams) and [James Bowdoin](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Bowdoin). He was selected in September 1779 to return to France and, following the conclusion of the Massachusetts constitutional convention, left on November 14[[39]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-38) aboard the French frigate *Sensible*.

On the second trip, Adams was appointed as [Minister Plenipotentiary](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Minister_Plenipotentiary) charged with the mission of negotiating a treaty of amity and commerce with Britain. The French government, however, did not approve of Adams' appointment and subsequently, on the insistence of the French foreign minister, the [Comte de Vergennes](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles_Gravier,_Comte_de_Vergennes), [Benjamin Franklin](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Benjamin_Franklin), [Thomas Jefferson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Jefferson), [John Jay](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Jay) and [Henry Laurens](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Henry_Laurens) were appointed to cooperate with Adams, although Jefferson did not go to Europe and Laurens was posted to the [Dutch Republic](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dutch_Republic). In the event Jay, Adams, and Franklin played the major part in the negotiations. Overruling Franklin and distrustful of Vergennes, Jay and Adams decided not to consult with France. Instead, they dealt directly with the British commissioners.[[40]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-39)

Throughout the negotiations, Adams was especially determined that the right of the United States to the fisheries along the Atlantic coast should be recognized. The American negotiators were able to secure a favorable treaty, which gave Americans ownership of all lands east of the Mississippi, except [East](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/East_Florida) and [West Florida](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/West_Florida), which were transferred to Spain. The treaty was signed on November 30, 1782.

After these negotiations began, Adams had spent some time as the [ambassador](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ambassador) in the Dutch Republic, then one of the few other Republics in the world (the [Republic of Venice](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Republic_of_Venice) and the [Old Swiss Confederacy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Old_Swiss_Confederacy) being the other notable ones). In July 1780, he had been authorized to execute the duties previously assigned to Laurens. With the aid of the Dutch [Patriot](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Patriots_(faction)) leader [Joan van der Capellen tot den Pol](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Joan_van_der_Capellen_tot_den_Pol), Adams secured the recognition of the United States as an independent government at [The Hague](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Hague) on April 19, 1782.[[41]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-40) During this visit, he also negotiated a loan of five million guilders financed by [Nicolaas van Staphorst](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Nicolaas_van_Staphorst) and [Wilhelm Willink](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wilhelm_Willink).[[42]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-41) In October 1782, he negotiated with the Dutch a treaty of amity and commerce, the first such treaty between the United States and a foreign power following the 1778 treaty with France. The house that Adams bought during this stay in [The Netherlands](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Netherlands) became the first American-owned embassy on foreign soil anywhere in the world.[[43]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-42) For two months during 1783, Adams lodged in London with radical publisher [John Stockdale](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Stockdale).[[44]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-43)

In 1784 and 1785, he was one of the architects of far-going trade relations between the [United States](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States) and [Prussia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Prussia). The Prussian ambassador in The Hague, [Friedrich Wilhelm von Thulemeyer](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Friedrich_Wilhelm_von_Thulemeyer), was involved, as were Jefferson and Franklin, who were in Paris.[[45]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-44)

In 1785, John Adams was appointed the first American minister to the [Court of St. James's](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Court_of_St._James's) (ambassador to [Great Britain](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Great_Britain)). In his diary he mentions an exchange between himself and another ambassador who asked if he had often been in England and if he had English relations to which Adams explained he had only been to England once for a two month visit back in 1783 and that he had no relations in the country. The ambassador asked "None, how can that be? you are of English extraction?" to which Adams replied "Neither my father or mother, grandfather or grandmother, great grandfather or great grandmother, nor any other relation that I know of, or care a farthing for, has been in England these one hundred and fifty years; so that you see I have not one drop of blood in my veins but what is American".[[46]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-FOOTNOTEAdamsAdams1851392-45)

When he was presented to his former sovereign, [George III](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_III_of_the_United_Kingdom), the King intimated that he was aware of Adams' lack of confidence in the French government. Adams admitted this, stating: "I must avow to your Majesty that I have no attachment but to my own country."

[Queen Elizabeth II](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Queen_Elizabeth_II) of the [United Kingdom](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_Kingdom) referred to this episode on July 7, 1976, at the [White House](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/White_House). She said:

John Adams, America's first Ambassador, said to my ancestor, King George III, that it was his desire to help with the restoration of 'the old good nature and the old good humor between our peoples.' That restoration has long been made, and the links of language, tradition, and personal contact have maintained it.[[47]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-46)

While in London, John and Abigail had to suffer the stares and hostility of the Court, and chose to escape it when they could by seeking out [Richard Price](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Richard_Price), minister of [Newington Green Unitarian Church](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Newington_Green_Unitarian_Church) and instigator of the [Revolution Controversy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Revolution_Controversy). Both admired Price very much, and Abigail took to heart the teachings of the man and his protegee [Mary Wollstonecraft](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mary_Wollstonecraft), author of [*A Vindication of the Rights of Woman*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/A_Vindication_of_the_Rights_of_Woman).[[48]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-47)

Adams' home in England, a house off London's [Grosvenor Square](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Grosvenor_Square), still stands and is commemorated by a plaque. He returned to the United States in 1788 to continue his domestic political life.

## Constitutional ideas

[Massachusetts's new constitution](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Massachusetts_Constitution), ratified in 1780 and written largely by Adams himself, structured its government most closely on his views of politics and society.[[49]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-48) It was the first constitution written by a special committee and ratified by the people. It was also the first to feature a bicameral legislature, a clear and distinct executive with a partial (two-thirds) veto (although he was restrained by an executive council), and a distinct judicial branch.

"The whole people must take upon themselves the education of the whole people and be willing to bear the expenses of it. There should not be a district of one mile square, without a school in it, not founded by a charitable individual, but maintained at the public expense of the people themselves."

 – John Adams, September 10, 1785[[50]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-49)

While in London, Adams published a work entitled *A Defence of the Constitutions of Government of the United States* (1787).[[51]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-50)In it he repudiated the views of [Turgot](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anne_Robert_Jacques_Turgot,_Baron_de_Laune) and other European writers as to the viciousness of the framework of state governments. Turgot argued that countries that lacked aristocracies needn't have bicameral legislatures. He thought that republican governments feature "all authorities into one center, that of the nation."[[52]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-51) In the book, Adams suggested that "the rich, the well-born and the able" should be set apart from other men in a senate—that would prevent them from dominating the lower house. Wood (2006) has maintained that Adams had become intellectually irrelevant by the time the Federal Constitution was ratified. By then, American political thought, transformed by more than a decade of vigorous and searching debate as well as shaping experiential pressures, had abandoned the classical conception of politics which understood government as a mirror of social estates. Americans' new conception of [popular sovereignty](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Popular_sovereignty) now saw the people-at-large as the sole possessors of power in the realm. All agents of the government enjoyed mere portions of the people's power and only for a limited time. Adams had completely missed this concept and revealed his continued attachment to the older version of politics.[[53]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-52) Yet Wood overlooks Adams' peculiar definition of the term "republic," and his support for a constitution ratified by the people.[[54]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-53) He also underplays Adams' belief in checks and balances. "Power must be opposed to power, and interest to interest," Adams wrote; this sentiment would later be echoed by [James Madison](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Madison)'s famous statement that "[a]mbition must be made to counteract ambition" in [*The Federalist* No. 51](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Federalist_No._51), in explaining the powers of the branches of the [United States federal government](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_federal_government) under the new [Constitution](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Constitution_of_the_United_States).[[55]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-54)[[56]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-55) Adams did as much as anyone to put the idea of "checks and balances" on the intellectual map.

Adams' *Defence* can be read as an articulation of the [classical republican](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Classical_republicanism) theory of [mixed government](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mixed_government). Adams contended that social classes exist in every political society, and that a good government must accept that reality. For centuries, dating back to Aristotle, a mixed regime balancing monarchy, aristocracy, and democracy—that is, the king, the nobles, and the people—was required to preserve order and liberty.[[57]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-56)

Adams never bought a slave and declined on principle to employ slave labor.[[58]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-57) Abigail Adams opposed slavery and employed free blacks in preference to her father's two domestic slaves. John Adams spoke out in 1777 against a bill to emancipate slaves in Massachusetts, saying that the issue was presently too divisive, and so the legislation should "sleep for a time."[[59]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-Wiencek-58) He also was against use of black soldiers in the Revolution, due to opposition from southerners.[[59]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-Wiencek-58) Adams generally tried to keep the issue out of national politics, because of the anticipated southern response.[[59]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-Wiencek-58)[[60]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-59) Though it is difficult to pinpoint the exact date on which slavery was abolished in Massachusetts, a common view is that it was abolished no later than 1780, when it was forbidden by implication in the Declaration of Rights that John Adams wrote into the Massachusetts Constitution.[[61]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-60)

## Vice Presidency

[](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Jadams.jpeg)

[http://bits.wikimedia.org/static-1.20wmf9/skins/common/images/magnify-clip.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Jadams.jpeg)

Portrait of Adams by [John Trumbull](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Trumbull), 1792–93

While Washington won the [presidential election of 1789](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/U.S._presidential_election,_1789) with 69 votes in the [electoral college](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Electoral_College), Adams came in second with 34 votes and became Vice President. According to [David McCullough](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/David_McCullough), what he really might have wanted was to be the first [Chief Justice of the Supreme Court of the United States](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chief_Justice_of_the_Supreme_Court_of_the_United_States). He presided over the Senate but otherwise played a minor role in the politics of the early 1790s; he was reelected Vice President in [1792](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/U.S._presidential_election,_1792). Washington seldom asked Adams for input on policy and legal issues during his tenure as vice president.[[62]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-61)

In the first year of Washington's administration, Adams became deeply involved in a month-long Senate controversy over the official title of the President. Adams favored grandiose titles such as "His Majesty the President" or "His High Mightiness" over the simple "President of the United States" that eventually won the debate. The pomposity of his stance, along with his being overweight, led to Adams earning the nickname "His Rotundity."

As [president of the Senate](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/President_of_the_Senate" \l "United_States), Adams cast 29 [tie-breaking votes](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/U.S._Vice_President's_tie-breaking_votes)—a record that only [John C. Calhoun](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_C._Calhoun) came close to tying, with 28.[[63]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-62) His votes protected the president's sole authority over the removal of appointees and influenced the location of the national capital. On at least one occasion, he persuaded senators to vote against legislation that he opposed, and he frequently lectured the Senate on procedural and policy matters. Adams' political views and his active role in the Senate made him a natural target for critics of the[Washington](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Washington) administration. Toward the end of his first term, as a result of a threatened resolution that would have silenced him except for procedural and policy matters, he began to exercise more restraint. When the two political parties formed, he joined the [Federalist Party](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Federalist_Party_(United_States)), but never got on well with its dominant leader [Alexander Hamilton](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alexander_Hamilton). Because of Adams' seniority and the need for a northern president, he was elected as the Federalist nominee for president in [1796](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/U.S._presidential_election,_1796), over [Thomas Jefferson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Jefferson), the leader of the opposition [Democratic-Republican Party](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican_Party_(United_States)). His success was due to peace and prosperity; Washington and Hamilton had averted war with Britain with the [Jay Treaty](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Jay_Treaty) of 1795.[[64]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-63)

Adams' two terms as Vice President were frustrating experiences for a man of his vigor, intellect, and vanity. He complained to his wife Abigail, "My country has in its wisdom contrived for me the most insignificant office that ever the invention of man contrived or his imagination conceived."[[65]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-64)

## Election of 1796

Main article: [*United States presidential election, 1796*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_presidential_election,_1796)

The 1796 election was the first contested election under the [First Party System](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/First_Party_System). Adams was the presidential candidate of the [Federalist Party](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Federalist_Party) and [Thomas Pinckney](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Pinckney), the [Governor](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_South_Carolina)of [South Carolina](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/South_Carolina), was also running as a Federalist (at this point, the vice president was whoever came in second, so no running mates existed in the modern sense). The Federalists wanted Adams as their presidential candidate to crush Thomas Jefferson's bid. Most Federalists would have preferred Hamilton to be a candidate. Although Hamilton and his followers supported Adams, they also held a grudge against him. They did consider him to be the lesser of the two evils. However, they thought Adams lacked the seriousness and popularity that had caused Washington to be successful and feared that Adams was too vain, opinionated, unpredictable, and stubborn to follow their directions.[[66]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-65)

Adams' opponents were former [Secretary of State](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Secretary_of_State) [Thomas Jefferson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Jefferson) of [Virginia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Virginia), who was joined by [Senator](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Senate) [Aaron Burr](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Aaron_Burr) of [New York](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/New_York) on the [Democratic-Republican](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican_Party_(United_States)) ticket.

As was customary, Adams stayed in his home town of [Quincy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Quincy,_Massachusetts) rather than actively campaign for the Presidency. He wanted to stay out of what he called the silly and wicked game. His [party](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Federalist_Party), however, campaigned for him, while the [Democratic-Republicans](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican_Party_(United_States)) campaigned for Jefferson.

It was expected that Adams would dominate the votes in New England, while Jefferson was expected to win in the Southern states. In the end, Adams won the election by a narrow margin of 71 electoral votes to 68 for Jefferson (who became the vice president).[[67]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-66)

## Presidency: 1797–1801

See also: [*1797 State of the Union Address*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/1797_State_of_the_Union_Address)

[](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:PhiladelphiaPresidentsHouse.jpg)

[http://bits.wikimedia.org/static-1.20wmf9/skins/common/images/magnify-clip.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:PhiladelphiaPresidentsHouse.jpg)

[President's House](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/President's_House_(Philadelphia,_Pennsylvania)), [Philadelphia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Philadelphia). The presidential mansion of George Washington before him, Adams occupied this Philadelphia mansion from March 1797 to May 1800.

As President, Adams followed Washington's lead in making the presidency the example of republican values, and stressing [civic virtue](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Civic_virtue); he was never implicated in any scandal. Adams continued not just the Washington cabinet but all the major programs of the Washington Administration as well. Adams continued to strengthen the central government, in particular by expanding the navy and army. His economic programs were a continuation of those of Hamilton, who regularly consulted with key cabinet members, especially the powerful Secretary of the Treasury, [Oliver Wolcott, Jr.](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Oliver_Wolcott,_Jr.)[[68]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-67) Historians debate his decision to keep the Washington cabinet. Though they were very close to Hamilton, their retention ensured a smoother succession.[[69]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-68) He remained quite independent of his cabinet throughout his term, often making decisions despite strong opposition from it. It was out of this management style that he avoided war with France, despite a strong desire among his cabinet secretaries for war. The [Quasi-War](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Quasi-War) with France resulted in the [disentanglement with European affairs](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Convention_of_1800)that Washington had sought. It also, like [other conflicts](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Battle_of_New_Orleans), had enormous psychological benefits, as America saw itself as holding its own against a European power.

Historian George Herring argues that Adams was the most independent-minded of all the founders.[[70]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-George-69) Though he aligned with the Federalists, he was more his own party, disagreeing with the Federalists almost as much as he did the [Democratic-Republican](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican)opposition.[[71]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-70) Though often described as "prickly", his independence meant that he had a talent for making good decisions in the face of almost universal hostility.[[70]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-George-69) Indeed, it was Adams' decision to push for peace with France, rather than to continue hostilities, that hurt his popularity.[[72]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-71) Though this decision played an important role in his reelection defeat, he was ultimately thrilled with that decision, so much so that he had it engraved on his tombstone.[[73]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-72) Adams spent much of his term at his home in Massachusetts, ignoring the details of political patronage that were not ignored by others. Adams' combative spirit did not always lend itself to presidential decorum, as Adams himself admitted in his old age: "[As president] I refused to suffer in silence. I sighed, sobbed, and groaned, and sometimes screeched and screamed. And I must confess to my shame and sorrow that I sometimes swore."[[74]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-73)

### Quasi-War and peace with France

See also: [*XYZ Affair*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/XYZ_Affair), [*Quasi-War*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Quasi-War), and [*Fries Rebellion*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fries_Rebellion)

John Adams said, in a letter to James Lloyd, January 1815, of peace:

"I desire no other inscription over my gravestone than: Here lies John Adams, who took upon himself the responsibility of the peace with France in the year 1800."[[75]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-74)

Adams' term was marked by intense disputes over foreign policy, in particular a desire to stay out of the [expanding conflict](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/French_Revolution) in Europe. [Britain and France were at war](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/French_Revolutionary_Wars); Hamilton and the Federalists favored Britain, while Jefferson and the Democratic-Republicans favored France.[[76]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-75) The French wanted Jefferson to be elected president, and when he wasn't, they became even more belligerent.[[77]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-76) When Adams [entered office](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams_1797_presidential_inauguration), he realized that he needed to continue Washington's policy of staying out of the European war. Indeed, the intense battle over the [Jay Treaty](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Jay_Treaty) in 1795 permanently polarized politics up and down the nation, marking the start of the [First Party System](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/First_Party_System).[[78]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-77) The French saw America as Britain's junior partner and began seizing American merchant ships that were trading with the British. Americans remained pro-French, due to France's assistance during the [Revolutionary War](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/American_Revolutionary_War). Because of this, Americans wouldn't rally behind Adams, nor anyone else, to stop France.[[79]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-78)

[](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:John_Adams_Presidential_$1_Coin_obverse.png)

[http://bits.wikimedia.org/static-1.20wmf9/skins/common/images/magnify-clip.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:John_Adams_Presidential_$1_Coin_obverse.png)

[Presidential Dollar](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Presidential_Dollar) of John Adams, released in 2007

That problem ended with the [XYZ Affair](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/XYZ_Affair), in which the French demanded huge bribes before any discussions could begin. Before this event, Americans mostly supported France, but after the event, most opposed France. The Jeffersonians, who were friends to France, were embarrassed and quickly became the minority as Americans began to demand full scale war. Adams and his advisers knew that America would be unable to win such a conflict, as France at the time was successfully fighting much of Europe. Instead, Adams pursued a strategy whereby American ships would harass French ships in an effort to stop the French assaults on American interests. This was the undeclared naval war between the U.S. and France, called the [Quasi-War](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Quasi-War), which broke out in 1798. There was danger of invasion from the much larger and more powerful French forces, so Adams and the Federalist congress built up the [army](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/U.S._Army), bringing back Washington at its head. Washington wanted Hamilton to be his second-in-command and, given Washington's fame, Adams reluctantly gave in.[[80]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-79) Given Washington's age, as everyone knew, Hamilton was truly in charge. Adams rebuilt the Navy, adding [six fast, powerful frigates](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Six_original_United_States_frigates), most notably the [USS *Constitution*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/USS_Constitution). To pay for the new Army and Navy, Congress imposed new taxes on property: the Direct Tax of 1798.[[81]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-80) It was the first (and last) such federal tax. Taxpayers were angry, nowhere more so than in southeast Pennsylvania, where the bloodless [Fries's Rebellion](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fries's_Rebellion) broke out among rural German-speaking farmers who protested what they saw as a threat to their republican liberties and to their churches.[[82]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-81)

Hamilton assumed a high degree of control over the War department, and the rift between Adams and Hamilton's supporters grew wider. They acted as though Hamilton were president by demanding that he control the army. They also refused to recognize the necessity of giving prominent Democratic-Republicans positions in the army, which Adams wanted to do in order to gain Democratic-Republican support. By building a large [standing army](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Standing_army), Hamilton's supporters raised popular alarms and played into the hands of the Democratic-Republicans. They also alienated Adams and his large personal following. They shortsightedly viewed the Federalist party as their own tool and ignored the need to pull together the entire nation in the face of war with France.[[83]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-82) Overall, however, due to patriotism and a series of naval victories, the war remained popular and Adams' popularity remained high.

Adams knew victory in an all out war against imperial France would be impossible, so despite the threats to his popularity, he sought peace. In February 1799, he stunned the country by sending diplomat [William Vans Murray](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/William_Vans_Murray) on a peace mission to France. [Napoleon](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Napoleon), realizing that the conflict was pointless, signaled his readiness for friendly relations. At the [Convention of 1800](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Convention_of_1800) the [Treaty of Alliance of 1778](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Treaty_of_Alliance_(1778)) was superseded and the United States could now be free of foreign entanglements, as Washington advised in his farewell address. He brought in [John Marshall](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Marshall) as Secretary of State and demobilized the emergency army.[[84]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-83) Adams avoided war, but deeply split his own party in the process. As he suspected would happen, peace hurt his popularity. Nevertheless, Adams was extremely proud of having kept the nation out of war; later in life he even asked that his tombstone read "Here lies John Adams, who took upon himself the responsibility of Peace with France in the year 1800."[[85]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-84)

### Alien and Sedition Acts

Main article: [*Alien and Sedition Acts*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alien_and_Sedition_Acts)

Though the Democratic-Republicans were discredited by the [XYZ Affair](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/XYZ_Affair), their opposition to the Federalists remained high. In an environment of war, and with recent memories of the[reign of terror](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Reign_of_terror) during the [French Revolution](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/French_Revolution), nerves remained explosive. Democratic-Republicans had supported France, and some even seemed to want an event similar to the French Revolution to come to America to overthrow the Federalists.[[86]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-85) When Democratic-Republicans in some states refused to enforce federal laws, and even threatened possible rebellion, some Federalists threatened to send in an army and force them to capitulate.[[87]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-KnottAlexander-86) As the paranoia sweeping Europe was bleeding over into America, calls for secession reached unparalleled heights, and America seemed ready to rip itself apart.[[87]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-KnottAlexander-86) Some of this was seen by Federalists as having been caused by French and French-sympathizing immigrants. Federalists in Congress therefore passed the [Alien and Sedition Acts](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alien_and_Sedition_Acts), which were signed by Adams in 1798.[[88]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-87)[[89]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-88)

[](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:John_adams_stamp.JPG)

[http://bits.wikimedia.org/static-1.20wmf9/skins/common/images/magnify-clip.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:John_adams_stamp.JPG)

John Adams, as depicted in 1938 on a two-cent American president [U.S. Postage stamp](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/U.S._Presidents_on_U.S._postage_stamps)

There were four separate acts, the [Naturalization Act](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Naturalization_Act_of_1798), the Alien Act, the Alien Enemies Act, and the Sedition Act. These four acts were passed to cool down the opposition by stopping their most extreme firebrands. The Naturalization Act changed the period of residence required before an immigrant could attain American citizenship to 14 years (naturalized citizens tended to vote for the Democratic-Republicans). The Alien Friends Act and the Alien Enemies Act allowed the president to deport any foreigner he thought dangerous to the country. The Sedition Act made it a crime to publish "false, scandalous, and malicious writing" against the government or its officials. Punishments included 2–5 years in prison and fines of up to $5,000. Although Adams had not originated or promoted any of these acts, he nevertheless signed them into law.

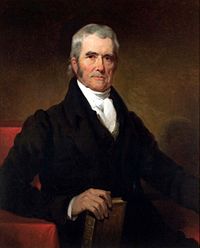
Those acts, and the high-profile prosecution of a number of newspaper editors and one member of Congress by the Federalists, became highly controversial. Some historians have noted that the Alien and Sedition Acts were relatively rarely enforced, as only 10 convictions under the Sedition Act have been identified and as Adams never signed a deportation order, and that the furor over the Alien and Sedition Acts was mainly stirred up by the Democratic-Republicans. However, other historians emphasize that the Acts were highly controversial from the outset, resulting in many aliens leaving the country voluntarily, and created an atmosphere where opposing the Federalists, even on the floor of Congress, could and did result in prosecution. The election of 1800 became a bitter and volatile battle, with each side expressing extraordinary fear of the other party and its policies.[[90]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-89) After Democratic-Republicans won in 1800, they used the acts against Federalists before the acts finally expired.[[91]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-90)

### Reelection campaign 1800

Main article: [*United States presidential election, 1800*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_presidential_election,_1800)

The death of Washington, in 1799, weakened the Federalists, as they lost the one man who symbolized and united the party. In the [presidential election of 1800](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Presidential_election_of_1800), Adams and his fellow Federalist candidate, [Charles Cotesworth Pinckney](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles_Cotesworth_Pinckney), went against the Republican duo of Jefferson and Burr. Hamilton tried his hardest to sabotage Adams' campaign in the hope of boosting Pinckney's chances of winning the presidency. In the end, Adams lost narrowly to Jefferson by 65 to 73 electoral votes, with New York casting the decisive vote.

Adams was defeated because of better organization by the Republicans and Federalist disunity; by the controversy of the Alien and Sedition Acts, the popularity of Jefferson in the south, and the effective politicking of [Aaron Burr](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Aaron_Burr) in [New York State](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/New_York), where the legislature (which selected the electoral college) shifted from Federalist to Democratic-Republican on the basis of a few wards in [New York City](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/New_York_City) controlled by Burr's machine.[[92]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-91) Ultimately, however, Jefferson owed his election victory to the South's inflated number of Electors, which counted slaves under the [three-fifths compromise](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Three-fifths_compromise).[[93]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-History-92)

[](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:John_Marshall_by_Henry_Inman,_1832.jpg)

[http://bits.wikimedia.org/static-1.20wmf9/skins/common/images/magnify-clip.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:John_Marshall_by_Henry_Inman,_1832.jpg)

Adams' appointment of [John Marshall](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Marshall)is often cited as one of his most important contributions

In the closing months of his term Adams became the first president to occupy the new, but unfinished [President's Mansion](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/White_House) (later known as the White House), beginning November 1, 1800.[[94]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-93)

### Midnight Judges

Main article: [*Midnight Judges*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Midnight_Judges)

The lame-duck session of Congress enacted the Judiciary Act of 1801, which created a set of federal appeals courts between the district courts and the Supreme Court. The purpose of the statute was twofold—first, to remedy the defects in the federal judicial system inherent in the [Judiciary Act of 1789](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Judiciary_Act_of_1789), and, second, to enable the defeated Federalists to staff the new judicial offices with loyal Federalists in the face of the party's defeat in presidential and congressional elections in 1800.[[95]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-94) As his term was expiring, Adams filled the vacancies created by this statute by appointing a series of judges, whom his opponents called the "[Midnight Judges](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Midnight_Judges)" because most of them were formally appointed days before the presidential term expired. Most of these judges lost their posts when the Jeffersonian Republicans enacted the Judiciary Act of 1802, abolishing the courts created by the Judiciary Act of 1801 and returning the structure of the federal courts to its original structure as specified in the 1789 statute. One of Adams' greatest legacies was his naming of [John Marshall](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Marshall) as the fourth [Chief Justice of the United States](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chief_Justice_of_the_United_States) to succeed [Oliver Ellsworth](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Oliver_Ellsworth), who had retired due to ill health. Marshall's long tenure represents the most lasting influence of the Federalists, as Marshall infused the Constitution with a judicious and carefully reasoned nationalistic interpretation and established the Judicial Branch as the equal of the Executive and Legislative branches.[[96]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-95)

### Speeches

#### Inaugural Addresses

* [Inaugural Address](http://en.wikisource.org/wiki/John_Adams'_Inaugural_Address) (March 4, 1797)

#### State of the Union Address

* [First State of the Union Address](http://en.wikisource.org/wiki/John_Adams'_First_State_of_the_Union_Address) (November 22, 1797)
* [Second State of the Union Address](http://en.wikisource.org/wiki/John_Adams'_Second_State_of_the_Union_Address), (December 8, 1798)
* [Third State of the Union Address](http://en.wikisource.org/wiki/John_Adams'_Third_State_of_the_Union_Address), (December 3, 1799)
* [Fourth State of the Union Address](http://en.wikisource.org/wiki/John_Adams'_Fourth_State_of_the_Union_Address), (November 22, 1800)

## Administration, Cabinet and Supreme Court Appointments 1797–1801

|  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- |
| |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | | The Adams Cabinet | | | | Office | Name | Term | |  | | | | [President](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/President_of_the_United_States) | John Adams | 1797–1801 | | [Vice President](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vice_President_of_the_United_States) | [**Thomas Jefferson**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Jefferson) | 1797–1801 | |  | | | | [Secretary of State](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Secretary_of_State) | [**Timothy Pickering**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Timothy_Pickering) | 1797–1800 | | [**John Marshall**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Marshall) | 1800–1801 | |  | | | | [Secretary of Treasury](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Secretary_of_the_Treasury) | [**Oliver Wolcott, Jr.**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Oliver_Wolcott,_Jr.) | 1797–1801 | | [**Samuel Dexter**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Samuel_Dexter) | 1801 | |  | | | | [Secretary of War](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Secretary_of_War) | [**James McHenry**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_McHenry) | 1796–1800 | | [**Samuel Dexter**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Samuel_Dexter) | 1800–1801 | |  | | | | [Attorney General](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Attorney_General) | [**Charles Lee**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles_Lee_(Attorney_General)) | 1797–1801 | |  | | | | [Secretary of the Navy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Secretary_of_the_Navy) | [**Benjamin Stoddert**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Benjamin_Stoddert) | 1798–1801 | |  | |  |  |  | | --- | --- | --- | | Supreme Court Appointments by President Adams | | | | Position | Name | Term | |  | | | | [Chief Justice](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chief_Justice_of_the_United_States) | [**John Jay**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Jay) | 1800 (declined) | | [**John Marshall**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Marshall) | 1801–1835 | |  | | | | [Associate Justice](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Associate_Justice_of_the_Supreme_Court_of_the_United_States) | [**Bushrod Washington**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bushrod_Washington) | 1799–1829 | | [**Alfred Moore**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alfred_Moore) | 1800–1804 | |

## After his presidency

[](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Brooklyn_Museum_-_Portrait_of_John_Adams_-_Samuel_Finley_Breese_Morse_-_overall.jpg)

[http://bits.wikimedia.org/static-1.20wmf9/skins/common/images/magnify-clip.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Brooklyn_Museum_-_Portrait_of_John_Adams_-_Samuel_Finley_Breese_Morse_-_overall.jpg)

John Adams, ca 1816, by [Samuel F.B. Morse](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Samuel_F.B._Morse) ([Brooklyn Museum](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Brooklyn_Museum_of_Art))

Following his 1800 defeat, Adams retired into private life. Depressed when he left office, he did not attend Jefferson's inauguration, making him one of only four surviving presidents (i.e., those who did not die in office) not to attend his successor's inauguration. Interestingly, one of the other three was his son, [John Quincy Adams](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Quincy_Adams). Adams' correspondence with Jefferson at the time of the transition suggests that he did not feel the animosity or resentment that later scholars have attributed to him. He left Washington before Jefferson's inauguration as much out of sorrow at the death of his son Charles Adams (due in part to the younger man's alcoholism) and his desire to rejoin his wife Abigail, who had left for Massachusetts months before the inauguration. Adams resumed farming at his home, [Peacefield](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Peacefield), in the town of Quincy (formerly a part of the town of Braintree, as it was earlier in his life). He began to work on an autobiography (which he never finished), and resumed correspondence with such old friends as [Benjamin Waterhouse](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Benjamin_Waterhouse) and [Benjamin Rush](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Benjamin_Rush). He also began a bitter and resentful correspondence with an old family friend, [Mercy Otis Warren](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mercy_Otis_Warren), protesting how in her 1805 history of the American Revolution she had, in his view, caricatured his political beliefs and misrepresented his services to the country. Primarily, this revolved around a dispute about whether Adams was sufficiently republican in Warren's view, instead of monarchical, and was related to the Federalist/Republican political divide.[[97]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-Ferling_1992_ch_20-96)

After Jefferson's retirement from public life in 1809 after two terms as President, Adams became more vocal. For three years he published a stream of letters in the [*Boston Patriot* newspaper](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Boston_Patriot_(newspaper)), presenting a long and almost line-by-line refutation of an 1800 pamphlet by Hamilton attacking his conduct and character. Though Hamilton had died in 1804 from a mortal wound sustained in his notorious duel with [Aaron Burr](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Aaron_Burr), Adams felt the need to vindicate his character against the New Yorker's vehement attacks.[[98]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-97)

In early 1812, Adams reconciled with Jefferson. Their mutual friend [Benjamin Rush](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Benjamin_Rush), a fellow signer of the [Declaration of Independence](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Declaration_of_Independence)who had been corresponding with both, encouraged each man to reach out to the other. On New Year's Day 1812, Adams sent a brief, friendly note to Jefferson to accompany the delivery of "two pieces of homespun," a two-volume collection of lectures on rhetoric by [John Quincy Adams](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Quincy_Adams). Jefferson replied immediately with a warm, friendly letter, and the two men revived their friendship, which they conducted by mail. The correspondence that they resumed in 1812 lasted the rest of their lives, and thereafter has been hailed as one of their greatest legacies and a monument of American literature.[[99]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-Cappon_1988-98)

[](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Gilbert_Stuart_John_Adams.jpg)

[http://bits.wikimedia.org/static-1.20wmf9/skins/common/images/magnify-clip.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Gilbert_Stuart_John_Adams.jpg)

John Adams was nearly 89 when, at the request of his son, John Quincy Adams, he posed a final time for [Gilbert Stuart](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gilbert_Stuart) (1823).

Their letters are rich in insight into both the period and the minds of the two Presidents and revolutionary leaders. Their correspondence lasted fourteen years, and consisted of 158 letters.[[99]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-Cappon_1988-98) It was in these years that the two men discussed "natural aristocracy." Jefferson said, "The natural aristocracy I consider as the most precious gift of nature for the instruction, the trusts, and government of society. And indeed it would have been inconsistent in creation to have formed man for the social state, and not to have provided virtue and wisdom enough to manage the concerns of society. May we not even say that the form of government is best which provides most effectually for a pure selection of these natural aristoi into the offices of government?"[[100]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-99) Adams wondered if it ever would be so clear who these people were, "Your distinction between natural and artificial aristocracy does not appear to me well founded. Birth and wealth are conferred on some men as imperiously by nature, as genius, strength, or beauty. . . . When aristocracies are established by human laws and honour, wealth, and power are made hereditary by municipal laws and political institutions, then I acknowledge artificial aristocracy to commence."[[101]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-100) It would always be true, Adams argued, that fate would bestow influence on some men for reasons other than true wisdom and virtue. That being the way of nature, he thought such "talents" were natural. A good government, therefore, had to account for that reality.

Sixteen months before John Adams' death, his son, [John Quincy Adams](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Quincy_Adams), became the sixth President of the United States (1825–1829), the only son of a former President to hold the office until [George W. Bush](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_W._Bush) in 2001.

Adams' daughter [Abigail ("Nabby")](Smith) was married to [Representative](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Congressman) [William Stephens Smith](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/William_Stephens_Smith), but she returned to her parents' home after the failure of her marriage. She died of breast cancer in 1813. His son Charles died as an alcoholic in 1800. Abigail, his wife, died of[typhoid](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Typhoid) on October 28, 1818. His son Thomas and his family lived with Adams and Louisa Smith (Abigail's niece by her brother William) to the end of Adams' life.[[97]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-Ferling_1992_ch_20-96)

## Death

[](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Graves_of_the_Adams,_Quincy,_Massachusetts.JPG)

[http://bits.wikimedia.org/static-1.20wmf9/skins/common/images/magnify-clip.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Graves_of_the_Adams,_Quincy,_Massachusetts.JPG)

Tombs of Presidents John Adams (distance) and [John Quincy Adams](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Quincy_Adams)(foreground) and their wives, in a family crypt beneath the [United First Parish Church](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_First_Parish_Church,_Quincy,_Massachusetts).

Less than a month before his death, John Adams issued a statement about the destiny of the United States, which historians such as[Joy Hakim](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Joy_Hakim) have characterized as a "warning" for his fellow citizens. Adams said:

My best wishes, in the joys, and festivities, and the solemn services of that day on which will be completed the fiftieth year from its birth, of the independence of the United States: a memorable epoch in the annals of the human race, destined in future history to form the brightest or the blackest page, according to the use or the abuse of those political institutions by which they shall, in time to come, be shaped by the human mind.[[102]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-101)

On July 4, 1826, the fiftieth anniversary of the adoption of the Declaration of Independence, Adams died at his home in Quincy. Told that it was the Fourth, he answered clearly, "It is a great day. It is a *good* day." His last words have been reported as "Thomas Jefferson survives" (Jefferson himself, however, had died hours before he did). His death left [Charles Carroll of Carrollton](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles_Carroll_of_Carrollton) as the last surviving signatory of the Declaration of Independence. John Adams died while his son [John Quincy Adams](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Quincy_Adams) was president.[[103]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-102)

His crypt lies at [United First Parish Church](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_First_Parish_Church) (also known as the *Church of the Presidents*) in Quincy. Originally, he was buried in [Hancock Cemetery](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hancock_Cemetery), across the road from the Church. Until his record was broken by [Ronald Reagan](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ronald_Reagan) in 2001, he was the nation's longest-living President (90 years, 247 days) maintaining that record for 175 years.

## Religious views

[](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Adams'_Burial_Site_002.jpg)

[http://bits.wikimedia.org/static-1.20wmf9/skins/common/images/magnify-clip.png](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Adams'_Burial_Site_002.jpg)

[United First Parish Church](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_First_Parish_Church), Quincy

Adams was raised a [Congregationalist](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Congregational_church), since his ancestors were puritans. According to his biographer David McCullough, "as his family and friends knew, Adams was both a devout Christian, and an independent thinker".[[104]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-103) In a letter to Benjamin Rush, Adams credited religion with the success of his ancestors since their migration to the New World in the 1630s.[[105]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-104) Adams was educated at Harvard when the influence of [deism](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Deism) was growing there, and sometimes used deistic terms in his speeches and writing.[[106]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-105) He also believed that regular church service was beneficial to man's moral sense. Everett (1966) concludes that "Adams strove for a religion based on a common sense sort of reasonableness" and maintained that religion must change and evolve toward perfection.[[107]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-106) Fielding (1940) argues that Adams' beliefs synthesized Puritan, deist, and [humanist](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Humanism) concepts. Adams at one point said that Christianity had originally been [revelatory](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Revelation), but was being misinterpreted and misused in the service of superstition, fraud, and unscrupulous power.[[108]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-107) Goff (1993) acknowledges Fielding's "persuasive argument that Adams never was a deist because he allowed the suspension of the laws of nature and believed that evil was internal, not the result of external institutions."[[109]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-108)

Frazer (2004) notes that, while Adams shared many perspectives with deists, "Adams clearly was not a deist. Deism rejected any and all supernatural activity and intervention by God; consequently, deists did not believe in miracles or God's providence....Adams, however, did believe in miracles, providence, and, to a certain extent, the Bible as revelation."[[110]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-109) Fraser argues that Adams' "theistic rationalism, like that of the other Founders, was a sort of middle ground between Protestantism and deism."[[111]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-110) By contrast, David L. Holmes has argued that John Adams, beginning as a Congregationalist, ended his days as a Christian Unitarian, accepting central tenets of the Unitarian creed but also accepting Jesus as the redeemer of humanity and the biblical account of his miracles as true.[[112]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-111) In common with many of his Protestant contemporaries, Adams criticized the claims to universal authority made by the Roman Catholic Church.[[113]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-112)In 1796, Adams denounced political opponent [Thomas Paine](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Paine)'s criticisms of Christianity in his Deist book [*The Age of Reason*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Age_of_Reason), saying, "The Christian religion is, above all the religions that ever prevailed or existed in ancient or modern times, the religion of wisdom, virtue, equity and humanity, let the Blackguard Paine say what he will."[[114]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams" \l "cite_note-113)

## Ancestry

|  |
| --- |
| [[show](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams)]**Ancestors of John Adams** |

## Biographies

The first notable biography of John Adams appeared as the first two volumes of *The Works of John Adams, Esq., Second President of the United States*, edited by Charles Francis Adams and published between 1850 and 1856 by Charles C. Little and James Brown in Boston. This biography's first seven chapters were the work of [John Quincy Adams](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Quincy_Adams), but the rest of the biography was the work of [Charles Francis Adams](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles_Francis_Adams,_Sr.).

The first modern biography was *Honest John Adams*, a 1933 biography by the noted French specialist in American history Gilbert Chinard, who came to Adams after writing his acclaimed 1929 biography of [Thomas Jefferson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Jefferson). For a generation, Chinard's work was regarded as the best life of Adams, and it is still a key factor in determining the themes of Adams biographical and historical scholarship. Following the opening of the Adams family papers in the 1950s, [Page Smith](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Page_Smith) published the first major biography to use these previously inaccessible primary sources; his biography won a 1962 [Bancroft Prize](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bancroft_Prize) but was criticized for its scanting of Adams' intellectual life and its diffuseness. In 1975, [Peter Shaw](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Peter_Shaw) published *The Character of John Adams,* a thematic biography noted for its graceful prose and its psychological insight into Adams' life. The 1992 character study by [Joseph J. Ellis](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Joseph_J._Ellis), *Passionate Sage: The Character and Legacy of John Adams,* was Ellis's first major publishing success and remains one of the most useful and insightful studies of Adams' personality. In 1993, the Revolutionary War historian and biographer [John E. Ferling](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_E._Ferling) published his acclaimed *John Adams,* also noted for its psychological sensitivity; many scholars regard it as the best biography to date.

In 2001, the popular historian [David McCullough](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/David_McCullough) published a large biography of John Adams that won various awards and general acclaim. McCullough's biography was developed into a 2008 [TV miniseries](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams_(TV_miniseries)), in which [Paul Giamatti](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Paul_Giamatti) portrayed John Adams. Finance writer [James Grant](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Grant_(finance)) published *John Adams, Party of One* in 2005.

Source: Kenneth C. Martis, *The Historical Atlas of Political Parties in the United States Congress, 1789-1989* (1989). The numbers are estimates.

The affiliation of many Congress-men in the earliest years is an assignment by later historians; these were slowly coalescing groups with initially considerable independent thinking and voting; Cunningham noted that only about a quarter of the House of Representatives, up till 1794, voted with Madison as much as two-thirds of the time, and another quarter against him two-thirds of the time, leaving almost half as fairly independent. [Albert Gallatin](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Albert_Gallatin) recalled only two caucuses on legislative policy between 1795 and 1801, one over appropriations for Jay's Treaty, the other over the [Quasi-War](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Quasi-War), and in neither case did the party decide to vote unanimously.[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-7)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Democratic-Republican_Party&action=edit&section=4)]Organizational strategy

The new party invented some of the campaign and organizational techniques that were later adopted by the Federalists and became standard American practice. It was especially effective in building a network of [newspapers](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/History_of_American_newspapers) in major cities to broadcast its statements and editorialize its policies.[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-8) [Fisher Ames](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fisher_Ames), a leading Federalist, used the term "[Jacobin](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Jacobin_(politics))" to link members of Jefferson's party to the radicals of the [French Revolution](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/French_Revolution). He blamed the newspapers for electing Jefferson; they were, he wrote, "an overmatch for any Government…. The Jacobins owe their triumph to the unceasing use of this engine; not so much to skill in use of it as by repetition."[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-9)

As one historian explained, "It was the good fortune of the Republicans to have within their ranks a number of highly gifted political manipulators and propagandists. Some of them had the ability… to not only see and analyze the problem at hand but to present it in a succinct fashion; in short, to fabricate the apt phrase, to coin the compelling slogan and appeal to the electorate on any given issue in language it could understand." Outstanding propagandists included editor [William Duane](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/William_Duane) and party leaders [Albert Gallatin](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Albert_Gallatin), [Thomas Cooper](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Cooper_(US_politician)) and Jefferson himself.[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-10)

Just as important was effective party organization of the sort that [John J. Beckley](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_J._Beckley) pioneered. In 1796, he managed the Jefferson campaign in Pennsylvania, blanketing the state with agents who passed out 30,000 hand-written tickets, naming all 15 electors (printed tickets were not allowed). He told one agent, "In a few days a select republican friend from the City will call upon you with a parcel of tickets to be distributed in your County. Any assistance and advice you can furnish him with, as to suitable districts & characters, will I am sure be rendered." Beckley was the first American professional campaign manager, and his techniques were quickly adopted in other states.[[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-11)

The emergence of the new organizational strategies can be seen in the politics of Connecticut around 1806, which have been well documented by Cunningham. The Federalists dominated Connecticut, so the Republicans had to work harder to win. In 1806, the state leadership sent town leaders instructions for the forthcoming elections. Every town manager was told by state leaders "to appoint a district manager in each district or section of his town, obtaining from each an assurance that he will faithfully do his duty." Then the town manager was instructed to compile lists and total the number of taxpayers and the number of eligible voters, find out how many favored the Republicans and how many the Federalists, and to count the number of supporters of each party who were not eligible to vote but who might qualify (by age or taxes) at the next election. These highly detailed returns were to be sent to the county manager and in turn were compiled and sent to the state manager. Using these lists of potential voters, the managers were told to get all eligible people to town meetings and help the young men qualify to vote. The state manager was responsible for supplying party newspapers to each town for distribution by town and district managers.[[13]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-12) This highly coordinated "get-out-the-vote" drive would be familiar to modern political campaigners, but was the first of its kind in world history.

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Democratic-Republican_Party&action=edit&section=5)]Revolution of 1800

Main article: [*United States presidential election, 1800*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_presidential_election,_1800)

The party's electors secured a majority in the 1800 election, but an equal number of electors cast votes for Jefferson and [Aaron Burr](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Aaron_Burr). The tie sent the election to the House, and Federalists there blocked any choice. Finally Hamilton, believing that Burr would be a poor choice for president, intervened, letting Jefferson win (a move that would result in the collapse of the Federalist Party and Hamilton's death, four years later, at the hands of Burr in a pistol duel). Starting in 1800 in what Jefferson called the “Revolution of 1800”, the party took control of the presidency and both houses of Congress, beginning a quarter century of control of those institutions. A faction called “Old Republicans” opposed the nationalism that grew popular after 1815; they were stunned when party leaders started a [Second Bank of the United States](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Second_Bank_of_the_United_States) in 1816.

The first official Republican Congressional Caucus meeting took place at Marache's boarding house on May 11, 1800 in Philadelphia, PA. The January 26, 1799 letter Thomas Jefferson wrote to Elbridge Gerry became the party's platform.

In the Senate chamber on February 25, 1804 a "Convention of Republican members of both houses of Congress" met. Senator Stephen Bradley presided, a Committee on Presidential Electors was formed and it was resolved that Thomas Jefferson be nominated for the Office of President of the United States and George Clinton be nominated for the Office of Vice-President of the United States.

The party held a convention by the same name on January 23, 1808, again in the Senate chamber at 6:00 pm on a Saturday. Senator Stephen Bradley, who was the President Pro Tempore of the Senate again President of this convention with Representative Richard Johnson as the Secretary. A Committee on Correspondence was formed and James Madison was nominated for the Office of President of the United States and with George Clinton nominated for a second term in the Office of Vice-President of the United States.

Legislative issues were handled by the Committee of the Whole elected Speaker of the House of Representatives and floor leaders, who at that time were the Chairman for the Committee on Ways and Means of the House of Representatives and Chairman for the Committee on Finance of the Senate.

The state legislatures often instructed Members of Congress how to vote on specific issues. More exactly, they "instructed" the Senators (who were elected by the legislatures), and "requested" the Representatives (who were elected by the people.) On rare occasions a Senator resigned rather than follow instructions.

The opposition Federalist Party, suffering from a lack of leadership after the death of Hamilton and the retirement of [John Adams](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Adams), quickly declined; it revived briefly in opposition to the [War of 1812](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/War_of_1812), but the extremism of its [Hartford Convention](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hartford_Convention) of 1815 utterly destroyed it as a political force.

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Democratic-Republican_Party&action=edit&section=6)]Monroe and Adams, 1816–1828

In rapidly expanding western states, the Federalists had few supporters. Every state had a distinct political geography that shaped party membership. In Pennsylvania, the Republicans were weakest around [Philadelphia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Philadelphia) and strongest in [Scots-Irish](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Scots-Irish_American) settlements in the west. Members came from all social classes, but came predominantly from the poor, subsistence farmers, mechanics and tradesmen.[[14]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-13) After the [War of 1812](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/War_of_1812), partisanship subsided across the young republic—people called it the [Era of Good Feelings](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Era_of_Good_Feelings). James Monroe narrowly won the party's nomination for President in Congress over [William Crawford](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/William_H._Crawford) in 1816 and defeated Federalist [Rufus King](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rufus_King) in the general election.

In the early years of the party, the key central organization grew out of caucuses of Congressional leaders in Washington. However, the key battles to choose electors occurred in the states, not in the caucus. In many cases, legislatures still chose electors; in others, the election of electors was heavily influenced by local parties that were heavily controlled by relatively small groups of officials. Without a significant Federalist opposition, the need for party unity was greatly diminished and the party's organization faded away.

[James Monroe](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe) ran under the party's banner in the [1820 election](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/U.S._presidential_election,_1820) and built support by consensus. Monroe faced no serious rival and was nearly unanimously elected by the electoral college. The party's historic domination by the Virginian delegation faded as New York and Pennsylvania became more important. In the [1824 election](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/U.S._presidential_election,_1824), most of the party in Congress boycotted the caucus; only a small rump group backed [William Crawford](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/William_H._Crawford). The Crawford faction included most "Old Republicans", who remained committed to states' rights and the Principles of 1798, and distrustful of the nationalizing program promoted by [Henry Clay](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Henry_Clay) and [John C. Calhoun](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_C._Calhoun).

Thomas Jefferson wrote on the state of party politics in the early 1820s:[[15]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-14)

An opinion prevails that there is no longer any distinction, that the republicans & Federalists are completely amalgamated but it is not so. The amalgamation is of name only, not of principle. All indeed call themselves by the name of Republicans, because that of Federalists was extinguished in the battle of New Orleans. But the truth is that finding that monarchy is a desperate wish in this country, they rally to the point which they think next best, a consolidated government. Their aim is now therefore to break down the rights reserved by the constitution to the states as a bulwark against that consolidation, the fear of which produced the whole of the opposition to the constitution at its birth. Hence new Republicans in Congress, preaching the doctrines of the old Federalists, and the new nick-names of Ultras and Radicals. But I trust they will fail under the new, as the old name, and that the friends of the real constitution and union will prevail against consolidation, as they have done against monarchism. I scarcely know myself which is most to be deprecated, a consolidation, or dissolution of the states. The horrors of both are beyond the reach of human foresight.

In the aftermath of the disputed [1824](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_presidential_election,_1824) election, the separate factions took on many characteristics of parties in their own right. Adams' supporters, in league with Clay, favored modernization, banks, industrial development, and federal spending for roads and other [internal improvements](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Internal_improvements), which the Old Republicans and the Jackson men usually opposed. Writing in his personal journal on December 13, 1826, President Adams noted the difficulty he faced in attempting to be nonpartisan in appointing men to office:[[16]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-15)

And it is upon the occasion of appointments to office that all the wormwood and the gall of the old party hatred ooze out. Not a vacancy to any office occurs but there is a distinguished federalist started and pushed home as a candidate to fill it—always well qualified, sometimes in an eminent degree, and yet so obnoxious to the Republican party, that he cannot be appointed without exciting a vehement clamor against him and the Administration. It becomes thus impossible to fill any appointment without offending one half of the community—the federalists, if their associate is overlooked; the Republicans, if he is preferred.

Presidential electors were now all chosen by direct election, except in South Carolina, where the state legislatures chose them. White manhood [suffrage](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Suffrage) was the norm throughout the West and in most of the East as well. The voters thus were much more powerful, and to win their votes required complex party organization. Under the leadership of [Martin Van Buren](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Martin_Van_Buren), a firm believer in political organization, the Jacksonians built strong state and local organizations throughout the country. The Old Republicans, or "Radicals," mostly supported Jackson and joined with supporters of incumbent Vice President Calhoun in an alliance. President Adams was defeated by Andrew Jackson in the election of [1828](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_presidential_election,_1828).

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Democratic-Republican_Party&action=edit&section=7)]Party name

Political parties were new in the United States, and people were not accustomed to having formal names for them. There was no single, official name for the party. Party members generally called themselves "Republicans" and voted for what they called the "Republican Party," "republican ticket," or the "republican interest".[[17]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-Republican_name-16) Jefferson and Madison often used the terms "republican" and "Republican party" in their letters.[[18]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-17) The 1804 Convention of Republican members of Congress that renominated Jefferson described itself as a, "regular republican caucus."

This name was used by contemporaries only occasionally.[[19]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-18)

The term "republican" was in widespread usage from the 1770s to describe the political values of the nation, especially the emphasis on civic duty and the opposition to corruption, elitism, aristocracy and monarchy.[[20]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-19) The word is used in the U.S. Constitution.[[21]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-20)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Democratic-Republican_Party&action=edit&section=8)]Claims to the party's heritage

The [Democratic Party](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic_Party_(United_States)) is often called "the party of [Jefferson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Jefferson),"[[22]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-21)[[23]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-22)[[24]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-23) while the modern [Republican Party](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Republican_Party_(United_States)) is often called "the party of [Lincoln](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Abraham_Lincoln)."

The Republican party evolved in the National Republican Party during the 1824 elections. When the election was thrown to the House of Representatives, [Henry Clay](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Henry_Clay) backed [John Quincy Adams](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Quincy_Adams) to deny the presidency to [Andrew Jackson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Andrew_Jackson), a longtime political rival.

The first [Democratic national convention](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/1832_Democratic_National_Convention) was held in Baltimore, Maryland on May 21–23, 1832. Andrew Jackson was nominated and went on to win the presidency.

The Adams/Clay alliance became the basis of the [National Republican Party](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/National_Republican_Party_(United_States)), a rival to the Jackson's Democracy. This party favored a higher tariff in order to protect U.S. manufacturers, as well as public works, especially roads. Many former members of the defunct Federalist Party, including [Daniel Webster](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Daniel_Webster), joined the party. After Clay's defeat by Jackson in the 1832 presidential election, the National Republicans were absorbed into the [Whig Party](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Whig_Party_(United_States)), a diverse group of Jackson opponents. Taking a leaf from the Jacksonians, the Whigs tended to nominate non-ideological war heroes as their presidential candidates. The Whig party fell apart in the 1850s over the question of whether to allow the expansion of slavery into new territories.

The modern [Republican Party](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/History_of_the_Republican_Party_(United_States)) was founded in 1854 to oppose the expansion of slavery; its name was chosen in reference to Jefferson's earlier party. Many former Whig party leaders (such as [Abraham Lincoln](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Abraham_Lincoln)) and former [Free Soil Party](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Free_Soil_Party) leaders joined the newly formed anti-slavery party.[[25]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-24) The party sought to combine Jefferson's ideals of liberty and equality with Clay's program of using an active government to modernize the economy.[[26]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican" \l "cite_note-25)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Democratic-Republican_Party&action=edit&section=9)]Party Presidents

**James Monroe** (April 28, 1758 – July 4, 1831) was the [fifth](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_Presidents_of_the_United_States) [President of the United States](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/President_of_the_United_States) (1817–1825). Monroe was the last president who was a [Founding Father of the United States](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Founding_Fathers_of_the_United_States), the third of them to die on Independence Day, and the last president from the [Virginia dynasty](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Virginia_dynasty) and the [Republican Generation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_Presidents_of_the_United_States_by_date_of_birth" \l "Generation).[[1]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-0) His presidency was marked both by an "[Era of Good Feelings](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Era_of_Good_Feelings)" – a period of relatively little partisan strife – and later by the [Panic of 1819](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Panic_of_1819) and a fierce national debate over conditions of the admission of the [Missouri Territory](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Missouri_Territory). Monroe is most noted for his foreign policy proclamation in the [Monroe Doctrine](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Monroe_Doctrine) in 1823, which stated that the United States would not tolerate further European intervention in the [Americas](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Americas).

Born in [Westmoreland County](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Westmoreland_County,_Virginia), [Virginia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Virginia), Monroe was of the planter class and fought in the [American Revolutionary War](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/American_Revolutionary_War). He was injured in the [Battle of Trenton](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Battle_of_Trenton) with a musket ball to his shoulder. After studying law under [Thomas Jefferson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Jefferson) from 1780 to 1783, he served as a [delegate](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_delegates_to_the_Continental_Congress) in the [Continental Congress](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Continental_Congress). As an [anti-federalist](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anti-Federalism) delegate to the Virginia convention that considered ratification of the[United States Constitution](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Constitution), Monroe opposed [ratification](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ratification), claiming it gave too much power to the central government. He took an active part in the new government, and in 1790 he was elected to the [Senate](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Senate) of [the first United States Congress](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/1st_United_States_Congress), where he joined the[Jeffersonians](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican_Party). He gained experience as an executive as the [Governor of Virginia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Virginia) and rose to national prominence as a diplomat in France, when he helped negotiate the [Louisiana Purchase](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Louisiana_Purchase) in 1803. Monroe was of French and Scottish descent.

During the [War of 1812](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/War_of_1812), Monroe held the critical roles of [Secretary of State](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Secretary_of_State) and the [Secretary of War](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Secretary_of_War) under President [James Madison](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Madison).[[2]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-Hart1-1) Facing little opposition from the fractured [Federalist Party](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Federalist_Party), Monroe was [easily elected](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_presidential_election,_1816) president in 1816, winning over 80 percent of the electoral vote and becoming the last president during the [First Party System](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/First_Party_System) era of American politics. As president, he sought to ease partisan tensions and embarked on a tour of the country and was well received everywhere.[[*citation needed*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:Citation_needed)] As nationalism surged, partisan fury subsided and the "[Era of Good Feelings](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Era_of_Good_Feelings)" ensued until the [Panic of 1819](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Panic_of_1819) struck and [dispute over the admission of Missouri](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Missouri_Compromise) embroiled the country in 1820. Nonetheless, Monroe [won near-unanimous reelection](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_presidential_election,_1820). In 1823, he announced the[Monroe Doctrine](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Monroe_Doctrine), which became a landmark in American foreign policy. His presidency concluded the first period of American presidential history before the beginning of [Jacksonian democracy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Jacksonian_democracy) and the [Second Party System](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Second_Party_System) era. Following his retirement in 1825, Monroe was plagued by financial difficulties. He died in [New York City](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/New_York_City) on July 4, 1831.

First tutored at home by his mother Elizabeth, between the ages of 11 and 16, the young Monroe studied at Campbelltown Academy, a school run by the Reverend Archibald Campbell of Washington Parish. There he excelled as a pupil and progressed through Latin and mathematics at a rate faster than that of most boys his age. [John Marshall](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Marshall), later [Chief Justice of the United States](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chief_Justice_of_the_United_States), was among his classmates.

In 1774 at the age of 16, Monroe's father died and he inherited his small [plantation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Plantation) and slaves, officially joining the ruling class of the planter elite in what had become the slave society of Virginia.[[4]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-3) He began forming a close relationship with his maternal uncle, the influential Judge Joseph Jones, who had been educated at the [Inns of Court](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Inns_of_Court) in London and was the executor of his father's estate.

That same year, Monroe enrolled in the [College of William and Mary](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/College_of_William_and_Mary). But in 1774, most students were charged with excitement over the prospect of rebellion against [King George](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_III_of_the_United_Kingdom). The following spring, Monroe dropped out of college and joined the 3rd Virginia Regiment in the [Continental Army](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Continental_Army).[[5]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-4) In June 1775, after the battles of Lexington and Concord, Monroe joined 24 older men in raiding the arsenal at the Governor's Palace. They used the loot of 200 muskets and 300 swords to arm the Williamsburg [militia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Militia). The following spring, Monroe dropped out of college and joined the Continental Army where, as a planter, he was commissioned as an officer. He never returned to earn a degree.

Although [Andrew Jackson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Andrew_Jackson) served as a courier in a militia unit at age thirteen, Monroe is regarded as the last U.S. President who was a[Revolutionary War](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/American_Revolutionary_War) veteran, since he served as an officer of the Continental Army and took part in combat.[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-5) He served with distinction at the [Battle of Trenton](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Battle_of_Trenton), where he was shot in his left shoulder. He spent three months recuperating from his wound. In [John Trumbull](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Trumbull)'s painting *Capture of the*[*Hessians*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hessians)*at the Battle of Trenton*, Monroe can be seen lying wounded at left center of painting. In the famous painting, [*Washington Crossing the Delaware*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Washington_Crossing_the_Delaware), Monroe is depicted holding the flag.[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-Library-6)[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-7)

He left the war and, between 1780 and 1783, Monroe studied law as a legal apprentice under [Thomas Jefferson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Jefferson).[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-isbn0-19-530092-0-8)[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-log-cabin-76-9) Monroe was not particularly interested in legal theory or practice, but chose to take it up because he thought that it offered "the most immediate rewards" and could ease his path to wealth, social standing, and political influence.[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-log-cabin-76-9) After passing the bar, he practiced law in [Fredericksburg, Virginia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fredericksburg,_Virginia).[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-Library-6)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=James_Monroe&action=edit&section=3)]Marriage and family

James Monroe married [Elizabeth Kortright](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Elizabeth_Kortright) (1768–1830), daughter of Laurence Kortright and Hannah Aspinwall Kortright, on February 16, 1786, in New York City. He had met her while serving with the Continental Congress, which then met in New York, the temporary capital of the new nation. After a brief honeymoon on [Long Island, New York](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Long_Island,_New_York), the Monroes returned to New York City to live with her father until Congress adjourned. The Monroes had the following children:

* Eliza Monroe (1786–1835) – married [George Hay](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Hay_(Virginia)) in 1808 and substituted for her ailing mother as official White House hostess for her father's presidential events.
* James Spence Monroe (1799–1801) – his grave reads "J.S. Monroe", so the proper names are speculative but typical of naming patterns of the time, which passed on family names.
* Maria Hester Monroe (1803–1850) – married her cousin [Samuel L. Gouverneur](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Samuel_L._Gouverneur) on March 8, 1820, in the first wedding of a president's child in the White House.[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-10)[[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-11)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=James_Monroe&action=edit&section=4)]Plantation

He sold his small inherited Virginia plantation in 1783 to enter law and politics. Monroe later fulfilled his youthful dream of becoming the owner of a large [plantation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Plantation) and wielding great political power, but his plantation was never profitable. Although he owned much more land and [slaves](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Slaves) and speculated in property, he was rarely on-site to oversee the operations. Overseers treated the slaves harshly to force production, but the plantations barely broke even. Monroe incurred debts by his lavish lifestyle and often sold property (including slaves) to pay them off.[[13]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-12)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=James_Monroe&action=edit&section=5)]Early political career

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=James_Monroe&action=edit&section=6)]Virginia politics

Monroe was elected to the [Virginia House of Delegates](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Virginia_House_of_Delegates) in 1782. After serving for the Continental legislature, he was elected to the Fourth [Continental Congress](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Continental_Congress) in November 1783. He was also elected to and served in the Fifth and Sixth Congresses, serving for a total of three years where he finally retired from that office by the rule of rotation.[[14]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-13) In those years, the government was meeting in the temporary capital of [New York City](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/New_York_City).

In Virginia the struggle in 1788 over the ratification of the proposed new Constitution involved more than a simple clash between federalists and anti-federalists. Virginians held a full spectrum of opinions about the merits of the proposed change in national government. [George Washington](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Washington) and [James Madison](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Madison) were leading supporters; [Patrick Henry](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Patrick_Henry) and [George Mason](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Mason) were leading opponents. Those who held the middle ground in the ideological struggle became the central figures. Led by Monroe and [Edmund Pendleton](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Edmund_Pendleton), these "federalists who are for amendments," criticized the absence of a [bill of rights](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bill_of_rights) and worried about surrendering taxation powers to the central government. Virginia ratified the Constitution in June 1788, largely because Monroe, Pendleton and followers suspended their reservations and vowed to press for changes after the new government had been established.[[15]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-14)

Virginia narrowly ratified the Constitution. Monroe ran for a House seat in the 1st Congress but was defeated by Madison. In 1790 he was elected by the Virginia legislature as[United States Senator](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Senate). He soon joined the ["Democratic-Republican" faction](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Democratic-Republican_Party) led by Jefferson and Madison, and by 1791 was the party leader in the Senate.[[16]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-15)

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=James_Monroe&action=edit&section=7)]Ambassador to France

Monroe resigned his Senate seat after being appointed [Minister to France](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/U.S._Ambassador_to_France) in 1794.[[17]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-bio.congress-16) As ambassador, Monroe secured the release of [Thomas Paine](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Paine) in revolutionary France after his arrest for opposition to the execution of [Louis XVI](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Louis_XVI). The government insisted that Paine be deported to the United States.[[18]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-17)

Monroe arranged to free all the Americans held in French prisons. He also gained the freedom of [Madame Adrienne Lafayette](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Adrienne_de_La_Fayette) and issued her and her family American passports (they had been granted [citizenship](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Honorary_Citizen_of_the_United_States) by the US government for contributions during the Revolution.) She used that for travel to her [husband](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gilbert_du_Motier,_marquis_de_Lafayette), imprisoned in [Olmutz](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Olmutz).[[19]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-18)

A strong friend of the [French Revolution](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/French_Revolution), Monroe tried to assure France that [Washington's](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Washington) policy of strict neutrality did not favor Britain. But American policy had come to favor Britain, and Monroe was stunned by the United States' signing of the [Jay Treaty](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Jay_Treaty) in London. With France and Britain at war, the Jay Treaty alarmed and angered the French. Washington had differences with Monroe and discharged him as Minister to France, claiming his "inefficiency, disruptive maneuvers, and failure to safeguard the interests of his country."[[20]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-19)

Monroe had long been concerned about foreign influence on the presidency. He was alarmed by the Spanish diplomat [Don Diego de Gardoqui](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Don_Diego_de_Gardoqui), who in 1785 tried to convince Congress to allow Spain to close the [Mississippi River](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mississippi_River) to American traffic for 30 years. Spain controlled much of the Mississippi since taking over former French territory, including the important port of New Orleans. Monroe thought that Spain could have endangered the US retention of its Southwest and caused the dominance of the Northeast.[[21]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-20) Monroe believed in both a strong presidency and the system of checks and balances.

In the 1790s he fretted over an aging George Washington being too much influenced by close advisers such as [Alexander Hamilton](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alexander_Hamilton), who Monroe thought too close to Britain. He was humiliated by Washington's criticism for his support of revolutionary France as minister to the nation.[[22]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-21) He thought foreign and [Federalist](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Federalist) elements created the [Quasi War](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Quasi_War) of 1798–1800, and were behind efforts to prevent the election of [Thomas Jefferson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Jefferson) as president in 1800. As governor he considered using the Virginia militia to force the outcome in favor of Jefferson.[[23]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-22) Federalists responded in kind, some seeing Monroe as at best a French dupe and at worst a traitor.[[24]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-23)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=James_Monroe&action=edit&section=8)]Governor of Virginia and Diplomat

Out of office, Monroe returned to practicing law in [Virginia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Virginia) until elected [governor](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Virginia) there as a Republican, his first term serving from 1799 to 1802. He was reelected Virginia's governor four times.[[25]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-24) He called out the state militia to suppress [Gabriel's Rebellion](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Gabriel's_Rebellion). Gabriel and 26 other enslaved people who participated were all hanged for treason.

President [Jefferson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Jefferson) sent Monroe to France to assist [Robert R. Livingston](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Robert_Livingston_(1746–1813)) to negotiate the [Louisiana Purchase](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Louisiana_Purchase). Monroe was then appointed [Minister to the Court of St. James (Britain)](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/U.S._Ambassador_to_Great_Britain) from 1803 to 1807. In 1806 he negotiated a treaty with Britain, known as the [Monroe–Pinkney Treaty](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Monroe–Pinkney_Treaty). It would extend the [Jay Treaty](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Jay_Treaty) of 1794 which had expired after ten years; Jefferson had fought the Jay Treaty intensely in 1794–95 because he felt it would allow the British to subvert [American republicanism](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Republicanism_in_the_United_States). The treaty had produced ten years of peace and highly lucrative trade for American merchants, but Jefferson was still hostile. When Monroe and the British signed a renewal in December 1806, Jefferson decided to reject it, and not submit it to the Senate. Although the new treaty called for ten more years of trade between the U.S. and the British Empire, and gave American merchants certain guarantees that would have been good for business, Jefferson refused to give up the potential weapon of commercial warfare against Britain and was unhappy that it did not end the hated British practice of [impressment](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Impressment) of American sailors. Jefferson did not attempt to obtain another treaty, and as a result, the two nations moved from peace toward the [War of 1812](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/War_of_1812).[[26]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-25)

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=James_Monroe&action=edit&section=9)]1808 election and the Quids

The Republican Party was increasingly factionalized with "[Old Republicans](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Old_Republicans)" or "Quids" denouncing the Administration for abandoning true republican principles. The Quids, seeing that Monroe's foreign policy had been rejected by Jefferson, tried to enlist Monroe in their cause. The plan was to run Monroe for president in the 1808 election in cooperation with the [Federalist Party](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Federalist_Party), which had a strong base in New England. [John Randolph of Roanoke](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Randolph_of_Roanoke) led the Quid effort to stop Jefferson's choice of [James Madison](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Madison). However, the regular Republicans overcame the Quids, kept control of the party in Virginia, and protected Madison's base. Monroe did not run for president and Madison was elected president.[[27]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-26)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=James_Monroe&action=edit&section=10)]Secretary of State and Secretary of War

Monroe returned to the Virginia House of Delegates and was elected to another term as governor in 1811, but only served four months. He became Secretary of State in April of that year. He had little to do with the [War of 1812](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/War_of_1812), as President Madison and the War Hawks in Congress were dominant. The war went very badly, and when the British burned the capitol building on August 24, 1814, Madison removed John Armstrong as Secretary of War and turned to Monroe for help, appointing him [Secretary of War](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_Secretary_of_War) on September 27.[[28]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-27)Monroe resigned as Secretary of State on October 1, but no successor was ever appointed, so he continued doing the work. Thus from October 1, 1814, to February 28, 1815, Monroe effectively held both cabinet posts. Monroe formulated plans for an offensive invasion of Canada to win the war, but a peace treaty was ratified in February 1815, before any armies moved north. Monroe therefore resigned as Secretary of War on March 15, 1815 and was formally reappointed Secretary of State. Monroe stayed on at State until March 4, 1817, when he began his term as the new President of the United States.[[2]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-Hart1-1)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=James_Monroe&action=edit&section=11)]Presidential elections of 1816 and 1820

The congressional nominating caucus experienced little opposition during the administrations of Jefferson and Madison, but this situation changed in the election year of 1816. An indeterminate number of anti-Virginia Republicans, led by the New York delegation, objected to the caucus system along with the Federalists. Disorganization and failure to agree on [William H. Crawford](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/William_H._Crawford), [Daniel Tompkins](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Daniel_Tompkins), [Henry Clay](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Henry_Clay) or another possible contender weakened opposition to Monroe. The boycott by Virginia delegates of the March 12 caucus removed the chances of Monroe's opponents, and he received the caucus nomination four days later.[[29]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-28) With the [Federalist Party](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Federalist_Party) in disarray due to the unpopularity of their opposition to the [War of 1812](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/War_of_1812), he was easily elected.[[30]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-miller.monroe.elections-29) The Federalists did not even name a candidate, though [Rufus King](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rufus_King) of New York did run in opposition to Monroe under the Federalist banner.[[30]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-miller.monroe.elections-29) King carried only Connecticut, Delaware, and Massachusetts and won only 34 of 217 electoral votes cast.[[30]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-miller.monroe.elections-29) (See [United States presidential election, 1816](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_presidential_election,_1816).)

The collapse of the Federalists left Monroe with no organized opposition at the end of his first term, and he ran for reelection unopposed,[[30]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-miller.monroe.elections-29) the only president other than[Washington](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Washington) to do so. A single elector from New Hampshire cast a vote for [John Quincy Adams](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Quincy_Adams), preventing a unanimous vote in the [electoral college](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Electoral_college).[[30]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_Monroe" \l "cite_note-miller.monroe.elections-29) (See [United States](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_presidential_election,_1820)

In 1985 and 2000 the University of Virginia was described as a "[Public Ivy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Public_Ivy)" by authors Richard Moll, Howard Greene, and Matthew Greene, in reference to a group of public universities offering an education comparable to [Ivy League](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ivy_League) universities.[[71]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-70) In 2009 and 2010,[*U.S. News & World Report*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/U.S._News_%26_World_Report) ranked the University of Virginia as the number two public university among "National Universities" in the United States and #130 among the world's best universities.[[72]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-71)[[73]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-72) In the 2011 edition, the undergraduate program at U.Va. ranked #2 out of roughly 200 public universities in the United States, tied with [UCLA](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/UCLA),[[74]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-usnews-public2011-73) and #25 overall (including private schools), tied with[UCLA](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_California,_Los_Angeles), the [University of Southern California](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Southern_California), and [Wake Forest University](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wake_Forest_University).[[75]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-74) In the 26-year history of the rankings, U.Va. has never dropped out of the Top 25 listing and has always ranked either #1 or #2 among public schools.[[76]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-75) In every published edition of the report going back to 1983, the undergraduate program at the University has also retained its position as the highest ranked school, public or private, in its home state of Virginia. [Forbes Magazine](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Forbes_Magazine) ranked the University #44 in its 2010 ranking of U.S. universities, the highest ranking for a public university on the list.[[77]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-forbes2010-76) Internationally, in 2010 U.Va. ranked 72nd in the world according to the [Times Higher Education World University Rankings](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Times_Higher_Education_World_University_Rankings).[[78]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-World_University_Rankings-77) The 2011 [QS World University Rankings](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/QS_World_University_Rankings) placed Virginia at 126th overall, four places up from 2011, and 96th in Arts & Humanities.[[79]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-78) GQ magazine recognized the University of Virginia noting classroom attendance of scholarship athletes as well as student traditions such as referring to the institution as "the University", ranking it 25th.[[80]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-79)

U.Va. has been recognized numerous times as having the highest [African American](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/African_American) graduation rate among public universities, and by a wide margin.[[81]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-virginia.edu-80)[[82]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-81)[[83]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-82)[[84]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-jbhe.com-83) Among the Top Four public universities that consistently rank highest in the ubiquitous *U.S. News* rankings, the University of Virginia has an 87% black student graduation rate, some 15 to 20 percentage points higher than the 70% at the [University of California, Berkeley](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_California,_Berkeley), 68% at the [University of Michigan](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Michigan), and 73% at [UCLA](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/UCLA).[[84]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-jbhe.com-83) In addition, due in part to [California Proposition 209](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/California_Proposition_209_(1996)) and the [Michigan Proposal 2](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Michigan_Civil_Rights_Initiative), the University also has much higher African American populations than these peer universities. The University of Virginia has an undergraduate student body that is 8.7%[[85]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-84) African American, while the [University of California](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_California) undergraduate student bodies at Berkeley and UCLA are just 3.2%[[86]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-85) and 3.7%[[87]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-86)African American, respectively. Only 5.2%[[88]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-87) of University of Michigan undergraduates are African American. Thus, relative to its closest peers, the University of Virginia has twice to three times the proportion of African American undergraduate students, and they go on to graduate at significantly higher rates.

The University of Virginia has many highly regarded graduate programs. Programs ranked in their respective fields' top 10 by *U.S. News & World Report* include [Law](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Law), [Tax Law](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tax_Law),[International Law](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/International_Law), [architecture](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Architecture),[[89]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-88) 18th through 20th Century [British Literature](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/British_Literature), [African-American Literature](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/African-American_Literature), [American Literature](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/American_Literature), American Literature Before 1865, [Creative Writing](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Creative_Writing),[[90]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-89) [U.S. Colonial History](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Colonial_history_of_the_United_States), [Political Theory](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Political_Theory), [Developmental Psychology](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Developmental_Psychology), [Adult/Medical-Surgical Nursing](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Medical-surgical_nursing), [Psychiatric/Mental Health Nursing](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Psychiatric_and_mental_health_nursing), [Management](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Management), [Elementary Teacher Education](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Primary_education), [Secondary Teacher Education](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Secondary_education), and [Special Education](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Special_Education).[[91]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/University_of_Virginia" \l "cite_note-90)

Appointment powers

The Governor appoints almost all military and civil officers of the State government, subject to advice and consent of the [Maryland State Senate](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Maryland_State_Senate). The Governor also appoints certain boards and commissions in each [of the 24 Counties](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_counties_in_Maryland) and in [Baltimore City](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Baltimore_City), such as local Boards of Elections, commissions [notaries public](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Notary_public), and he appoints officers to fill vacancies in the elected offices of [Attorney General](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Attorney_General_of_Maryland) and [Comptroller](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Comptroller_of_Maryland).[[3]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-origins-2) Should a vacancy arise in the General Assembly, the Governor also fills that vacancy, though the Governor must choose from among the recommendations of the local party organization to which the person leaving the vacancy belonged.[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-6) Any officer appointed by the Governor, except a member of the General Assembly, is removable by him, if there is a legitimate cause for removal. Among the most prominent of the Governor's appointees are the 24 secretaries and heads of departments that make up the Governor's [Cabinet](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cabinet_(government)), also known as the Executive Council.[[3]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-origins-2)

[[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Governor_of_Maryland&action=edit&section=5)]**Executive Council**

The Governor of Maryland is the Chairman of the Governor's Executive Council (or Cabinet) which coordinates all state government functions. This is composed of the following members, all of whom, except the Lieutenant Governor, are appointed by the Governor with the advice and consent of the Maryland State Senate as heads of executive departments[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-msa.md.gov-7):

* Lieutenant Governor, currently [Anthony G. Brown](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anthony_G._Brown)
* Secretary of State, currently John P. McDonough, Esq.
* Secretary of Aging, currently Gloria G. Lawlah
* Secretary of Agriculture, currently Earl F. (Buddy) Hance
* Secretary of Budget and Management, currently T. Eloise Foster
* Secretary of Business and Economic Development, currently Christian S. Johansson
* Secretary of Disabilities, currently Catherine A. Raggio
* State Superintendent of Schools (appointed by the State Board of Education to direct the [Maryland State Department of Education](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Maryland_State_Department_of_Education)), currently Lillian M. Lowery
* Secretary of Environment, currently Shari T. Wilson
* Secretary of General Services, currently Alvin C. Collins
* Secretary of Health and Mental Hygiene, currently John M. Colmers
* Secretary of Housing and Community Development, currently Raymond A. Skinner
* Secretary of Human Resources, currently Theodore Dallas
* Secretary of Information Technology, currently Elliot H. Schlanger
* Secretary of Juvenile Services, currently Donald W. DeVore
* Secretary of Labor, Licensing, and Regulation, currently Alexander M. Sanchez
* Secretary of Natural Resources, currently John R. Griffin
* Secretary of Planning, currently Richard T. Hall
* Secretary of Public Safety and Correctional Services, currently Gary D. Maynard
* Secretary of State Police (commanding officer of the [Maryland State Police](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Maryland_State_Police)), currently Col. Marcus L. Brown
* Secretary of Transportation, currently Beverley K. Swaim-Staley
* Secretary of Veterans Affairs, currently Edward J. Chow, Jr.
* Secretary of Higher Education (head of the Maryland Higher Education Commission), currently James E. Lyons, Ph.D.
* Adjutant General (head of the Maryland Military Department), currently Maj. Gen. [James A. Adkins](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_A._Adkins)

Other members of the Governor's Staff may be invited to Cabinet meetings as "attendees".[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-msa.md.gov-7)

The Governor also oversees several sub-cabinets that coordinate the activities of a certain function of state government that involves several state departments or agencies. Currently, these are the [Base Realignment and Closure](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Base_Realignment_and_Closure) Subcabinet, BayStat Subcabinet, Chesapeake Bay cabinet, Children's Cabinet, Governor's Subcabinet for International Affairs, Smart Growth Subcabinet, and Workforce Creation Subcabinet.[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-8)

[[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Governor_of_Maryland&action=edit&section=6)]**Other powers and responsibilities**

The Governor is the [commander-in-chief](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Commander-in-chief) of the military forces of the State: the [Maryland National Guard and Air National Guard](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States_National_Guard) and the [Maryland Defense Force](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Maryland_Defense_Force), except when these forces have been called into Federal service, which the Federal government has the authority to do. In times of public emergency, the Governor may exercise emergency powers, including the mobilization of these military forces. In the area of criminal justice, the Governor may grant [pardons](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pardon) to criminals, commute the sentences of prisoners, or remit fines and forfeitures imposed on people who have been convicted, jailed, or fined for violations of state laws.

In both these areas, and a variety of others, the Governor sits on state and interstate boards and commissions with varying powers. The Governor is also obligated to report on the condition of the state at any time during the year, though this traditionally happens in a State of the State Address each January.[[3]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-origins-2)

[[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Governor_of_Maryland&action=edit&section=7)]**The Governor's Staff**

In addition to the various departments and agencies under gubernatorial control, the Governor has an executive staff that assist in coordinating the executive duties. This staff is led by a [Chief of Staff](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chief_of_staff_(politics)), and includes five offices: Intergovernmental Relations, Legal Counsel, Legislative and Policy, Press, and the Governor's Office in [Washington, DC](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Washington,_DC). The Chief of Staff has a number of deputies to assist in running these departments. The Governor's staff is appointed and therefore largely exempt from state civil service laws.[[3]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-origins-2)

During the [Colonial period](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Province_of_Maryland), Maryland's Proprietors, the [Lords of Baltimore](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Baron_Baltimore), who generally remained in England, chose who would serve as the Governor of Maryland on their behalf. Between 1692, when the Baltimores lost control, and 1715, Maryland was a direct Royal Colony, and the Governor was appointed by the British [Monarch](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_English_monarchs). The Lords of Baltimore regained their Royal Charter in 1715, and then they resumed choosing the Governors until the beginning of the [American Revolution](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/American_Revolution).[[3]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-origins-2) The first Governor chosen to break this chain of Colonial Governors was [Thomas Johnson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Johnson_(jurist)) (1732–1819), who took office on March 21, 1777.

Under the [Maryland Constitution of 1776](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Maryland_Constitution_of_1776), the Governor was chosen for one-year terms by both houses of the General Assembly. An 1838 constitutional amendment allowed voters to elect the Governor to three-year terms from one of three rotating gubernatorial districts: eastern, southern, and western. At each election, only voters from a single gubernatorial election district selected the Governor. The Maryland Constitution of 1851 lengthened the Governor's term of office from three to four years, which brought elections for Governor in line with elections for Federal offices that occur only in even years. Finally, the [Constitution of 1864](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Maryland_Constitution_of_1864) eliminated the rotating gubernatorial election districts and, since the election of 1868, the Governor has been elected by all the voters of the state.[[3]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-origins-2)

From 1777 to 1870, the Governor resided in [Jennings House](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Jennings_House,_Maryland_Governors'_Residence) in [Annapolis](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Annapolis). Since 1870, the Governor has resided in the [Government House](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Government_House_(Maryland)), a [Georgian](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Georgian_architecture) mansion adjacent to the [Maryland State House](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Maryland_State_House). In addition to being the residence for the Governor and his family, Government House has a number of public rooms that are used by the Governor on official occasions.[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-9)

[Spiro T. Agnew](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spiro_T._Agnew), who was the Governor of Maryland from 1967–1969, later served as the [Vice-President of the United States](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vice-President_of_the_United_States) for a time under [President](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/President_of_the_United_States) [Richard M. Nixon](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Richard_M._Nixon), and Agnew is, thus far, the highest-ranking Marylander in the history of the [United States](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_States).[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-List-10)Following his [resignation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Resignation) due to charges of corruption, Agnew's official gubernatorial portrait was removed [*Damnatio memoriae*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Damnatio_memoriae) from the[Maryland State House](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Maryland_State_House) Governor's Reception Room from 1979 until 1995. Then-Governor [Parris Glendening](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Parris_Glendening) stated that in re-including Agnew's portrait that it was not up to anyone to alter history, whether for good or bad, citing [*Nineteen Eighty-Four*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Nineteen_Eighty-Four). [[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-11)

In 1971, the office of [Lieutenant Governor of Maryland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lieutenant_Governor_of_Maryland), which had existed for only a few years in the 1860s, was re-instituted by an amendment to the Maryland Constitution. The Lieutenant Governor is a weak office compared to other counterparts (in other states including Texas, the Lieutenant Governor is the President of the State's Senate, while in California the Lieutenant Governor assumes all of the Governor's powers when the sitting Governor is out of the state), as it only possesses the powers and duties that the Governor assigns to him or her. The Lieutenant Governor is elected on the same ballot with the Governor, and to the same term-of-office as the Governor. The Lieutenant Governor succeeds to the Governorship only if there is a vacancy in that office.[[13]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-12) Despite the Governor and Lieutenant Governor being elected on the same party ticket, very often there have been public rifts between the two; for instance Gov. Marvin Mandel and Lt. Gov. Blair Lee IV; Gov. Harry R. Hughes and Lt. Gov. Samuel W. Bogley III; Gov. Schaefer and Lt. Gov. Melvin A. Steinberg., and Gov. Parris Glendening and Lt. Gov. Kathleen Kennedy Townsend. [[14]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-13) No Lieutenant Governor of Maryland has yet been elected as the Governor in future elections, or permanently succeeded to the Governor's office due to a vacancy (which would be created by the resignation, death, or removal of the sitting Governor), although [Blair Lee III](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Blair_Lee_III) served as acting Governor from June 4, 1977 until January 15, 1979 while Governor [Marvin Mandel](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Marvin_Mandel) was serving a sentence for mail fraud and racketeering (consequently, in a modern example of [*Damnatio memoriae*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Damnatio_memoriae), Mandel's official gubernatorial portrait was not hung in the [Maryland State House](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Maryland_State_House) Governor's Reception Room until 1993).[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-List-10)

As of 2010, Maryland has yet to have been served by a female Governor.[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-List-10) However, women were the runners-up in four gubernatorial elections (in 1974, 1994, 1998, and 2002).[[15]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-14)In addition, one woman has served as the Lieutenant Governor, [Kathleen Kennedy Townsend](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kathleen_Kennedy_Townsend), under Gov. [Parris Glendening](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Parris_Glendening) from 1995 to 2003.[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Governor_of_Maryland" \l "cite_note-List-10) Another woman, [Kristen Cox](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kristen_Cox), who was the Secretary of Disabilities, unsuccessfully ran for Lieutenant Governor as the running mate of the incumbent Governor Robert Ehrlich, when the Lieutenant Governor at that time, [Michael Steele](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Michael_Steele), left office to run for the [U.S. Senate](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/U.S._Senate). Cox was a unique person to run for that office, not only because she is a woman, but also because she is [legally](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Legally_blind)

The connection between Calvert's resignation and his conversion to Catholicism was a complex one. George Cottington, a former employee of Calvert, suggested in 1628 that Calvert's conversion had been in progress a long time before it was made public.[[38]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-37) [George Abbot, Archbishop of Canterbury](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Abbot_(Archbishop_of_Canterbury)), reported that political opposition to Calvert, combined with his loss of office, had "made him discontented and, as the saying is, *Desperatio facit monachum*, so hee apparently did turne papist, which hee now professeth, this being the third time that he hath bene to blame that way [sic]".[[39]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-38) [Godfrey Goodman](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Godfrey_Goodman), Bishop of Gloucester, later claimed Calvert had been a secret Catholic all along ("infinitely addicted to the Catholic faith"), which explained his support for lenient policies towards Catholics and for the Spanish match.[[40]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-39)

But, no one had questioned Calvert's conformity at the time, and if he had indeed been secretly Catholic, he had hidden it well. It seems more likely Calvert converted in late 1624. At the time, Simon Stock, a [Discalced Carmelite](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Discalced_Carmelites) priest reported to the [Congregation*Propaganda Fide*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Congregation_for_the_Evangelization_of_Peoples)[[41]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-40) in Rome on November 15 that he had converted two Privy Councillors to Catholicism, one of whom historians are certain was Calvert.[[42]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-41) Calvert, who had probably met Stock at the Spanish embassy in London, later worked with the priest on a plan for a Catholic mission in his Newfoundland colony.[[43]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-42)

When King James died in March 1625, his successor Charles I maintained Calvert's barony but not his place on the Privy Council.[[44]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-43)Calvert turned his attention to his Irish estates and his overseas investments. He was not entirely forgotten at court.[[45]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-44) After Buckingham's dabblings in wars against Spain and France had ended in failure, he recalled Baltimore to court, and for a while may have considered employing him in the peace negotiations with Spain.[[46]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-45) Though nothing came of Baltimore's recall, he renewed his rights over the silk-import duties, which had lapsed with the death of James I,[[47]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-46) and secured Charles' blessing for his venture in Newfoundland.

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore&action=edit&section=6)]Avalon colony

Calvert had long maintained an interest in the exploration and settlement of the New World, beginning with his investment of twenty-five pounds in the second [Virginia Company](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Virginia_Company) in 1609, and a few months later a more substantial sum in the [East India Company](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/British_East_India_Company), which he increased in 1614.[[48]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-47) In 1620, Calvert purchased a tract of land in [Newfoundland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Newfoundland_(island)) from Sir[William Vaughan](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/William_Vaughan_(writer)), who had failed to establish a colony on the island. He named it [Avalon](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Avalon), after the legendary spot where Christianity was introduced to Britain.[[49]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-48) The plantation lay on what is now called the [Avalon Peninsula](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Avalon_Peninsula)[[50]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-49) and included the fishing station at [Ferryland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ferryland).[[51]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-50) Calvert almost certainly had a fishery project in mind at this stage.[[52]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-51)

Calvert dispatched Captain [Edward Wynne](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Edward_Wynne) and a group of [Welsh](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wales) colonists to Ferryland, where they landed in August 1621 and set about constructing a settlement.[[53]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-52) Wynne sent positive reports concerning the potential for local fisheries and for the production of salt, [hemp](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hemp), [flax](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Flax), [tar](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tar), iron, timber and [hops](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hops).[[54]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-53) Wynne also praised the climate, declaring, "It is better and not so cold as England" and predicted that the colony would become self-sufficient after one year.[[55]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-Klxxix-54) Others corroborated Wynne's reports: for example, Captain Daniel Powell, who delivered a further party of settlers to Ferryland, wrote: "The land on which our Governor planted is so good and commodious, that for the quantity, I think there is no better in many parts of England"; but he added ominously that Ferryland was "the coldest harbour in the land".[[56]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-55) Wynne and his men began work on various building projects, including a substantial house and the shoring up of the harbour. To protect them against marauding French ships, a recent hazard in the area, Calvert employed the pirate [John Nutt](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_Nutt).[[57]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-56)

The settlement appeared to be progressing so well that in January 1623 Calvert obtained a concession from King James for the whole of Newfoundland, though the grant was soon reduced to cover only the Avalon peninsula, owing to competing claims.[[58]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-57) The final charter constituted the province as a [palatinate](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/County_palatine), officially titled the "Province of Avalon", under Calvert's personal rule.[[59]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-58)

After resigning the secretariat in 1625, the new Baron Baltimore made clear his intention to visit the colony: "I intend shortly," he wrote in March, "God willing, a journey for Newfoundland to visit a plantation which I began there some few years since."[[60]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-59) His plans were disrupted by the death of King James, and by the crackdown on Catholics with which Charles I began his reign in order to appease his opponents. The new king required all privy councillors to take the oaths of supremacy and allegiance; and since Baltimore, as a Catholic, had to refuse, he was obliged to step down from that cherished office.[[61]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-60) Given the new religious and political climate, and perhaps also to escape a serious outbreak of [plague](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Plague_(disease)) in England, Baltimore moved to Ireland. His expedition to Newfoundland set sail without him in late May 1625 under Sir [Arthur Aston](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Arthur_Aston), who became the new governor of Avalon.[[62]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-61)

A reference by David Rothe, bishop of Ossary, in Ireland, to a "Joane [also recorded as Jane] Baltimore now wife" of Calvert, reveals that Baltimore had recently remarried.[[63]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-62)

From the time of his conversion in 1625 onwards, Baltimore took care to cater for the religious needs of his colonists, both Catholic and Protestant. He had asked Simon Stock to provide priests for the 1625 expedition,[[64]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-63) but Stock's recruits arrived in England after Aston had sailed. Stock's own ambitions for the colony appear to have exceeded Baltimore's: in letters to [De Propaganda Fide](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Congregation_for_the_Evangelization_of_Peoples) in Rome, Stock claimed the Newfoundland settlement could act as a springboard for the conversion of natives not only in the New World but also in China, the latter via a passage he believed existed from the east coast to the Pacific Ocean.[[65]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-64)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore&action=edit&section=7)]Baltimore in Avalon

Baltimore was determined to visit his colony in person. In May 1626, he wrote to Wentworth:

|  |  |  |
| --- | --- | --- |
| “ | Newfoundland...imports me more than in Curiosity only to see; for I must either go and settle it in a better Order than it is, or else give it over, and lose all the Charges I have been at hitherto for other Men to build their Fortunes upon. And I had rather be esteemed a Fool for some by the Hazard of one Month’s journey, than to prove myself one certainly for six Years by past, if the Business be now lost for some want of a little Pains and Care.[[66]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-65) | ” |

Aston's return to England in late 1626,[[67]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-66) along with all the Catholic settlers, failed to deter Baltimore, who finally sailed for Newfoundland in 1627, arriving on July 23 and staying only two months before returning to England.[[68]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-67) He had taken both Protestant and Catholic settlers with him, as well as two [secular priests](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Secular_Clergy), Thomas Longville and Anthony Pole (also known as Smith), the latter remaining behind in the colony when Baltimore departed for England. The land Baltimore had seen was by no means the paradise described by some early settlers, being only marginally productive;[[69]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-68) as the summer climate was deceptively mild, his brief visit gave Baltimore no reason to alter his plans for the colony.

In 1628, he sailed again for Newfoundland, this time with his second wife Jane, most of his children,[[70]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-69) and 40 more settlers, to officially take over as [Proprietary Governor](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Proprietary_Governor) of Avalon.[[71]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-70) He and his family moved into the house at Ferryland built by Wynne, a sizeable structure for the time, by colonial standards, and the only one in the settlement large enough to accommodate religious services for the community.[[72]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-71)

Matters connected to religion were to bedevil Baltimore's stay in "this remote part of the worlde where I have planted my selfe [sic]". He sailed at a time when English military preparations were underway to relieve the [Huguenots](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Huguenots) at La Rochelle. He was dismayed to find that the war with France had spread to Newfoundland, and that he had to spend most of his time fighting off French attacks on English fishing fleets with his own ships the *Dove* and the *Ark*.[[73]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-72) As he wrote to Buckingham, "I came to builde, and sett, and sowe, but I am falne to fighting with Frenchmen [sic]". His settlers were so successful against the French that they captured several ships, which they escorted back to England to help with the war effort. Baltimore was granted the loan of one of the ships to aid in his defence of the colony, as well as a share of the prize money.[[74]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-73)

Adopting a policy of free religious worship in the colony, Baltimore allowed the Catholics to worship in one part of his house and the Protestants in another. This novel arrangement proved too much for the resident Anglican priest, [Erasmus Stourton](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Erasmus_Stourton)—"that knave Stourton", as Baltimore referred to him—who, after altercations with Baltimore, was placed on a ship for England, where he lost no time in reporting Baltimore's practices to the authorities, complaining that the Catholic priests Smith and Hackett said mass every Sunday and "doe use all other ceremonies of the church of Rome in as ample a manner as tis used in Spayne [sic]".[[75]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-74) and that Baltimore had the son of a Protestant forcibly baptised as a Catholic.[[76]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-Cliii-75) Although Stourton's complaints were investigated by the Privy Council, due to Baltimore's support in high places, the case was dismissed.[[77]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-76)

Baltimore had become disenchanted with conditions in "this wofull country", and he wrote to his old acquaintances in England lamenting his troubles.[[78]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-77) The final blow to his hopes was dealt by the Newfoundland winter of 1628–9, which did not release its grip until May. Like others before them, the residents of Avalon suffered terribly from the cold and from malnutrition.[[79]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-78) Nine or ten of Baltimore's company died that winter, and with half the settlers ill at one time, his house had to be turned into a hospital. The sea froze over, and nothing would grow before May. "Tis not terra Christianorum", Baltimore wrote to Wentworth.[[80]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-kcii-79) He confessed to the king: "I have found...by too deare bought experience [that which other men] always concealed from me...that there is a sad face of wynter upon all this land".[[80]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-kcii-79)

In late September or October 1629, Baltimore arrived in [Jamestown](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Jamestown,_Virginia), where the Virginians, who suspected him of designs on some of their territory and vehemently opposed Catholicism, gave him a cool welcome. They gave him the oaths of supremacy and allegiance, which he refused to take, so they ordered him to leave.[[85]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-84) After no more than a few weeks in the colony, Baltimore left for England to pursue the new charter, leaving his wife and servants behind.[[86]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-85) In early 1630, he procured a ship to fetch them, but it foundered off the Irish coast, and his wife was drowned.[[87]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-86)Baltimore described himself the following year as "a long time myself a [Man of Sorrows](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Man_of_Sorrows)".[[88]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-87)

Baltimore spent the last two years of his life constantly lobbying for his new charter, though the obstacles proved difficult. The Virginians, led by[William Claiborne](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/William_Claiborne), who sailed to England to make the case, campaigned aggressively against separate colonising of the Chesapeake, claiming they possessed the rights to that area.[[89]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-kxvii-88) Baltimore was short of capital, having exhausted his fortune, and was sometimes forced to depend on the assistance of his friends.[[89]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-kxvii-88) To make matters worse, in the summer of 1630, his household was infected by the plague, which he survived. He wrote to Wentworth: "Blessed be God for it who hath preserved me now from shipwreck, hunger,[scurvy](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Scurvy) and pestilence..."[[90]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-89)

His health declining, Baltimore's persistence over the charter finally paid off in 1632. The king first granted him a location south of Jamestown, but Baltimore asked the king to reconsider in response to opposition from other investors interested in settling the new land of [Carolina](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Province_of_Carolina) into a sugar plantation.[[91]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-90) Baltimore eventually compromised by accepting redrawn boundaries to the north of the [Potomac River](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Potomac_River), on either side of the [Chesapeake Bay](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chesapeake_Bay).[[92]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-91) The charter was about to pass when the fifty-two-year-old Baltimore died in his lodgings at Lincoln's Inn Fields, on 15 April 1632.[[93]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-92) Five weeks later, on 20 June 1632, the charter for [Maryland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Maryland) passed the seals.[[94]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-93)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore&action=edit&section=9)]Legacy

In his will, written the day before he died, Baltimore beseeched his friends Wentworth and Cottington to act as guardians and supervisors to his first son Cecil, who inherited the title of Lord Baltimore and the imminent grant of Maryland.[[95]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-94) Baltimore's two colonies in the New World continued under the proprietorship of his family.[[96]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-95) Avalon, which remained a prime spot for the salting and export of fish, was expropriated by Sir [David Kirke](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/David_Kirke), with a new royal charter which Cecil Calvert vigorously challenged, and it was finally absorbed into Newfoundland in 1754.[[97]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-96) Although Baltimore's failed Avalon venture marked the end of an early era of attempts at proprietary colonisation, it laid the foundation upon which permanent settlements developed in that region of Newfoundland.[[98]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-97)

Maryland became a prime tobacco exporting colony in the mid-Atlantic and, for a time, a refuge for Catholic settlers, as George Calvert had hoped.[[99]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-Hennesey3645-98) Under the rule of the Lords Baltimore, thousands of British Catholics emigrated to Maryland, establishing some of the oldest Catholic communities in what later became the United States.[[99]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-Hennesey3645-98) Although Catholic rule in Maryland was eventually nullified by the re-assertion of royal control over the colony, only a few decades later Maryland joined twelve other British colonies along the Atlantic coast in declaring their independence from British rule and the right to freedom of religion for all citizens in the new United States.[[100]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Calvert,_1st_Baron_Baltimore" \l "cite_note-99)

The city of [Baltimore, Maryland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Baltimore,_Maryland) was named for his son, [Cecilius Calvert, 2nd Baron Baltimore](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cecilius_Calvert,_2nd_Baron_Baltimore). Numerous other place names honored the Barons Baltimore.

The metal band [Sir Lord Baltimore](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sir_Lord_Baltimore) was also named in honor of the Barons Baltimore.

**Francis Cottington, 1st Baron Cottington** (ca. 1579 – 1652) was the [English](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England) lord treasurer and ambassador and leader of the pro-Spanish, pro-Roman Catholic faction in the court of [Charles I](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles_I_of_England). He was the fourth son of Philip Cottington of [Godmonston](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Godmonston&action=edit&redlink=1) in [Somersetshire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Somerset).[[1]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Francis_Cottington" \l "cite_note-0)

According to [Hoare](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hoare), his mother was Jane, daughter of Thomas Biflete, but according to [Clarendon](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Edward_Hyde,_1st_Earl_of_Clarendon), a Stafford nearly allied to Sir Edward Stafford, through whom he was recommended to [Sir Charles Cornwallis](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sir_Charles_Cornwallis), ambassador to the court of [Philip III of Spain](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Philip_III_of_Spain), becoming a member of his suite and acting as English agent on the latter's recall, from 1609 to 1611.

In 1612 he was appointed English consul at [Seville](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Seville). Returning to England, he was made a clerk of the council in September 1613. His Spanish experience rendered him useful to [James I of England](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_I_of_England), and his bias in favor of Spain was always marked. He seems to have promoted the Spanish policy from the first, and pressed on [Diego Sarmiento de Acuña, conde de Gondomar](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Diego_Sarmiento_de_Acuña,_conde_de_Gondomar), the Spanish ambassador, the proposal for the Spanish in opposition to the [French](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Henrietta_Maria_of_France) marriage for Prince Charles (later King Charles I).

He was a Roman Catholic at least at heart, becoming a member of that communion in 1623, returning to [Protestantism](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Protestantism), and again declaring himself a Roman Catholic in 1636, and supporting the cause of the Roman Catholics in England. In 1616 he went as ambassador to Spain, transferring in 1618 the proposal of mediation by James I in the dispute with [Frederick V, Elector Palatine](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Frederick_V,_Elector_Palatine).

After his return he was appointed secretary to Prince Charles in October 1622, and was [knighted](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Knight) and made a [baronet](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Baronet) in 1623.[[2]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Francis_Cottington" \l "cite_note-Cockayne-1) He strongly disapproved of the prince's expedition to Spain, as an adventure likely to upset the whole policy of marriage and alliance, but was overruled and chosen to accompany him. His opposition greatly incensed [George Villiers, 1st Duke of Buckingham](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Villiers,_1st_Duke_of_Buckingham), and still more his perseverance in the Spanish policy after the failure of the expedition, and on Charles I's accession Cottington was through his means dismissed from all his employments and forbidden to appear at court. The duke's assassination, however, enabled him to return.

On the 12 November 1628 he was made a [privy councillor](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Privy_Council_of_the_United_Kingdom), and in March 1629 appointed [chancellor of the exchequer](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chancellor_of_the_exchequer). In the autumn he was again sent ambassador to Spain; he signed the treaty of peace of 5 November 1630, and subsequently a secret agreement arranging for the partition of [Holland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Netherlands) between Spain and England in return for the restoration of the Palatinate. On 10 July 1631 he was created **Baron Cottington of Hanworth** in [Middlesex](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Middlesex).

In March 1635 he was appointed master of the court of wards, and his exactions in this office were a principal cause of the unpopularity of the government. He was also appointed a commissioner for the treasury, together with [William Laud](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/William_Laud). Between Cottington and the latter there sprang up a fierce rivalry. In these personal encounters Cottington had nearly always the advantage, for he practised great reserve and possessed great powers of self-command, an extraordinary talent for dissembling and a fund of humour. Laud completely lacked these qualities, and though really possessing much greater influence with Charles, he was often embarrassed and sometimes exposed to ridicule by his opponent.

The aim of Cottington's ambition was the place of lord treasurer, but Laud finally triumphed and secured it for his own nominee, [Bishop Juxon](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/William_Juxon), when Cottington became no more a leader but meddled with his particular duties only. He continued, however, to take a large share in public business and served on the committees for foreign, [Irish](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ireland) and [Scottish](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Scotland)affairs. In the last, appointed in July 1638, he supported the war, and in May 1640, after the dismissal of the [Short Parliament](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Short_Parliament), he declared it his opinion that at such a crisis the king might levy money without the [Parliament](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Parliament_of_England). His attempts to get funds from the city were unsuccessful, and he had recourse instead to a speculation in [pepper](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Black_pepper).

He had been appointed constable of the [Tower](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tower_of_London), and he now prepared the fortress for a [siege](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Siege). In the trial of [Thomas Wentworth, 1st Earl of Strafford](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Wentworth,_1st_Earl_of_Strafford) in 1641, Cottington denied on oath that he had heard him use the incriminating words about reducing this kingdom. When the parliamentary opposition became too strong to be any longer defied, Cottington, as one of those who had chiefly incurred their hostility, hastened to retire from the administration, giving up the court of wards in May 1641 and the chancellorship of the exchequer in January 1642. He rejoined the king in 1643, took part in the proceedings of the [Oxford Parliament](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Oxford_Parliament_(1644)), and was made [lord treasurer](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lord_High_Treasurer) on the 3rd of October 1643. He signed the surrender of Oxford in July 1646, and being excepted from the indemnity retired abroad.

He joined Prince Charles at [the Hague](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Hague) in 1648, and became one of his counsellors. In 1649, together with [Nicholas Hyde](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Nicholas_Hyde), Cottington went on a mission to Spain to obtain help for the royal cause, having an interview with [Cardinal Mazarin](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cardinal_Mazarin) at [Paris](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Paris) on the way. They met, however, with an extremely ill reception, and Cottington found he had completely lost his popularity at the Spanish court, one cause being his shortcomings and waverings in the matter of religion. He now announced his intention of remaining in Spain and of keeping faithful to Roman Catholicism, and took up his residence at [Valladolid](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Valladolid), where he was maintained by the [Jesuits](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Jesuit). He died there on 19 June 1652, his body being subsequently buried in [Westminster Abbey](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Westminster_Abbey). He had amassed a large fortune and built two magnificent houses at [Hanworth](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hanworth) near [Heathrow](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Heathrow) and [Fonthill](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fonthill) near [Tisbury](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tisbury,_Wiltshire), [Salisbury](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Salisbury). Cottington was evidently a man of considerable ability, but the foreign policy pursued by him was opposed to the national interests and futile in itself. According to Clarendon's verdict he left behind him a greater esteem of his parts than love of his person. He married in 1623 Anne, daughter of Sir William Meredith and widow of Sir Robert Brett. All his children predeceased him, and his title became extinct at his death.

Gondomar's friends at court, the *bien intencionados* of his dispatches centered upon the [Howards](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Howard), [Henry Howard, 1st Earl of Northampton](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Henry_Howard,_1st_Earl_of_Northampton) (died 1614), [Thomas Howard, 1st Earl of Suffolk](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Howard,_1st_Earl_of_Suffolk), Lord High Treasurer, whose daughter was married to James's favourite,[Charles Howard, 1st Earl of Nottingham](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles_Howard,_1st_Earl_of_Nottingham), Lord High Admiral, [Thomas Howard, 21st Earl of Arundel](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thomas_Howard,_21st_Earl_of_Arundel), and their protégés. The "Howard faction" preferred a marriage alliance with Spain over one with France, the traditional ally of Scotland, and they preferred to keep out of open warfare with Spain promoted by the more zealous Puritans. Most of the Howards were Catholics, encouraging them towards a spirit of toleration at home. Like many at the English court, they were receiving pensions from Spain,[[4]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Diego_Sarmiento_de_Acuña,_conde_de_Gondomar" \l "cite_note-3) without much effect on their opinions and actions, and Gondomar seldom had the money to follow through. Among the pensioners, in an embarrassing list that surfaced in 1613, at Gondomar's first arrival was the King of England himself.

Gondomar conceived his embassy as a sortie in enemy country, and took for his maxim *aventurar la vida y osar morir*— "risk your life and dare to die"; his opening challenge was his refusal to strike the colours of Spain at his warships' entry to [Portsmouth](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Portsmouth) harbour, in which an appeal to the King averted an exchange of cannonfire that would have sunk the ambassador in his vessel. His handling of the unconditional release of the Catholic agitator [Luisa Carvajal y Mendoza](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Luisa_Carvajal_y_Mendoza) further established him in James's eyes as a man of unexpected strengths. In 1617 Sarmiento was created Count of Gondomar. The key to Gondomar's success was his relationship with James, whom he brought to admire and like his witty and learned companionship, his candour, within the obvious limits, and his personal integrity. They called themselves the "two Diegos" and drank from the same bottle (Carter 1964:205).

A key program for Gondomar at the outset was to block the marriage negotiations between Prince Charles and a sister of Louis XIII, a French counterweight to marital alliances being concluded with the Spanish Habsburgs.

For more details on this topic, see [*Spanish Match*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match).

In the matter of [Sir Walter Raleigh](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sir_Walter_Raleigh), it was Gondomar's pressure that lost Sir Walter's head, 29 October 1618. In a moment of weakness James had shown Gondomar the contract under which Raleigh had sailed, the restriction upon attacking Spanish settlements, in order to mollify his objections to an enterprise on which James had set his heart. Raleigh's attack on San Thomé (near modern [Ciudad Guayana](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ciudad_Guayana)) was a public violation. His execution kept the peace with Spain. The English could not forgive Gondomar, who in 1618 obtained leave to come home for his health, but was ordered to return by way of Flanders and France with a diplomatic mission.

In 1619 he returned to London, and remained till 1622. The [Guyana](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Guyana) expedition of [Roger North](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Roger_North) in 1620 seemed to be a repeat of Raleigh's violation of Spanish settlements in the Caribbean, and at Gondomar's insistence North was imprisoned.

The tensest late confrontation was over [Count Mansfeld](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ernst_von_Mansfeld)'s projected movement of troops raised in England to rescue James's son-in-law [Frederick V, Elector Palatine](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Frederick_V,_Elector_Palatine), the "Winter King" of Bohemia. Habsburg Madrid and Brussels were concerned that the French aimed to join Mansfeld's forces and retrieve [Artois](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Artois) for France, and the project was let slide.

When Gondomar was allowed to retire, on his return to Spain he was named a member of the royal council and governor of one of the king's palaces, and was appointed to a complimentary mission to [Vienna](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vienna). Gondomar was in [Madrid](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Madrid) when the prince of Wales— afterwards [Charles I](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles_I_of_England)— made his journey there in search of a wife. He died at the house of the [Constable of Castile](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Constable_of_Castile), near [Haro](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Haro,_La_Rioja) in the [Rioja](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/La_Rioja_(Spain)).

Gondomar was twice married, first to his niece Beatrix Sarmiento, by whom he had no children, and then to his cousin Constanza de Acuña, by whom he had four sons and three daughters. The hatred he aroused in England, which was shown by widespread mockery of an intestinal complaint from which he suffered for years, was a tribute to the zeal with which he served his own master.

Gondomar collected, both before he came to London and during his residence there, a fine library of printed books and manuscripts. Orders for the arrangement, binding and storing of his books in his house at [Valladolid](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Valladolid) appear frequently in his voluminous correspondence. In 1785 the library was ceded by his descendant and representative the marquis of Malpica to [Charles III of Spain](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles_III_of_Spain), and it is now in the Royal Library at Madrid.

A portrait of Gondomar, attributed to [Diego Velázquez](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Diego_Velázquez), was formerly at [Stowe, Buckinghamshire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stowe,_Buckinghamshire). It was [mezzotinted](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mezzotint) by [Robert Cooper](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Robert_Cooper).

The **Spanish Match** was a proposed marriage between [Prince Charles](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles_I_of_England), the son of [King James I](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/James_I_of_England) of [England](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England), and Infanta [Maria Anna of Spain](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Maria_Anna_of_Spain), the daughter of [Philip III of Spain](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Philip_III_of_Spain). The policy, unpopular with England's Protestant [House of Commons](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/British_House_of_Commons), where the recent [Anglo-Spanish War](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anglo-Spanish_War_(1585)) had not been forgotten, was initiated during the embassy to England of [Gondomar](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Diego_Sarmiento_de_Acuña,_conde_de_Gondomar), who arrived in London in 1614 with the offer that Spain would not interfere with James's troubled rule in Ireland if James would restrain the English "[privateers](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Privateer)" in Spanish American waters. Further, he proposed a marriage alliance, offering a dowry of £500,000 (later increased to £600,000), which seemed especially attractive to James after the failure of the [Parliament of 1614](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Addled_Parliament) to provide him with the financial subsidies he requested.

The climax of the ensuing decade of high-level negotiation to secure a marriage between the leading Protestant and Catholic royal families of Europe occurred in 1623 in Madrid, with the embassy of the Prince Charles and James's [favourite](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Favourite), [George Villiers, 1st Duke of Buckingham](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/George_Villiers,_1st_Duke_of_Buckingham). The wedding never took place despite the signing of a marriage contract by King James; criticism instead led to the dissolution of Parliament.

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Spanish_Match&action=edit&section=1)]Background

The prospect of a Spanish dowry from a marriage between [Charles, Prince of Wales](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Charles_I_of_England), and Infanta [Maria Anna of Spain](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Maria_Anna_of_Spain) was a potential source of income for James I, who sought ways to rule without depending on the Commons for subsidies.[[1]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-0) The policy of the "Spanish Match", as it was called, was supported by the Howards and other Catholic-leaning ministers and diplomats—together known as the Spanish Party—but deeply distrusted in Protestant England, a sentiment voiced vociferously in the Commons when James called his first parliament for seven years in 1621 to raise funds for a military expedition in support of [Frederick V, Elector Palatine](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Frederick_V,_Elector_Palatine).

By the 1620s, events on the continent had stirred up anti-Catholic feeling to a new pitch. A conflict had broken out between the Catholic[Holy Roman Empire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Holy_Roman_Empire) and the Protestant Bohemians, who had deposed the emperor as their king and elected James's son-in-law, Frederick V, Elector Palatine, in his place, triggering the [Thirty Years' War](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Thirty_Years'_War).[[2]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-1) James reluctantly summoned parliament as the only means to raise the funds necessary to assist his daughter [Elizabeth](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Elizabeth_of_Bohemia) and Frederick, who had been ousted from Prague by [Emperor Ferdinand II](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ferdinand_II,_Holy_Roman_Emperor) in 1620. The Commons on the one hand granted subsidies inadequate to finance serious military operations in aid of Frederick,[[3]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-2) and on the other called for a war directly against Spain.[[4]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-3)

In November 1621, led by [Sir Edward Coke](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Edward_Coke), the Commons framed a petition asking not only for a war with Spain but for Prince Charles to marry a Protestant, and for enforcement of the anti-Catholic laws. When James heard of the petition, he is said to have cried, "God give me patience".[[5]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-4) James flatly told them not to interfere in matters of [royal prerogative](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Royal_prerogative) or they would risk punishment;[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-5) to which provocation they reacted by issuing a statement protesting their rights, including freedom of speech. James wrote: "We cannot with patience endure our subjects to use such anti-monarchical words to us concerning their liberties, except they had subjoined that they were granted unto them by the grace and favour of our predecessors."[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-6) Urged on by Buckingham and the Spanish ambassador [Gondomar](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Diego_Sarmiento_de_Acuña,_conde_de_Gondomar), James ripped the protest out of the record book and dissolved Parliament.[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-7)

Denied the military option, James ignored public opinion and returned to the Spanish match as his only hope of restoring the possessions of Elizabeth and Frederick. When negotiations began to drag, Prince Charles, now 22, and Buckingham decided to seize the initiative and travel to Spain incognito, to win the Infanta directly.[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-8) Travelling under the names Thomas and John Smith, they arrived in Madrid on 17 February 1623 to the astonishment of [King Philip IV](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Philip_IV_of_Spain). The impetuous delegation proved a desperate mistake. Charles and Buckingham had no idea that Maria Anna was strongly averse to marrying a non-Catholic and that the Spanish, who had been protracting the marriage negotiations to keep British troops out of the war, would never agree to such a match unless James and Charles pledged to repeal the anti-Catholic laws.[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-9) Though a secret treaty was signed, the prince and duke returned to England in October without the Infanta, much to the delight of the British people.[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-10)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Spanish_Match&action=edit&section=3)]Return to Britain

Embittered by their treatment in Spain, Charles and Buckingham now turned James's Spanish policy upon its head and called for a French match and a war against the Habsburg empire.[[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-11) To raise the necessary finance, they prevailed upon James to call another Parliament, which met in February 1624. For once, the outpouring of anti-Catholic sentiment in the Commons was echoed in court, where control of policy had shifted from James to Charles and Buckingham,[[13]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-12) who pressured the king to declare war and engineered the impeachment and imprisonment of the [Lord Treasurer](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lord_Treasurer), [Lionel Cranfield](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lionel_Cranfield,_1st_Earl_of_Middlesex), [earl of Middlesex](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Earl_of_Middlesex), when he opposed the idea on grounds of cost.[[14]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-13)

The outcome of the Parliament of 1624 was ambiguous: James still refused to declare war, but Charles believed the Commons had committed themselves to financing a war against Spain, a stance which was to contribute to his problems with Parliament in his own reign.[[15]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Spanish_Match" \l "cite_note-14) Charles eventually married [Henrietta Maria of France](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Henrietta_Maria_of_France).

**English Heritage** (officially the **Historic Building and Monuments Commission for England**).[[1]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-0) is an executive [non-departmental public body](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Non-departmental_public_body) of the [British Government](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Her_Majesty's_Government) sponsored by the [Department for Culture, Media and Sport](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Department_for_Culture,_Media_and_Sport) (DCMS). By caring for the [built environment](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Built_environment), English Heritage complements the work of [Natural England](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Natural_England) which aims to protect the [natural environment](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Natural_environment). It has a broad remit of managing the historic built environment of England and advises the relevant [Secretary of State](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Secretary_of_State_(United_Kingdom)) on policy and in individual cases such as registering [listed buildings](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building) and [scheduled ancient monuments](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Scheduled_ancient_monument). [Simon Thurley](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Simon_Thurley) has been chief executive since 2002.

It was set up under the terms of the [National Heritage Act 1983](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/National_Heritage_Act_1983). Its functions for maintaining ancient monuments had previously been undertaken by part of the [Department of the Environment](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Department_for_Environment,_Food_and_Rural_Affairs) which was the successor to the [Ministry of Works](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ministry_of_Works_(United_Kingdom)). The 1983 Act also dissolved the bodies that had hitherto provided independent advice — the [Ancient Monuments Board](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ancient_Monuments_Board) for England and the [Historic Buildings Council for England](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Historic_Buildings_Council_for_England) and incorporated these functions in the new body. Another advisory body, the [Royal Commission on the Historical Monuments of England](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Royal_Commission_on_the_Historical_Monuments_of_England) (RCHME) was not merged with English Heritage until 1 April 1999.[[2]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-1)

English Heritage's best known role is as the steward of over 400 significant historical and archaeological sites, from [Stonehenge](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stonehenge) to the world's earliest [iron bridge](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Iron_Bridge). It has direct ownership over some historic sites and also liaises with private owners of sites that are managed under guardianship arrangements. It has major responsibilities in conservation, giving advice, registering and protecting the historic environment. It also maintains a public archive, the English Heritage Archive, formerly known as the [National Monuments Record](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/National_Monuments_Record_(England)) (NMR).

English Heritage (The Historic Buildings and Monuments Commission for England) is a non-departmental public body which manages the historic built environment of England. Today it is an executive agency of the [Department for Culture, Media and Sport](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Department_for_Culture,_Media_and_Sport) (DCMS). The latter was formed in 1997.[[3]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-2)

Over the centuries, what is now called 'heritage' has been the responsibility of a series of State Departments. There was the 'Kings Works' after the [Norman Conquest](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Norman_Conquest); the 'Office of Works' (1378-1832); The Office of Woods, Forests, Land Revenues and Works (1832–1851); and the [Ministry of Works](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ministry_of_Works_(United_Kingdom)) (1851–1962). Responsibility subsequently transferred to the[Ministry of Public Building and Works](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ministry_of_Public_Building_and_Works) (1962–1970) then to the [Department of the Environment (UK)](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Department_of_the_Environment_(UK)) (1970–1997) and now the DCMS.[[4]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-3) The state's legal responsibility for the historic environment goes back to the [Ancient Monuments Protection Act 1882](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ancient_Monuments_Protection_Act_1882).[[5]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-4) Central government subsequently developed several systems of heritage protection for different types of 'assets', introducing listing for buildings after WW2 and conservation areas in the 1960s. In 1983 Secretary of State for the Environment [Michael Heseltine](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Michael_Heseltine) gave national responsibility for the historic environment to a semi‑autonomous agency (or '[quango](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Quango)') to operate under ministerial guidelines and to government policy. The Historic Buildings and Monuments Commission (now known as English Heritage) was formed.[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-5)

Since then it has amalgamated with other bodies and archives to become the lead body for the heritage sector.

A [national register of historic parks and gardens](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/National_register_of_historic_parks_and_gardens), (e.g. [Rangers House](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rangers_House), Greenwich) was set up in 1984,[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-6) and a register for historic battlefields (e.g. the [battle of Tewkesbury](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Battle_of_Tewkesbury)) was created in March 1995.[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-7) ‘Registration’ is a material consideration in the planning process. In April 1999 English Heritage merged with the [Royal Commission on the Historical Monuments of England](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Royal_Commission_on_the_Historical_Monuments_of_England) (RCHME) and the [National Monuments Record](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/National_Monuments_Record_(England)) (NMR), bringing together resources for the identification and survey of England’s historic environment. By adoption this included responsibility for the national record of archaeological sites from the [Ordnance Survey](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ordnance_Survey); the National Library of Aerial Photographs, and two million RAF and Ordnance Survey aerial photographs. These, together with other nationally important external acquisitions, means that English Heritage is one of the largest publicly-accessible archives in the UK: 2.53 million records are available online, including more than 426,000 images. In 2010-2011 it recorded 4.3 million unique online user sessions[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-EHannualreport2010-11-8)and over 110,000 people visited NMR exhibitions held around the country in 2009/10 .[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-EHAnnualReport2009-10-9) In 2012 the section responsible for archive collections was renamed the English Heritage Archive.

As a result of the [National Heritage Act 2002](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/National_Heritage_Act_2002), English Heritage acquired administrative responsibility for historic wrecks and submerged landscapes within 12 miles of the English coast.[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-10) The administration of the [listed building](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building) system was transferred from DCMS to English Heritage in 2006. However, actual listing decisions still remain the responsibility of the Secretary of State for Culture, Media and Sport, who is required by the [Planning (Listed Buildings and Conservation Areas) Act 1990](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Planning_(Listed_Buildings_and_Conservation_Areas)_Act_1990) to approve a list of buildings of special architectural or historic interest.

Following the Public Bodies Reform[[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-11) (aka ‘bonfire of the quangos’)in 2010, English Heritage was confirmed as the government's statutory advisor on the historic environment, and the largest source of non-lottery grant funding for heritage assets.[[13]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-12) It was retained on grounds of “performing a technical function which should remain independent from Government”.

English Heritage is only one of several of government sponsored organisations with responsibility for the historic environment.[[14]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-13) This reflects the length of time that heritage has been legally protected, the number of government reorganisations, and the importance of heritage to the UK economy and society. Local government plays an important role in making conservation decisions locally and keeping local [Historic Environment Records](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Historic_Environment_Record) (HERs).

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=English_Heritage&action=edit&section=2)]Purpose and remit

English Heritage is the UK Government’s statutory adviser and a statutory consultee on all aspects of the historic environment and its heritage assets.[[15]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-14) This includes archaeology on land and under water, historic buildings sites and areas, designated landscapes and the historic elements of the wider landscape.[[16]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-Funding_of_the_Arts_and_Heritage-15) It monitors and reports on the state of England’s heritage and publishes the annual the [Heritage at Risk](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Heritage_at_Risk) survey which is one of the UK Government's [Official statistics](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Official_statistics). It is tasked to secure the preservation and enhancement of the man-made heritage of England for the benefit of future generations.[[16]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-Funding_of_the_Arts_and_Heritage-15)

Its remit involves:

* + Directly managing the national collection of sites, monuments, archive records and photographs taken into state care since the 1880s.
  + Giving grants national and local organisations for the conservation of historic buildings, monuments and landscapes. In 2010/11 it made grant offers worth £34.8 million to support heritage buildings.[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-EHannualreport2010-11-8)
  + Advising central UK government on which English heritage assets are nationally important and should be protected by designation (i.e. listing, scheduling etc.).[[17]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-16)[[18]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-17) In 2009-10 it advised on about 2,000 requests for listing, and processed 14,072 applications affecting Grade I and II\* listed buildings, 97% of which were dealt with within the agreed deadline.[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-EHAnnualReport2009-10-9) In 2010-11 the annual report states that it was consulted on 17,302 planning cases.[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-EHannualreport2010-11-8)
  + Administering and maintaining the register of England's [listed buildings](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building), [scheduled monuments](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Scheduled_monument), registered battlefields, [conservation areas](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Conservation_area) and protected parks and gardens.[[19]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-18) This is published as an online resource as '[The National Heritage List for England](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_National_Heritage_List_for_England)'.
  + Administering the [Blue Plaques](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Blue_Plaque) scheme in London since 1986.[[20]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-19)[[21]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-20)
  + Advising local authorities on managing changes to the most important parts of heritage.
  + Providing expertise through advice, training and guidance to improve the standards and skills of people working in heritage, practical conservation and access to resources. In 2009-2010 it trained around 2,500 professionals working in local authorities and the wider sector.[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-EHAnnualReport2009-10-9)
  + Consulting and collaborating with other heritage bodies, local and national planning organisations e.g. the preparation of Planning Policy statement for the Historic Environment (PPS5) [[22]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-pps5-21)
  + Commissioning and conducting archaeological research, including the publication of ‘Heritage Counts’ and ‘[Heritage at Risk](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Heritage_at_Risk)’ on behalf of the heritage sector which are the annual research surveys into the state of England's heritage.

It is not responsible for approving alterations to [listed buildings](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building). The management of listed buildings is the responsibility of local planning authorities and the [Department for Communities and Local Government](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Department_for_Communities_and_Local_Government).[[22]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage" \l "cite_note-pps5-21)

A **listed building** in the [United Kingdom](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_Kingdom) is a building that has been placed on the **Statutory List of Buildings of Special Architectural or Historic Interest**. It is a widely used status, applied to around half a million buildings. (The term has also been used in the [Republic of Ireland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Republic_of_Ireland), where buildings are surveyed for the [National Inventory of Architectural Heritage](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=National_Inventory_of_Architectural_Heritage&action=edit&redlink=1) in accordance with the country's obligations under the [Granada Convention](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Convention_for_the_protection_of_the_architectural_heritage_of_Europe). However, the preferred term in Ireland is now "protected structure".[[1]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-inventory-0))

A listed building may not be demolished, extended or altered without special permission from the local planning authority (which typically consults the relevant central government agency, particularly for significant alterations to the more notable listed buildings). Exemption from secular listed building control is provided for some buildings in current use for worship but only in cases where the relevant religious organisation operates its own equivalent permissions procedure. Owners of listed buildings are, in some circumstances, compelled to repair and maintain them and can face criminal prosecution if they fail to do so or if they perform unauthorised alterations.

The listing procedure allows for buildings to be removed from the list if the listing is shown to be in error.[[2]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-1)

Although most structures appearing on the lists are buildings, other structures such as [bridges](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bridge), [monuments](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Monument), [sculptures](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sculpture), [war memorials](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/War_memorials), and even [milestones and mileposts](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Milestone) and the Beatles' Abbey Road pedestrian crossing[[3]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-2) are also listed. Ancient, military and uninhabited structures, such as [Stonehenge](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stonehenge), are sometimes instead classified as [Scheduled Ancient Monuments](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Scheduled_Ancient_Monuments)and protected by much older legislation whilst cultural landscapes such as parks and gardens are currently "listed" on a non-statutory basis. Slightly different systems operate in each area of the United Kingdom, though the basic principles of the listing remain the same.

Although a limited number of 'ancient monuments' were given protection under the [Ancient Monuments Protection Act 1882](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ancient_Monuments_Protection_Act_1882),[[4]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-3) there was reluctance to restrict the owners of occupied buildings in what they could do to their property. It was the damage to buildings caused by [German bombing](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Blitz) during [World War II](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/World_War_II) that prompted the first listing of buildings that were deemed to be of particular architectural merit.[[5]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-victorian-4) 300 members of the [Royal Institute of British Architects](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Royal_Institute_of_British_Architects) and the [Society for the Protection of Ancient Buildings](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Society_for_the_Protection_of_Ancient_Buildings) were dispatched to prepare the list under the supervision of the [Inspectorate of Ancient Monuments](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Inspectorate_of_Ancient_Monuments&action=edit&redlink=1), with funding from the Treasury.[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-independent-5) The listings were used as a means of determining whether a particular building should be rebuilt if it was damaged by bombing,[[5]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-victorian-4) with varying degrees of success.[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-independent-5)

The basis of the current more comprehensive listing process was developed from the wartime system and was enacted by a provision in the [Town and Country Planning Act 1947](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Town_and_Country_Planning_Act_1947)covering [England](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England) and [Wales](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wales), and the Town and Country Planning (Scotland) Act 1947 covering Scotland. Listing was first introduced into Northern Ireland under the Planning (Northern Ireland) Order 1972. The listing process has since developed slightly differently in each part of the UK.

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Listed_building&action=edit&section=2)]Heritage protection

In the UK, the process of protecting the built historic environment (i.e. getting a [heritage asset](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Heritage_asset) legally protected) is called ‘designation’. To complicate things, several different terms are used because the processes use separate legislation: buildings are ‘listed’; ancient monuments are ‘scheduled’, wrecks are ‘protected’, and battlefields, gardens and parks are ‘registered’. A heritage asset is a part of the historic environment that is valued because of its historic, archaeological, architectural or artistic interest.[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-6) Only some of these are judged to be important enough to have extra legal protection through designation. However, buildings that are not formally listed, but still judged as being of heritage interest are still regarded as being a [material consideration](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Material_consideration) in the planning process.[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-PPS5-7)

As a very rough guide, listed buildings generally have substantial remains that are visible above the ground whereas [ancient monuments](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ancient_monument) are (mostly) below the ground and/or unoccupied.[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-LBCA1990-8)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Listed_building&action=edit&section=3)]What can be listed

Almost anything can be listed – it does not have to be a building. Buildings and structures of special historic interest come in a wide variety of forms and types, ranging from telephone boxes and road signs, to castles. English Heritage has created twenty broad categories of structures, and published selection guides for each one to aid with assessing buildings and structures. These include historical overviews and describe the special considerations for listing each category.[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-9)[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-wilts-10) Neither Historic Scotland nor Cadw appear to have published comparable guidelines for particular categories (as of June 2011) although both organisations produce guidance for owners.

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Listed_building&action=edit&section=4)]Procedure for listing or delisting

In [England](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England), to have a building considered for listing or de-listing, the process is to submit an application form online to [English Heritage](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage). The applicant does not need to be the owner of the building in order to apply for it to be listed.[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-wilts-10) Full information including application form guidance notes are on the English Heritage website. English Heritage assesses buildings put forward for listing or de-listing and provides advice to the Secretary of State on the architectural and historic interest. The Secretary of State, who may seek additional advice from others, then decides whether or not to list or de-list the building.

In Wales, applications are made using a form obtained from the relevant local authority.[[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-11) There is no provision for consent to be granted in outline. When a local authority is disposed to grant listed building consent, it must first notify the National Assembly (i.e. [Cadw](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cadw)) of the application. If the planning authority decides to refuse consent, it may do so without any reference to Cadw.

In Scotland, applications are made using a form obtained from Historic Scotland. After consultation with the local planning authority, the owner, where possible, and an independent third party, [Historic Scotland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Historic_Scotland) will then make a recommendation on behalf of the Scottish Ministers.[[13]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-12)

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Listed_building&action=edit&section=5)]England and Wales

*For lists of buildings, see*[*Listed buildings in England*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_buildings_in_England)*and*[*Listed buildings in Wales*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_buildings_in_Wales)*.*

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Listed_building&action=edit&section=6)]The legislation relevant to listing

In England and Wales the authority for listing is granted to the Secretary of State by the [Planning (Listed Buildings and Conservation Areas) Act 1990](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Planning_(Listed_Buildings_and_Conservation_Areas)_Act_1990). Listed buildings in danger of decay are listed on the English Heritage '[Heritage at Risk](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Heritage_at_Risk)' Register.

In 1980 there was public outcry at the sudden destruction of the [art deco](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Art_deco) [Firestone Factory](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Firestone_Factory&action=edit&redlink=1) ([Wallis, Gilbert and Partners](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wallis,_Gilbert_and_Partners), 1928–29), which was demolished over the August bank holiday weekend by its owners [Trafalgar House](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Trafalgar_House_(company)) who had been told that it was likely to be 'spot-listed' a few days later,[[14]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-Firestone_destruction-13) and the Government undertook to review arrangements for listing buildings.[[15]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-1980_revisions-14) After the Firestone demolition, the [Secretary of State for the Environment](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Secretary_of_State_for_the_Environment) [Michael Heseltine](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Michael_Heseltine) also initiated a complete re-survey of buildings to ensure there was nothing which merited preservation and had been missed off the lists.[[16]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-Re-survey-15)

In England, the [Department for Culture, Media and Sport](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Department_for_Culture,_Media_and_Sport) (DCMS) works with [English Heritage](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage) (an agency of the DCMS), and other government departments, e.g. [Department for Communities and Local Government](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Department_for_Communities_and_Local_Government) (DCLG) and the [Department for the Environment, Food and Rural Affairs](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Department_for_the_Environment,_Food_and_Rural_Affairs) (DEFRA) to deliver the government policy on the protection to historic buildings and other heritage assets. The decision about whether or not to list a building is made by the Secretary of State, although the process is administered in England by[English Heritage](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Heritage).[[17]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-dcmsWhatDo-16) In Wales (where it is a devolved issue) it is administered by [Cadw](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cadw) on behalf of the [National Assembly for Wales](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/National_Assembly_for_Wales)[[18]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-17) and in [Scotland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Scotland) it is administered by[Historic Scotland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Historic_Scotland) on behalf of the Scottish Ministers.[[19]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-18)

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Listed_building&action=edit&section=7)]Heritage protection reform legislation in England

There have been several attempts to simplify the heritage planning process for listed buildings in England, which has still (at the time of writing in May 2011) to reach a conclusion.[[20]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-19)

The review process was started in 2000 by [Alan Howarth](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alan_Howarth), then minister at the [Department for Culture, Media and Sport](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Department_for_Culture,_Media_and_Sport) (DCMS). The outcome was the paper ‘The Power of Place’ in 2000[[21]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-20) followed by the subsequent policy document ‘The Historic Environment: A Force for Our Future’ published by the DCMS and the [Department of the Environment, Transport and the Regions](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Department_of_the_Environment,_Transport_and_the_Regions) (DTLR) in December 2001.[[22]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-21) The launch of the Government’s Heritage Protection Reform (HPR) report in July 2003 by the DCMS entitled: ‘Protecting our historic environment: Making the system work better,’[[23]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-22) asked questions about how the current designation systems could be improved. The HPR decision report ‘Review of Heritage Protection: The Way Forward’ green paper published in June 2004 by the DCMS committed the UK government and English Heritage to a process of reform including a review of the criteria used for listing buildings.

The Government also began a process of consultation on changes to Planning Policy Guidance 15 ([PPG 15](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/PPG_15)) relating to the principles of selection for listing buildings in England. After several years of consultation with heritage groups, charities, planning authorities and English Heritage, this eventually resulted in the publication of Planning Publication Statement 5 ‘Planning for the Historic Environment’ in March 2010 by the [DCLG](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/DCLG). This replaced PPG15 and sets out the government’s national policies on the conservation of the historic environment for the England.[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-PPS5-7) PPS5 is supported by a Practice Guide, endorsed by the DCLG, the DCMS, and English Heritage[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-PPS5-7) which describes how to apply the policies stated in PPS5.

The government’s White Paper ‘Heritage Protection for the 21st Century’ published on 8 March 2007 offered a commitment to sharing the understanding of the historic environment and more openness in the process of designation.[[24]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-23)

In 2008, a draft Heritage Protection Bill[[25]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-24) was subject to pre-legislative scrutiny before its passage through UK Parliament. In the event, the legislation was abandoned despite strong cross-party support, to make room in the parliamentary legislative programme for measures to deal with the credit crunch.[[26]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-25) though it may be revived in future. The proposal was that the existing registers of buildings, parks and gardens, archaeology and battlefields, maritime wrecks, and [World Heritage Sites](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/World_Heritage_Site) be merged into a single online register which will "explain what is special and why". English Heritage would become directly responsible for identifying historic assets in England and there would be wider consultation with the public and asset owners, and new rights of appeal. There would have been streamlined systems for granting consent for work on historic assets.[[27]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-26)[[*dead link*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:Link_rot)]

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Listed_building&action=edit&section=8)]Categories of listed building

There are three types of listed status for buildings in England and Wales:[[28]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-27)

* Grade I: buildings of exceptional interest,
* Grade II\*: particularly important buildings of more than special interest.
* Grade II: buildings that are of special interest, warranting every effort to preserve them.[[29]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-28)

There was formerly a non-statutory Grade III, which was abolished in 1970.[[30]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-29) Additionally, Grades A, B and C were used mainly for [Anglican](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Church_of_England) churches in use – these correspond approximately to Grades I, II\* and II. These grades were used mainly before 1977, although a few buildings are still listed using these grades.

Listed buildings account for about 2% of English building stock.[[31]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-HAR2010report-30) In March 2010, there were approximately 374,000 list entries[[17]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-dcmsWhatDo-16) of which 92% were Grade II, 5.5% were Grade II\*, and 2.5% were Grade I.[[32]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-31) Places of worship play an important role in the UK’s architectural heritage. England alone has 14,500 listed places of worship (4,000 Grade I, 4,500 Grade II\* and 6,000 Grade II). In fact, 45% of all Grade I listed buildings are places of worship.[[33]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-32)

There are estimated to be about 500,000 actual buildings listed, as listing entries can apply to more than one building.

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Listed_building&action=edit&section=9)]Statutory Criteria for listing

In order to be listed, a building must meet various criteria.[[34]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-listingprinciples-33) The criteria for listing include architectural interest, historic interest and close historical associations with significant people or events. Buildings which are not individually noteworthy may still be listed if they form part of a group that is – for example, all the buildings in a square. This is called ‘group value’. Sometimes large areas comprising many buildings may not justify listing but are given the looser protection of designation as a [conservation area](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Conservation_area).

The criteria include:

* **Age and rarity:** The older a building is, the more likely it is to be listed. All buildings erected before 1700 "which contain a significant proportion of their original fabric" will be listed. Most buildings built between 1700–1840 are listed. After 1840 more selection is exercised and “particularly careful selection” is applied after 1945. Buildings less than 30 years old are rarely listed unless they are of outstanding quality and under threat.
* **Aesthetic merits:** i.e. the appearance of a buildings. However, buildings that have little visual appeal may be listed on grounds of representing particular aspects of social or economic history.
* **Selectivity:** where a large number of buildings of a similar type survive, the policy is only to list those which are the most representative or significant examples.
* **National interest:** significant or distinctive regional buildings e.g. those that represent a nationally important but localised industry
* **State of repair:** this is **not** deemed to be a relevant consideration for listing. A building can be listed regardless of its state of repair.[[34]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-listingprinciples-33)

Additionally:

* Any buildings or structures constructed before 1 July 1948 which fall within the [curtilage](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Curtilage) of a listed building are treated as part of the listed building.[[35]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-34)
* The effect of a proposed development on the setting of a listed building is a material consideration in determining a planning application. Setting is defined as “the surroundings in which a heritage is experienced”.[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-PPS5-7)

Although the decision to list a building may be made on the basis of the architectural or historic interest of one small part of the building, the listing protection nevertheless applies to the whole building. Listing applies not just to the exterior fabric of the building itself, but also to the interior, fixtures, fittings, and objects within the curtilage of the building even if they are not fixed.[[36]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-1990Act-35)

De-listing is possible but rare in practice. One example is the 30 November 2001 de-listing of [North Corporation Primary School](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/North_Corporation_Primary_School), [Liverpool](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Liverpool).

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Listed_building&action=edit&section=10)]Emergency listing

In an emergency, the local planning authority can serve a temporary listed “building preservation notice”, if a building is in danger of demolition or alteration in such a way that might affect its historic character.[[36]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-1990Act-35) This remains in force for 6 months until the Secretary of State decides whether or not to formally list the building.

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Listed_building&action=edit&section=11)]Certificates of immunity

If planning permission is being sought or has been obtained in England, anyone can ask the Secretary of State to issue a [Certificate of Immunity](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Certificate_of_Immunity) (CoI) in respect of a particular building. CoIs give certainty to developers proposing works that will affect buildings that may be eligible for listing. To apply for a Certificate of Immunity, it is necessary to submit an application form. Guidance notes are available on English Heritage website.

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Listed_building&action=edit&section=12)]Altering a listed building

In England and Wales, the management of listed buildings is the responsibility of local planning authorities and the Department for Communities and Local Government (i.e. not DCMS which originally listed the building). There is a general principle that listed buildings are put to ‘appropriate and viable use’ and recognise that this may involve the re-use and modification of the building.[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-PPS5-7) However, listed buildings cannot be modified without first obtaining Listed Building Consent through the relevant local planning authority[[37]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Listed_building" \l "cite_note-36)

Carrying out unauthorised works to a listed building is a criminal offence and owners can be prosecuted. A planning authority can also insist that all work undertaken without consent be reversed at the owner’s expense.

**England** [Listen](http://upload.wikimedia.org/wikipedia/commons/6/67/En-us-England.ogg)[**i**](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:En-us-England.ogg)[/](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:IPA_for_English)[ˈɪŋɡlənd](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:IPA_for_English" \l "Key)[/](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:IPA_for_English) is a country that is [part of](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Countries_of_the_United_Kingdom) the [United Kingdom](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_Kingdom).[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-7)[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-8)[[8]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-9) It shares land borders with [Scotland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Scotland) to the north and[Wales](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wales) to the west; the [Irish Sea](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Irish_Sea) is to the north west, the [Celtic Sea](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Celtic_Sea) to the south west, while the [North Sea](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/North_Sea) to the east and the[English Channel](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Channel) to the south separate it from [continental Europe](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Continental_Europe). Most of England comprises the central and southern part of the island of [Great Britain](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Great_Britain) in the [North Atlantic](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/North_Atlantic). The country also includes [over 100 smaller islands](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_islands_of_England) such as the [Isles of Scilly](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isles_of_Scilly) and the[Isle of Wight](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight).

The area now called England was first inhabited by modern humans during the [Upper Palaeolithic](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Upper_Palaeolithic) period, but it takes its name from the [Angles](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Angles), one of the [Germanic](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Germanic_peoples) tribes who settled during the 5th and 6th centuries. England became a unified state in AD 927, and since the [Age of Discovery](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Age_of_Discovery), which began during the 15th century, has had a significant cultural and legal impact on the wider world.[[9]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-10) The [English language](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_language), the [Anglican Church](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Anglican_Communion), and [English law](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_law)—the basis for the [common law](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Common_law) legal systems of many other countries around the world—developed in England, and the country's [parliamentary system](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Parliament_of_the_United_Kingdom) of government has been widely adopted by other nations.[[10]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-11) The [Industrial Revolution](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Industrial_Revolution) began in 18th-century England, transforming its society into the world's first industrialised nation.[[11]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-12) England's [Royal Society](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Royal_Society) laid the foundations of modern experimental science.[[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-13)

England's terrain mostly comprises low hills and plains, especially in central and southern England. However, there are uplands in the north (for example, the mountainous [Lake District](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lake_District), [Pennines](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pennines), and [Yorkshire Dales](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yorkshire_Dales)) and in the south west (for example, [Dartmoor](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dartmoor)and the [Cotswolds](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cotswolds)). The former capital of England was [Winchester](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Winchester) until replaced by [London](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/London) in 1066. Today London is the largest metropolitan area in the United Kingdom and the largest urban zone in the [European Union](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/European_Union) by most measures.[[nb 3]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-14) [England's population](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Demography_of_England) is about 53 million, around 84% of the population of the United Kingdom, and is largely concentrated in London, the[South East](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Southeast_England) and conurbations in the [Midlands](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Midlands), the [North West](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/North_West_England), the [North East](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/North_East_England) and [Yorkshire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yorkshire), which each developed as major industrial regions during the 19th century. Meadowlands and pastures are found beyond the major cities.

The [Kingdom of England](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kingdom_of_England)—which [after 1284](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Statute_of_Rhuddlan) included Wales—was a sovereign state until 1 May 1707, when the [Acts of Union](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Acts_of_Union_1707) put into effect the terms agreed in the [Treaty of Union](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Treaty_of_Union) the previous year, resulting in a political union with the [Kingdom of Scotland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kingdom_of_Scotland) to create the new [Kingdom of Great Britain](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kingdom_of_Great_Britain).[[13]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-15)[[14]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-16) In 1801, Great Britain was united with the [Kingdom of Ireland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kingdom_of_Ireland) through another [Act of Union](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Act_of_Union_1800) to become the [United Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_Kingdom_of_Great_Britain_and_Ireland). In 1922, the [Irish Free State](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Irish_Free_State) was established as a separate dominion, but the [Royal and Parliamentary Titles Act 1927](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Royal_and_Parliamentary_Titles_Act_1927) reincorporated into the kingdom six Irish counties to officially create the current [United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_Kingdom).

The name "England" is derived from the [Old English](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Old_English) name *Englaland*, which means "land of the [Angles](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Angles)".[[15]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-17) The Angles were one of the [Germanic tribes](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Germanic_tribes) that settled in Great Britain during the [Early Middle Ages](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Early_Middle_Ages). The Angles came from the [Angeln](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Angeln) peninsula in the[Bay of Kiel](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bay_of_Kiel) area of the [Baltic Sea](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Baltic_Sea).[[16]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-18) According to the [*Oxford English Dictionary*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Oxford_English_Dictionary), the first known use of "England" to refer to the southern part of the island of Great Britain occurs in 897, and its modern spelling was first used in 1538.[[17]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-19)

The earliest attested mention of the name occurs in the 1st century work by [Tacitus](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tacitus), [*Germania*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Germania_(book)), in which the [Latin](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Latin) word *Anglii* is used.[[18]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-Fordham-20) The etymology of the tribal name itself is disputed by scholars; it has been suggested that it derives from the shape of the Angeln peninsula, an *angular* shape.[[19]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-21) How and why a term derived from the name of a tribe that was less significant than others, such as the [Saxons](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Saxons), came to be used for the entire country and its people is not known, but it seems this is related to the custom of calling the Germanic people in Britain *Angli Saxones* or English Saxons.[[20]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-22) It may be worth noting that in [Scottish Gaelic](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Scottish_Gaelic), another language which developed on the island of Great Britain, it was the dominant Saxon tribe who gave their name to the word for 'England' ("Sasunn").[[21]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-23)

An alternative name for England is [Albion](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Albion). The name *Albion* originally referred to the entire island of Great Britain. The earliest record of the name appears in the [Aristotelian](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Aristotle) [Corpus](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Corpus_Aristotelicum), specifically the 4th century BC *De Mundo*:[[22]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-massey-24) "Beyond the [Pillars of Hercules](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pillars_of_Hercules) is the ocean that flows round the earth. In it are two very large islands called Britannia; these are[Albion](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Albion) and [Ierne](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ireland)".[[22]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-massey-24) The word [*Albion*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Albion) (Ἀλβίων) or *insula Albionum* has two possible origins. It either derives from a cognate of the Latin *albus* meaning white, a reference to the[white cliffs of Dover](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/White_cliffs_of_Dover), the only part of Britain visible from the European Continent,[[23]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-25) or from the phrase in [*Massaliote Periplus*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Massaliote_Periplus), the "island of the *Albiones*".[[24]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-26) *Albion* is now applied to England in a more poetic capacity.[[25]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-27) Another romantic name for England is [Loegria](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lloegyr), related to the [Welsh](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Welsh_language) word for England, *Lloegr*, and made popular by its use in [Arthurian legend](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Arthurian_legend).

## History

The earliest known evidence of human presence in the area now known as England was that of [*Homo antecessor*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Homo_antecessor), dating to approximately 780,000 years ago. The oldest proto-human bones discovered in England date from 500,000 years ago.[[26]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-28) Modern humans are known to have first inhabited the area during the [Upper Paleolithic](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Upper_Paleolithic) period, though permanent settlements were only established within the last 6,000 years.[[27]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-29)[[28]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-30) After the last [ice age](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Last_glacial_period) only large mammals such as [mammoths](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mammoth), [bison](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bison) and [woolly rhinoceros](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Woolly_rhinoceros) remained. Roughly 11,000 years ago, when the ice sheets began to recede, humans repopulated the area; genetic research suggests they came from the northern part of the [Iberian Peninsula](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Iberian_Peninsula).[[29]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-31) The sea level was lower than now, and Britain was connected by land to both Ireland and [Eurasia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Eurasia).[[30]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-32) As the seas rose, it was separated from Ireland 10,000 years ago and from Eurasia two millennia later.

The [Beaker culture](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Beaker_culture) arrived around 2500 BC, introducing drinking and food vessels constructed from clay, as well as vessels used as reduction pots to smelt copper ores.[[31]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-33) It was during this time that major [Neolithic](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Neolithic) monuments such as [Stonehenge](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stonehenge) and [Avebury](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Avebury) were constructed. By heating together tin and copper, both of which were in abundance in the area, the Beaker culture people made [bronze](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bronze), and later iron from iron ores. The development of iron [smelting](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Smelting) allowed the construction of better [ploughs](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Plough), advancing agriculture (for instance, with [Celtic fields](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Celtic_field)), as well as the production of more effective weapons.[[32]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-34)

According to [John T. Koch](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/John_T._Koch) and others, England in the Late Bronze Age was part of a maritime trading-networked culture called the [Atlantic Bronze Age](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Atlantic_Bronze_Age) that included the whole of the British Isles and much of what we now regard as France together with the Iberian Peninsula. [Celtic languages](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Celtic_languages) developed in those areas; [Tartessian](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Tartessian_language) may have been the earliest written Celtic language.[[33]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-Koch2009-35)[[34]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-36)[[35]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-37)

The [subdivisions of England](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Subdivisions_of_England) consist of up to four levels of [subnational division](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Administrative_division) controlled through a variety of types of administrative entities created for the purposes of [local government](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Local_government_in_England). The highest tier of local government were the nine [regions of England](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Regions_of_England): [North East](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/North_East_England), [North West](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/North_West_England), [Yorkshire and the Humber](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yorkshire_and_the_Humber), [East Midlands](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/East_Midlands), [West Midlands](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/West_Midlands_(region)), [East](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/East_of_England), [South East](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/South_East_England), [South West](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/South_West_England), and London. These were created in 1994 as[Government Offices](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Government_Office), used by the British Government to deliver a wide range of policies and programmes regionally, but there are no elected bodies at this level, except in London, and in 2011 the regional Government offices were abolished.[[108]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-112) The same boundaries remain in use for electing [Members of the European Parliament](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Members_of_the_European_Parliament) on a regional basis.

After [devolution](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Devolution) began to take place in other parts of the United Kingdom it was planned that referendums for the regions of England would take place for their own elected [regional assemblies](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Regional_Assemblies_in_England) as a counterweight. [London accepted](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Greater_London_Authority_referendum,_1998) in 1998: the [London Assembly](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/London_Assembly) was created two years later. However, when the proposal was rejected by the [northern England devolution referendums, 2004](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Northern_England_devolution_referendums,_2004) in the North East, further referendums were cancelled.[[88]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-refreject-92) The regional assemblies outside London were abolished in 2010, and their functions transferred to respective [Regional Development Agencies](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Regional_Development_Agency) and a new system of [local authority leaders' boards](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Local_authority_leaders'_board).[[109]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-113)

Below the regional level, all of England is divided into 48 [ceremonial counties](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ceremonial_counties_of_England).[[110]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-britannicagov-114) These are used primarily as a geographical frame of reference and have developed gradually since the [Middle Ages](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Middle_Ages), with some established as recently as 1974.[[111]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-maud-115) Each has a [Lord Lieutenant](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lord_Lieutenant) and [High Sheriff](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/High_Sheriff); these posts are used to represent the[British monarch](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/British_monarch) locally.[[110]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-britannicagov-114) Outside [Greater London](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Greater_London) and the [Isles of Scilly](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isles_of_Scilly), England is also divided into 83[metropolitan and non-metropolitan counties](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Metropolitan_and_non-metropolitan_counties_of_England); these correspond to areas used for the purposes of local government[[112]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-localgov-116) and may consist of a single district or be divided into several.

There are six [metropolitan counties](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Metropolitan_county) based on the most heavily urbanised areas, which do not have county councils.[[112]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-localgov-116) In these areas the principal authorities are the councils of the subdivisions, the [metropolitan boroughs](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Metropolitan_borough). Elsewhere, 27 [non-metropolitan "shire" counties](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Non-metropolitan_county) have a [county council](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/County_council) and are divided into districts, each with a district council. They are typically, though not always, found in more rural areas. The remaining non-metropolitan counties are of a single district and usually correspond to large towns or sparsely populated counties; they are known as [unitary authorities](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Unitary_authorities_of_England). Greater London has a different system for local government, with 32 [London boroughs](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/London_borough), plus the [City of London](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/City_of_London) covering a small area at the core, governed by the [City of London Corporation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/City_of_London_Corporation).[[113]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-117) At the most localised level, much of England is divided into [civil parishes](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Civil_parishes_in_England) with [councils](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Parish_councils_in_England); they do not exist in Greater London.[[114]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-118)

In geological terms, the [Pennines](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pennines), known as the "backbone of England", are the oldest range of mountains in the country, originating from the end of the [Paleozoic Era](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Paleozoic_Era) around 300 million years ago.[[121]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-125) Their geological composition includes, among others, [sandstone](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sandstone) and [limestone](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Limestone), and also coal. There are [karst](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Karst) landscapes in calcite areas such as parts of Yorkshire and [Derbyshire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Derbyshire). The Pennine landscape is high [moorland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Moorland) in upland areas, indented by fertile valleys of the region's rivers. They contain three [national parks](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/National_parks_in_England), the [Yorkshire Dales](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yorkshire_Dales), [Northumberland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Northumberland_National_Park), and the [Peak District](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Peak_District). The highest point in England, at 978 metres (3,209 ft), is [Scafell Pike](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Scafell_Pike) in Cumbria.[[120]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-metoffice_nw-124) Straddling the border between England and Scotland are the [Cheviot Hills](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cheviot_Hills).

The [English Lowlands](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Lowlands_beech_forests) are to the south of the Pennines, consisting of green rolling hills, including the [Cotswold Hills](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cotswold_Hills), [Chiltern Hills](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chiltern_Hills), [North](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/North_Downs)and [South Downs](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/South_Downs)—where they meet the sea they form white rock exposures such as the [cliffs of Dover](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cliffs_of_Dover). The granite Southwest Peninsula in the [West Country](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/West_Country) includes upland moorland, such as [Dartmoor](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dartmoor) and [Exmoor](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Exmoor), and enjoys a [mild climate](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Climate_of_south-west_England); both are national parks.[[122]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/England" \l "cite_note-126)

The **Isle of Wight** is a [county](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Counties_of_England) and the largest island in England, located in the [English Channel](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Channel), on average about 2–5 miles (3–7 km) off the south coast of the county of [Hampshire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hampshire), separated from the mainland by a strait called the [Solent](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Solent). The Island has many resorts which have been holiday destinations since [Victorian times](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Victorian_era).

The Island has a rich history, including a brief status as an independent kingdom in the 15th century. Until 1995, like Jersey and Guernsey, the Island had its own [Governor](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_Governors_of_the_Isle_of_Wight)—most notably [Lord Mountbatten](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Louis_Mountbatten,_1st_Earl_Mountbatten_of_Burma) from 1969 to 1974, after which he became [Lord Lieutenant](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lord_Lieutenant)until his assassination in 1979.

It was home to the poets [Swinburne](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Algernon_Charles_Swinburne) and [Tennyson](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alfred_Lord_Tennyson), and to [Queen Victoria](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Queen_Victoria), who built her much-loved summer residence and final home[Osborne House](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Osborne_House) at [East Cowes](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/East_Cowes). The Island's maritime and industrial history encompasses boat building, sail making, the manufacture of [flying boats](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Flying_boat), the world's first [hovercraft](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hovercraft) and the testing and development of Britain's space rockets. It is home to the [Isle of Wight International Jazz Festival](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_International_Jazz_Festival), [Bestival](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bestival) and the recently revived [Isle of Wight Festival](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_Festival), which, in 1970, was the largest rock music event ever held.[[2]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-1) The Island has some exceptional wildlife and is one of the richest locations of [dinosaur](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dinosaur) [fossils](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fossil) in Europe.

Until 1890 the Isle of Wight was part of [Hampshire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hampshire). Since then it has been an independent [administrative county](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Administrative_counties_of_England), though up to 1974 it continued to share the [Lord Lieutenant of Hampshire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lord_Lieutenant_of_Hampshire). In 1974, it was reconstituted as a non-metropolitan and [ceremonial county](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ceremonial_counties_of_England), with its own [Lord Lieutenant](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lord_Lieutenant_of_the_Isle_of_Wight), and recognised as a [postal county](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Postal_counties_of_the_United_Kingdom). With a single Member of Parliament and 132,731 permanent residents in[2001](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/United_Kingdom_Census_2001), it is also the most populous [parliamentary constituency](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_Parliamentary_constituencies_in_the_United_Kingdom) in the United Kingdom. In 1832 the act popularly referred to as the Great Reform Act or [Reform Act of 1832](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Reform_Act_of_1832) established the principle of having a single MP for the Isle of Wight. Beginning in 2010,[[3]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-2) there is ongoing parliamentary debate to consider altering this.[[4]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-3)

It is easily accessible from [Southsea](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Southsea) by [hovercraft](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hovercraft). Several ferry services operate across the Solent: the route from Southampton to[Cowes](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cowes) is 10 miles (16 km), Portsmouth to [Ryde](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ryde) 3 miles (7 km), Portsmouth to Fishbourne 7 miles (11 km), and Lymington to

### Early history

The Isle of Wight is first mentioned in writing in [*Geography*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Geographia_(Ptolemy)) by [Claudius Ptolemaeus](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Claudius_Ptolemaeus).

The Roman historian [Suetonius](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Suetonius) mentions that the entire island was captured by the commander [Vespasian](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vespasian), who later became emperor.

At the end of the Roman Empire, the island of Vectis became a [Jutish](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Jutes) kingdom ruled by King [Stuf](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Stuf) and his successors until AD 661 when it was invaded by [Wulfhere](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wulfhere_of_Mercia) of [Mercia](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mercia) and forcibly converted to Christianity at sword point. When he left for Mercia the islanders reverted to paganism.

In AD 685 it was invaded by [Caedwalla](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Caedwalla_of_Wessex) of [Wessex](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wessex) and can be considered to have become part of Wessex. Following the accession of West Saxon kings as kings of all England, it then became part of England. The island became part of the [shire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Shire) of [Hampshire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hampshire) and was divided into [hundreds](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hundred_(country_subdivision)) as was the norm.

In 686, it became the last part of England to convert to Christianity.[[5]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-4)[[6]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-5)[[7]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-6)

The island suffered especially from [Viking](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Viking) predations. [Alfred the Great](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Alfred_the_Great)'s navy defeated the Danes in 871 after they had "ravaged Devon and the Isle of Wight".

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=3)]Middle ages

The Isle of Wight is approximately diamond-shaped and covers an area of 380 km2. Slightly more than half of the island, mainly in the west, is designated as the [Isle of Wight Area of Outstanding Natural Beauty](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_AONB). The Island has 258 km2 of farmland, 52 km2 of developed areas, and 92 km of coastline. The landscape of the Island is remarkably diverse, leading to its oft-quoted description of "England in Miniature". West Wight is predominantly rural, with dramatic coastlines dominated by the chalk [downland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Downland)ridge, running across the whole island and ending in [The Needles](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/The_Needles) stacks—perhaps the most photographed aspect of the Isle of Wight. The South Western quarter is commonly referred to as the [Back of the Wight](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Back_of_the_Wight) because it has a unique social and historical background. The highest point on the island is[St Boniface Down](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/St_Boniface_Down), at 241 m which is a [marilyn](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Marilyn_(hill)). The rest of the Island's landscape also has great diversity, with perhaps the most notable habitats being the soft cliffs and sea ledges, which are spectacular features as well as being very important for wildlife, and are internationally protected. The[River Medina](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/River_Medina) flows north into the [Solent](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Solent), whilst the other main river, the [River Yar](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Eastern_Yar_(river),_Isle_of_Wight) flows roughly north-east, emerging at[Bembridge](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bembridge) Harbour at the eastern end of the island. Confusingly, there is another entirely separate river at the western end also called the [River Yar](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Western_Yar_(river),_Isle_of_Wight) flowing the short distance from [Freshwater](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Freshwater,_Isle_of_Wight) Bay to a relatively large estuary at [Yarmouth](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yarmouth,_Isle_of_Wight). To distinguish them, they may be referred to as the *Eastern* and *Western* Yar.

The south coast of the island borders the [English Channel](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_Channel). Without man's intervention the sea might well have split the island into three; at the west end where a bank of pebbles separates [Freshwater Bay](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Freshwater_Bay) from the marshy backwaters of the Western Yar east of Freshwater, and at the east end where a thin strip of land separates Sandown Bay from the marshy basin of the Eastern Yar, east of [Sandown](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sandown). Yarmouth itself was effectively an island, with water on all sides and only connected to the rest of the island by a regularly breached neck of land immediately east of the town.

It is one of the few places in England where the [red squirrel](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Red_squirrel) is flourishing, with a stable population ([Brownsea Island](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Brownsea_Island) is another). Unlike most of England, no [grey squirrels](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Eastern_grey_squirrel) are to be found on the island,[[12]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-11) nor are there any wild [deer](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Deer). Instead, rare and protected species such as the [dormouse](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dormouse) and many rare [bats](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bat) can be found. The [Glanville Fritillary](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Glanville_Fritillary) butterfly's distribution in the United Kingdom is largely restricted to the edges of the crumbling cliffs of the Isle of Wight.

A competition in 2002 named the [Pyramidal Orchid](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Pyramidal_Orchid) as the Isle of Wight's [county flower](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/County_flower).[[13]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-12)

The island has one of the most important areas in Europe for [dinosaur](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dinosaur) fossils. The eroding cliffs often reveal previously hidden remains particularly along the region known as the[Back of the Wight](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Back_of_the_Wight).

The Isle of Wight is made up of a wide variety of different rock types ranging from Early [Cretaceous](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cretaceous) times (around 127 million years ago) to the middle of the [Palaeogene](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Palaeogene) (around 30 million years ago). The northern half of island is mainly made up of Tertiary clays, with the southern half formed of Cretaceous rocks (the [Chalk](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chalk) that forms the central east-west downs, as well as Upper and Lower [Greensands](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Greensand)and [Wealden](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wealden) strata).

All the rocks found on the island are [sedimentary](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sedimentary) – made up of mineral grains from previously existing rocks. These are consolidated to form the rocks that can be seen on the island today, such as [limestone](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Limestone), [mudstone](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Mudstone) and [sandstone](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sandstone). Rocks on the island are very rich in fossils and many of these can be seen exposed on the beaches as the cliffs erode.

Cretaceous rocks on the island, usually red, show that the climate was previously hot and dry. This provided suitable living conditions for[dinosaurs](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dinosaur). Dinosaur bones and footprints can be seen in and on the rocks exposed around the island's beaches, especially at [Yaverland](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yaverland)and [Compton Bay](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Compton_Bay). As a result, the isle has been nicknamed *Dinosaur Island*.

Along the northern coast of the island there is a rich source of [fossilised](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fossil) shellfish, [crocodiles](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Crocodiles), turtles and mammal bones. The youngest of these date back to around 30 million years ago.

About ten thousand years ago, sea levels began to rise and the great ice sheets of the last Ice Age melted. As sea level rose higher, the Isle of Wight became separated from the mainland. This is thought to have occurred about 7,000 years ago.

The Isle of Wight is a [ceremonial](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ceremonial_counties_of_England) and [non-metropolitan](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Metropolitan_and_non-metropolitan_county) county. Since the abolition of its two [borough](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Borough) councils in 1995 and the restructuring of the county council as the [Isle of Wight Council](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_Council), it has been a [unitary](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Unitary_authority) county. It also has a single Member of Parliament, and is by far the most populous [constituency](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_(UK_Parliament_constituency)) in the United Kingdom (more than 50% above the average of English constituencies).

As a constituency of the [House of Commons](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/British_House_of_Commons), it is traditionally a battleground between the [Conservatives](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Conservative_Party_(UK)) and the [Liberal Democrats](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Liberal_Democrats). The current Member Of Parliament [Andrew Turner](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Andrew_Turner_(politician)) is a Conservative, and his predecessor Dr [Peter Brand](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Peter_Brand) was a Liberal Democrat.

The [Isle of Wight Council](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_Council) election of 2009 was a victory for the Conservative Party, which took 24 of the council's 40 seats.[[15]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-14)

There has been a minor regionalist movement, in the form of the [Vectis National Party](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vectis_National_Party) and Isle of Wight Party, but they attracted little support in elections.

* [Newport](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Newport,_Isle_of_Wight), located in the centre of the island, is the county town of the Isle of Wight and is the island's main shopping area. Recent developments include a new bus station with retail complex and a new retail park on the outskirts. Located next to the [River Medina](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/River_Medina), Newport Quay was a busy port until the mid 19th century, but has now been mainly converted into art galleries, apartments and other meeting places.
* [Ryde](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ryde), the island's largest town with a population of around 30,000, is located in the north east of the island. It is a [Victorian](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Victorian_architecture) town with an 800 metre long [pier](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ryde_Pier) and 6 km of beaches, attracting many tourists each year. Every year there is a Ryde Carnival in two parts, spread over more than one day: one in the daytime, and one at night with many coloured lights. Ryde is also home to the ice hockey club Isle of Wight Raiders, who play in the English Premier League.
* [Cowes](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cowes) is the location of [Cowes Week](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cowes_Week) every year and an international sailing centre. It is also the home of the record-setting sailor Dame [Ellen MacArthur](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ellen_MacArthur).
* [East Cowes](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/East_Cowes) is famous for [Osborne House](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Osborne_House), [Norris Castle](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Norris_Castle) and for being the home from 1929 to 1964 of [Saunders-Roe](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Saunders-Roe), the historic aircraft, flying boat and hovercraft company.
* [Sandown](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sandown) is another seaside resort, attracting many tourists each year. It is also home to the [Isle of Wight Zoo](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_Zoo) and [Dinosaur Isle](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dinosaur_Isle) geological museum, and one of the island's tw

### Language and dialect

The accent of the Isle of Wight is similar to the traditional [dialect](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Dialect) of Hampshire, featuring the dropping of some [consonants](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Consonant) and an emphasis on longer [vowels](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vowel). It is similar to the [West Country dialects](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/West_Country_dialects) heard in SW England, but less removed in sound[[*clarification needed*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wikipedia:Please_clarify)]from the [Estuary English](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Estuary_English) of the SE. As with many other traditional southern English regional dialects and accents, a strong island accent is not now commonly heard, and, as speakers tend to be older, this decline is likely to continue.

The island also has its own local and regional words. Some words, including *grockle* (visitor, tourist – hence *grockle-can*, tour coach) and *nipper/nips* (a younger male person), are still commonly used and are shared with neighbouring areas of the mainland. A few are unique to the island, for example *overner* (a mainlander who has settled on the island) and*caulkhead* (someone born on the island and born from long-established island stock). Other words are more obscure and now used mainly for comic emphasis, such as *mallishag*(meaning "[caterpillar](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Caterpillar)") and *nammit* ("no meat", from the lunch of bread and cheese farm workers ate). Some other words are *gurt* meaning "great"(as in size rather than quality - "Look at en, wi' es gurt 'at flappin' abate." *Look at him, with his big hat flapping around*), and *gallybagger* ("scarecrow").[[16]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-15)

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=15)]Identity

There has been and still is some confusion between the identities of the Isle of Wight as a separate county and, as it once was, a part of the nearby county of [Hampshire](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hampshire). At least one mainstream newspaper article as recently as 2008 refers to the "Isle of Wight in Hampshire".[[17]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-16) Prior to 1890, the Isle of Wight was normally regarded and was administered as a part of Hampshire. With the formation of the [Isle of Wight County Council](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_County_Council) in 1890, the distinct identity became officially established: see also [*Politics of the Isle of Wight*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Politics_of_the_Isle_of_Wight). In January 2009, the new [Flag of the Isle of Wight](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Flag_of_the_Isle_of_Wight), the first general flag for the county, was accepted by the [Flag Institute](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Flag_Institute).[[18]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-17) Denizens of the Isle of Wight are sometimes referred to as 'Vectensians'or "caulkheads".

[Cowes](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cowes) is a centre for sailing, playing host to several racing [regattas](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Regatta). [Cowes Week](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cowes_Week) is the longest-running regular regatta in the world, with over 1,000 yachts and 8,500 competitors taking part in over 50 classes of yacht racing.[[19]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-18) In 1851 the first [America's Cup](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/America's_Cup) race took place around the island. Other major sailing events hosted in Cowes include the [Fastnet race](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Fastnet_race), the [Round the Island Race](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Round_the_Island_Race),[[20]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-19) the[Admiral's Cup](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Admiral's_Cup), and the [Commodore's Cup](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Commodore's_Cup).[[21]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-20)

#### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=19)]Marathon

The Isle of Wight Marathon is the United Kingdom's oldest continuously held marathon, having been run every year since 1957.[[22]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-21) The course starts in Ryde, passing through Newport, Shanklin and Sandown, before finishing back in Ryde. It is an undulating course with a total climb of 459 metres.

#### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=20)]Speedway

The island is home to the [Isle of Wight Islanders](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_Islanders) [speedway](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Motorcycle_speedway) team, who compete in the sport's third division, the [National League](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Speedway_National_League). The club was founded in 1996, with a first-night attendance of 1,740.

#### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=21)]Ice Hockey

The island is also home to the [Wightlink Raiders](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wightlink_Raiders), an ice hockey team based at Ryde Arena. They compete in the 1st Tier of the [English National Ice Hockey League](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_National_Ice_Hockey_League), the 3rd Division in the country. There is also an amateur team the [Vectis Tigers](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vectis_Tigers) of the 2nd Tier [English National Ice Hockey League](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/English_National_Ice_Hockey_League), and four youth teams including the [Isle of Wight Wildcats](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_Wildcats), all based at Ryde Arena.

#### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=22)]Hockey

The Isle of Wight Hockey Club run three senior teams and a junior side, with the 1st XI competing in Hampshire's top division, just one below the regional leagues. The island also has a ladies team—the Vectis Ladies—which is a separate organisation from the IW Hockey Club. Ventnor Middle School on the Isle of Wight runs a successful hockey set-up, producing a number of players who have since gone on to play at high standards.

#### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=23)]Football

The now-disbanded [Ryde Sports F.C.](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ryde_Sports_F.C.) founded in 1888 and became one of the eight founder members of the [Hampshire League](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hampshire_League) in 1896. There are several other non-league clubs such as [Newport (IW) F.C.](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Newport_(IW)_F.C.) There is an [Isle of Wight Saturday Football League](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_Saturday_Football_League) with three divisions, and a [rugby union](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rugby_union) club,[[23]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-22) plus various other sporting teams.[[24]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-23) [Beach football](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Beach_football)is particularly prevalent on the island and has several of the nation's premier clubs with almost all of the England Beach Soccer team made up from players from the island. Many of the stadiums are used when the island hosts the [Island Games](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Island_Games) as it has done twice.

#### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=24)]Cricket

The largest industry on the Isle of Wight is tourism, but the island has a strong agricultural heritage, including sheep and dairy farming and the growing of arable crops. Traditional agricultural commodities are more difficult to market off the island because of transport costs, but island farmers have managed successfully to exploit some specialist markets. The high price of these products overcomes the transport costs. One of the most successful agricultural sectors at present is the growing of crops under cover, particularly salad crops, including tomatoes and cucumbers. The Isle of Wight has a longer growing season than much of the United Kingdom and this also favours such crops. Garlic has been successfully grown in [Newchurch](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Newchurch,_Isle_of_Wight) for many years, and is even exported to France. This has led to the establishment of an annual [Garlic Festival](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_Garlic_Festival) at Newchurch, which is one of the largest events of the island's annual calendar. The favourable climate has led to the success of[vineyards](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vineyard), including one of the oldest in the British Isles, at [Adgestone](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Adgestone) near [Sandown](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sandown).[[36]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-35) [Lavender](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Lavender) is also grown for its oil.[[37]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-36) The largest sector of agriculture has been dairying, but due to low milk prices, and strict UK legislation for UK milk producers, the dairy industry has declined. There were nearly one-hundred and fifty dairy producers of various sizes in the mid-eighties, but this has now dwindled down to just twenty-four. Due to modern farming practices, the Island has noted increased levels of pesticide poisoning in local farmers and other local residents living near crops and vineyards.[[38]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-37)

The making of sailcloth, boats and other connected maritime industry has long been associated with the island, although this has somewhat diminished in recent years. [Cowes](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cowes) is still home to various small marine-related companies such as [boat-builders](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Boat_building).

Although they have reduced the extent of the plants and workforce, including the sale of the main site, [GKN](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/GKN_plc) operates what was once the [British Hovercraft Corporation](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/British_Hovercraft_Corporation) a subsidiary of, and known latterly, when manufacturing focus changed, as [Westland Aircraft](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Westland_Aircraft). Prior to its purchase by Westland, it was the independent company known as [Saunders-Roe](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Saunders-Roe). It remains one of the most notable historic firms, having produced many of the [flying boats](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Flying_boats), and the world's first [hovercraft](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hovercraft).

The island's major manufacturing activity today is in [composite materials](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Composite_material), used by boat-builders and the [wind turbine](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wind_turbine) manufacturer [Vestas](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Vestas), which has a wind turbine blade factory and testing facilities in [Newport](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Newport,_Isle_of_Wight) and [East Cowes](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/East_Cowes).

[Bembridge Airfield](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bembridge_Airport) is the home of [Britten-Norman](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Britten-Norman), manufacturers of the [Islander](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Britten-Norman_Islander) and [Trislander](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Britten-Norman_Trislander) aircraft. This is shortly to become the site of the European assembly line for [Cirrus](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cirrus_Design)light aircraft. The Norman Aeroplane Company is a smaller aircraft manufacturing company operating in [Sandown](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sandown). There are have been three other aircraft manufacturers that built planes on the island.[[39]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-38)

In 2005, Northern Petroleum began exploratory drilling for [oil](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Petroleum), with its Sandhills-2 borehole at [Porchfield](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Porchfield) but ceased operations in October that year, after failing to find significant reserves.

#### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=29)]Breweries

There are three breweries on the island. Goddards Brewery in [Ryde](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ryde) opened in 1993[[40]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-39). David Yates, who was head brewer of Burts and Island Brewery, started brewing as Yates Brewery at the Inn at [St Lawrence](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/St_Lawrence,_Isle_of_Wight) in 2000[[41]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-40). The Island Brewery, located in Shalfleet, was formed in 1993 by Mick Kennel and Dave Coleman.

Ventnor Brewery, which closed in 2009, was the last incarnation of Burt's Brewery, which had been brewing on the island since the 1840s in [Ventnor](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Ventnor)[[42]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-41). Until the 1960s most pubs were owned by Mews Brewery sited in Newport near the old railway station, but it closed and the pubs taken over by Strongs and then by [Whitbread](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Whitbread). By some accounts Mews beer was apt to be rather cloudy and dark. They pioneered the use of cans in the 19th century for export to British India. The old brewery was derelict for many years but was then severely damaged in a spectacular fire.

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=30)]Services

#### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=31)]Tourism and heritage

See also: [*List of tourist attractions in the Isle of Wight*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/List_of_tourist_attractions_in_the_Isle_of_Wight)

The heritage of the island is a major asset, which has for many years kept its economy going. Holidays focused on natural heritage, including both wildlife and geology, are becoming a growing alternative to the traditional British [seaside](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Seaside_resort) holiday, which went into decline in the second half of the 20th century, due to the increased affordability of air travel to alternative destinations.

The Isle of Wight has a total of 787 km of roadway. Major roads run between the main island towns, with smaller roads connecting villages. It is one of the few counties in the UK not to have a motorway, although there is a dual carriageway from Coppins Bridge in Newport towards the north of Newport near the island's hospital and prison.

A comprehensive bus network operated by [Southern Vectis](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Southern_Vectis) links most island settlements, with Newport as the central hub.

The island's location 8 km off the mainland means that longer-distance transport is by boat. Car ferry and passenger services are run by[Wightlink](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wightlink) and [Red Funnel](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Red_Funnel) as well as a hovercraft operated by [Hovertravel](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Hovertravel). Fixed links, in the forms of tunnels or bridges, have been proposed.

The island formerly had [its own railway network](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Railways_on_the_Isle_of_Wight) of over 88 km, but only one line remains in regular use. The [Island Line](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Island_Line,_Isle_of_Wight) is part of the United Kingdom's [National Rail](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/National_Rail) network, running a little under 14 kilometres from Ryde to Shanklin. The line was opened by the [Isle of Wight Railway](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_Railway) in 1864, and from 1996 to 2007 was run by the smallest train operating company on the network, [Island Line Trains](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Island_Line_Trains). It is notable for utilising ex-London Underground rolling stock. Branching off the Island Line at Smallbrook Junction is the heritage [Isle of Wight Steam Railway](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_Steam_Railway), which runs for 5.5 miles to the outskirts of Wootton.

There are currently two airfields for general aviation, [Isle of Wight Airport](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_Airport) at Sandown and [Bembridge Airport](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Bembridge_Airport).

The island has over 322 km of cycleways, much of which can be enjoyed by families off road. Major Trails are

* The Sunshine Trail, which incorporates Sandown, Shanklin, Godshill, and Wroxall in a 19 km circular route
* The Troll Trail' between Cowes and Sandown (21 km, 90% off road)
* The Round the Island Cycle Route, which circumnavigates the island on a reported 100 kilometre ride

A full list of routes are available here: [Isle Cycle](http://www.islecycle.co.uk/) The site is constantly updated to add new routes.

#### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=33)]Communications

All the island telephone exchanges are broadband-enabled, although some areas, such as [Arreton](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Arreton), have no broadband access. Some urban areas such as [Cowes](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Cowes) and Newport are also covered by cable lines.

#### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=34)]Media

The Isle of Wight's main local newspaper is the [*Isle of Wight County Press*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_County_Press), which costs 75p. It discusses local issues and is published each Friday, or the previous working day if the Friday is a public holiday.

The island has one local commercial radio station and also falls within the coverage area of a number of local stations on the near mainland. [Isle of Wight Radio](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_Radio) has broadcast in the [medium-wave](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Medium-wave) band since 1990 and on 102 and 107 MHz [FM](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/FM_broadcasting) since 1998, as well as [streaming on the internet](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Internet_radio).

The island's not-for-profit community radio station opened in 2007, Angel Radio began broadcasting on 91.5 MHz from studios in Cowes and a transmitter near Newport.[[46]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-45) On 1 February 2009, [Wight FM](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Wight_FM) began broadcasting as an internet radio station. It closed down 6 months later. This was replaced in February 2010 by Internet station Vectis Radio.

On-line news sources for the Isle of Wight include Ventnor Blog[[47]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-46) and The Isle of Wight Chronicle.[[48]](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight" \l "cite_note-47) The Chronicle was originally a best selling island paper in the 1950s.

The island has had community television stations in the past, first TV12 and then [Solent TV](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Solent_TV) from 2002 until its closure on 24 May 2007. In Early 2012 the Isle of Wight saw the launch of a new online community TV Station going under the name of Isle of Wight TV (iWight.TV) The news service is provided in-house by former members of the Isle of Wight Chronicle who stopped publishing news in 2011.

The Isle of Wight is part of the BBC South region and the ITV Meridian region.

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=35)]Prisons

The geography of the island, and its location near the densely populated south of England, led to it hosting three prisons: [Albany](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Albany_(HM_Prison)), [Camp Hill](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Camp_Hill_(HM_Prison)) and [Parkhurst](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Parkhurst_(HM_Prison)), all located outside Newport near the main road to Cowes. Albany and Parkhurst were among the few Category A prisons in the UK until they were downgraded in the 1990s. The downgrading of Parkhurst was precipitated by a major escape: three prisoners (two murderers and a blackmailer) made their way out of the prison on 3 January 1995 for four days of freedom before being recaptured. Parkhurst especially enjoyed notoriety as one of the toughest jails in the United Kingdom and housed many notable inmates, including the [Yorkshire Ripper](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Yorkshire_Ripper) [Peter Sutcliffe](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Peter_Sutcliffe), New Zealand drug lord [Terry Clark](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Terrance_John_Clark) and the [Kray twins](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Kray_twins).

Camp Hill is located to the west of, and adjacent to, Albany and Parkhurst, on the very edge of Parkhurst Forest, having been converted first to a [borstal](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Borstal) and later to a Category C prison. It was built on the site of an army camp (both Albany and Parkhurst were barracks); there is a small estate of tree-lined roads with well-proportioned officers' quarters (of varying grandeur according to rank, but now privately owned) to the south and east.

The management of all three prisons was merged into a single administration, under the name of [HMP Isle of Wight](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_(HM_Prison)) in April 2009.

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=36)]Education

Main article: [*Education on the Isle of Wight*](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Education_on_the_Isle_of_Wight)

There are sixty-nine [Local Education Authority](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Local_Education_Authority)-maintained schools on the Isle of Wight, and two [independent schools](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Independent_school_(UK)). As a rural community, many of these schools are small, with average numbers of pupils lower than in many urban areas. There are currently primary schools, middle schools and high schools. However, education reforms have led to plans for closures (for full details on these see [Education reforms on the Isle of Wight](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Education_reforms_on_the_Isle_of_Wight)). There is also the [Isle of Wight College](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Isle_of_Wight_College), which is located on the outskirts of Newport.

From September 2010, there is a transition period from the "3-tier system" of primary, middle and high schools. Some schools have now closed their doors, such as Chale CE Primary School. Other schools have become "federated", such as Brading CE Primary School and St Helens Primary School. Christ the King College started as a "middle school" but is being converted into a High School so that eventually it will have a Sixth Form.

From September 2011, there will be 5 new schools, with an age range of 11 to 18 years, which will replace the existing High schools.

When the transition is complete, there will be fewer schools on the Isle of Wight.

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Isle_of_Wight&action=edit&section=37)]Notable residents

In most camps, the adult supervisors are called **counselors**, but another name may be "cabin leader". In many camps, counselors are assigned to smaller groups of campers, called "bunks", "huts", "cabins", or "units", who participate in activities as a group. Counselors often share living accommodations with their bunk or other counselors. Most counselors are in their late teens or early twenties, as [high school](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/High_school) or [college](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/College) students on their summer break are frequently recruited.

At some camps, all campers stay overnight, and at some camps, so called [day camps](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Day_camp), the campers go home each night. Some other camps allow both day and overnight campers. In the USA, residential camps that have overnight facilities are sometimes called "sleepaway camps". Summer camp is often the first time that children spend an extended period of time away from home.

The practice of running residential holidays for children away from their own home seems to have originated in Appenzell in the Alps in 1876, when Pastor Bion set up holiday camps in which children made tree-houses, sang songs, did drama, made kites and had adventure games.

Post-war France used Pastor Bion’s model to take children who had grown up during the war years, away from cities, and their scheme ‘colonies de vacances’ became state controlled, part of their state education system for all children.

The American camps seem to have developed from a very different cultural root.

## [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Summer_camp&action=edit&section=2)]Summer camp around the world

Summer camps are largely non-existent in Australia, because the Australian summer break (known as the Christmas holidays) only lasts between six to eight weeks, and occurs over Christmas and the New Year, shorter than in North America. Most children participate in School-camps, Girl Guide/scout camps, or school holiday camps with some religious groups (Such as the Salvation Army and Seventh-Day Adventists) holding week-long Summer Camps. Girl Guides and Scouts offer 'jamborees' which are camps over 1 to 2 weeks. Multiple-week camps are next to unheard of,

Many of Australia's youth music organisations hold annual rehearsal camps in summer including the Australian Youth Orchestra's National Music Camp and Gondwana Choirs Gondwana National Choral School.

Other than the Seventh-Day Adventist Summer Camps, most holiday camps are referred to as "Adventure Camps", because they largely do not occur over summer.

Many groups hold holiday day-camps for Primary aged children, and often run week-long adventure camps during the Spring, Autumn and Winter breaks.

Australian Defence Force Cadets often and almost exclusively run their extended camps and courses over school holiday periods, the vast majority of which provide all food and lodging for Cadets over the course of the camp. However, these camps often last only one or two weeks and thus do not fill up the majority of the summer holiday break. This allows the Cadets (who are aged 12-18 years and therefore the majority attend school) to attend the camps whilst still completing normal schooling.

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Summer_camp&action=edit&section=4)]Canada

In [Canada](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Canada), summer camps are very popular. About 70% of Canadian camps tend to be affiliated with organizations, while the rest are private.

There are also many summer camps for ESL students.

Summer camp fairs are held throughout Canada, usually during the winter months. Parents and children can meet camp directors and collect information about summer camps. Admission to these fairs is typically free, and the camps on display vary in their cost from completely subsidized fees to quite expensive.

### [[edit](http://en.wikipedia.org/w/index.php?title=Summer_camp&action=edit&section=5)]Chile